慎小嶷

十天突破

雅思写作

剑8版

慎小嶷◎编著

Do it in short order
Clarity counts
The chaos theory does not apply here
It pays to pinpoint authentic structures
When linear thinking comes into play

环球雅思金牌讲师多年教学实战经验
切实针对中国考生难点

纯正英音朗读
Genuinely British

Pat's Ten-Day Step-by-Step Guide to the IELTS Writing Test

The Fourth Edition

Granted, there is no unanimous consensus yet on what constitute a genuinely sound teaching methodology. Nevertheless, in the new millennium it is generally arguable that truly fruitful education shares some common characteristics: (1) Advantageous education in the 21st century invariably encourages students to think critically and empowers students to evaluate their teachers' performance openly, as opposed to force-feeds students heavy-handedly which renders them only capable of spitting back predigested ideas …

A Message from the Author

本书中全部例句均取自英国本土出版物及剑4-剑8官方范文

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

慎小嶷 Pat

十天突破雅思写作

欢迎登陆慎小嶷博客：
http://blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru

- 地道英文里实现句式多样化的12种手法
  《剑4》～《剑8》考官范文语言点深入剖析
- 确保句子逻辑性的加分 linkers
  最容易导致“杯具”的高频写作易错词总结
- 三种方法教你1分钟想出充分的 essay ideas
  精心提炼的6分必备词汇与7分高分词汇
- 英国人最常用的动词与抽象词汇汇总
  写好《剑8》流程图（process diagram）的秘笈

剑8版

- 平行结构
  怎样合理确定task-1小作文的时态
- 近7年亚太区完整分类题库
  突破模板的N种可能性
- 移民类书信特训
  鲜为人知的英文写作网站

上架建议 雅 思
ISBN 978-7-111-28782-7

地址：北京市百万庄大街22号 邮政编码：100037
电话服务
社服务中心：(010)88361066
销售一部：(010)68326294
销售二部：(010)88379649
读者购书热线：(010)88379203
网络服务
门户网：http://www.cmpbook.com
教材网：http://www.cmpedu.com
封面无防伪标均为盗版

定价：53.00元
（赠标准英音录制的CD一张+ 必备掌中宝）

ISBN 978-7-111-28782-7
9 787111 287827 >

版权声明

本书籍由pdf_world制作发布，针对目前图书数量繁多，质量参差不齐，读者面对买书易，买好书难的问题。pdf_world旨在为读者购书前提供另外一种快捷了解图书内容，挑选好书的方法。因此，pdf_world每周都会更新一批当年度最新的畅销书供读者选择。

核心订制书业务：只要是国内出版社出版超过半年的书，本店一般都可以为您制作扫描版电子文档，如有需要，请关注我们的官网：

http://pdf-world.taobao.com

声明：

1. 本书仅供读者购买纸本书前预览内容使用
2. 为尊重原作者的劳动成果，请于下载后48小时内删除
3. 如果您确实需要此书，请通过正规渠道购买纸本书

IELTS ESSAYS

To high-achieving test-takers, the IELTS Writing Section is, essentially, a vehicle for demonstrating their sound grasp of English and their insight into the cultures of European origin.

雅思写作 剑8版

慎小嶷 / 编著

Pat's Ten-Day Step-by-Step Guide
to the IELTS Writing Test

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

本书是留学英语考试语言专家慎小嶷（Pat）老师的力作。书中紧密结合“剑8”所体现出的最新趋势，富有创造性地总结出了帮助中国考生突破 IELTS 写作瓶颈所需的全部应试技巧，并用地道英语对大量语言点进行了深入讲解，书中全部讲解例句均取自最近两年中出版的英国本土出版物及剑4～剑8官方范文。

本书已在全球发行三版。此次的第四版是 Pat 老师针对雅思写作在最近一年中的新趋势做出的强有力回应，不同英语水平的读者使用后均可获得显著收获。此外，本书还配有由两位纯英音外教朗读的光盘以及方便读者携带随时随地学习的掌中宝，有助于大家高效利用备考时间。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

十天突破雅思写作 / 慎小嶷编著. —4 版. —北京：机械工业出版社，2010.6（2011.7 重印）
ISBN 978-7-111-28782-7

Ⅰ.①十… Ⅱ.①慎… Ⅲ.①英语—写作—高等教育—自学参考资料 Ⅳ.①H315

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2010）第 117247 号

机械工业出版社（北京市百万庄大街22号 邮政编码 100037）
策划编辑：孟玉琴　　责任编辑：孟玉琴　杨晓昱
版式设计：张文贵
责任印制：杨 曦
保定市中画美凯印刷有限公司印刷

2011 年 7 月第 4 版 · 第 17 次印刷
184mm × 260mm · 24.5 印张 · 542 千字
90 001 – 98 000 册
标准书号：ISBN 978-7-111-28782-7
　　ISBN 978-7-89451-587-2（光盘）
定价：53.00 元（含 1CD）

凡购本书，如有缺页、倒页、脱页，由本社发行部调换

电话服务
社服务中心：（010）88361066
销 售 一 部：（010）68326294
销 售 二 部：（010）88379649
读者购书热线：（010）88379203

网络服务
门户网：http://www.cmpbook.com
教材网：http://www.cmpedu.com

封面无防伪标均为盗版

The Ten-Day Guide in the Cambridge IELTS-8 Era
剑 8 时代致读者

☆ 雅思的新长征

Cambridge ESOL（剑桥大学考试委员会）开发的雅思考试在最近一年里获得了全球更加广泛的认可。去年 9 月，与哈佛仅地铁一站之隔的美国顶级名校 MIT 在众多专业的 admission requirements 一栏中都加入了下面这段话：

IELTS ***is strongly preferred*** as the language fluency test for ***all*** incoming graduate students whose native language is not English.

麻省理工学院“弃托投雅”无疑给人一种 IELTS 把（紫）红旗插到 TOEFL 大本营的感觉，而更多的 top-tier 名校加入后援团也给雅思考生带来了新的留学选择，但随之而来的则是校方 IELTS 录取分数线的“通膨预期”（inflation expectations）。在一两年前还是中规中矩的分数（5.5 ~6）在二十一世纪的第 2 个十年里则可能意味着“杯具”或者更长的语言课程。那么对于 IELTS 写作来说，一篇一般的文章（5.5 ~6 分）与一篇好文章（6.5 ~7 分）之间的区别到底在哪里呢?

☆ 执“剑”前行

剑 8 在 p.165、p.166、p.169 和 p.172 连续四次密集地对考生作文给出以下苛评：

“A variety of **sentence** types is used, but not always accurately.”
“The many short, simple **sentences** tend to limit the range.”
“There are a lot of short, simple **sentences** that reduce the range of complex structures.”
“Control of **sentence** structure is weak and punctuation is not used accurately.”

对造句能力如此密集而且犀利的强调从未见诸于《剑 8》之前的剑系中。但这并不是 Cambridge ESOL 的空穴来风，而是接受 IELTS 成绩的多所海外大学在最近两年里对留学生进入英联邦大学课堂后体现出来的真实写作能力的期望/失望的准确反映。背单词可以填鸭，查拼写可以靠 Word Spellchecker，甚至段落结构也可以硬性规定，但造句能力的高低却是绝难“瞒天过海”的。一句话十几、二十几个单词，学生平时有没有写句子方面的积累，明眼人一看便知。

在北京近六年的雅思教学实践同样给 Pat 一种很深刻的感觉：国内的“童鞋们”写作文时普遍重词而轻句，经常是文章里大词连篇但句子却支离破碎，甚至根本无法让人

连贯地把每句话都读下来。与之形成鲜明对比的则是剑 4 ~剑 8 考官评语中对 sentence structure 与 linking 的高度重视。这并不是说 vocabulary 就不重要，而是说 English writing 绝不只是“蹦单词”。在写作中是否有能力把单词准确、自然地“串起来”、形成好句子才往往是普通考生与高分考生间的真正分水岭。

从 Cambridge ESOL 官方给出的大量评分实例我们可以明显地看出 IELTS 作文对**好句子的要求**有三个不同的境界：

（1）没错或者少错；
（2）严密（但可以不必深刻）；
（3）丰富多样

其中，要达到（1）的要求需要夯实考生的语法基础（事实上，即使剑桥考官满分作文中所用到的 grammatical points 也主要是高中语法知识，但其使用语法的准确度很高，具体请看本书 Day 8（下）的分析）；要达到（2）则需要通过提高对地道英文中的连词（linkers）的调用能力来实现；（3）是更高的要求，需要对英文写作中的核心与特殊句式有深入的把握。

针对官方评分实例所体现出的这三个境界，Pat 对旧版“十天”的内容进行了进一步的细化和扩展。新版解释语言点的全部例句均取自最近两年内 UK 的本土出版物，研读书中的例句本身就是一种揣摩地道英语的过程。同时新版也对基础和高分句型提供了近义、反义句型和用法详解，以提高大家写句子的准确度与灵活性。此外，Pat 在新版中还为国内考生总结出了地道英文中实现句式多样化的十二种手法等较为高端的句法知识。

要加入对国外一流大学入场券的争夺，国内考生必须、也终将走出多年来一直存在的“只堆单词不顾连接，只玩高难度不管准确度，只排主谓宾不讲多样化”的误区。

深刻领悟剑 4 ~剑 8“考试指挥棒”体现出的评分要求，紧密结合海外大学对学生写作能力的实践要求，帮助中国考生树立对雅思作文**词、句、段、篇间正确关系**的理解，是新版“十天”的核心任务。

☆ 本书的缘起

促使我创作您手中这本书的原因很多，包括考生的要求、环球雅思学校领导层的鼓励和亲人的催促。而导致我写这本书最直接的一个原因，却是我收到的一封澳洲来信。

Pat 你好：

我是您去年9月的学生黎媛，现在悉尼大学预科读语言。在这一个月的学习中我发现写作在国外的学习中是这么的重要。刚到这里压力好大，不知要怎么学。还好有您的那些资料，最近我又开始钻研它们，它们给了我很大的帮助。现在我是我们班的作文高手，老师也很喜欢我的作文，经常在班上表扬。我只想说这些全都是您的功劳，没有您的那些资料我什么也写不出来的。老师，真的，太感谢您了。我刚才刚完成了一篇作文，有感而发，很想给您写这封信。

老师，谢谢！

学生黎媛

在一个连培训教师也需要包装、“忽悠”比实用更流行的年代里，我却始终认为，学生真实的英语写作水平和考试分数的提高，才是衡量培训教师的最高准则。我很想说的是，在我的教学生涯里，给我感动最多的就是我的学生们。他们/她们的信任和鼓励，是我不断前行的最大动力。

This volume is fully dedicated to my incredibly intelligent, responsive and self-motivated students.

☆ 本书的目标读者（你）应该是谁?

《十天突破雅思写作》的目标读者是距离考试只有一两个月时间的一群心急如焚的“烤鸭”们，特别是已经上过培训课程但却依然心里没底的考生。相信一章一章地阅读本书正文以及附录，会让您获得一种从持续绝望抓狂到突然豁然开朗的令人兴奋的体验。

☆ 本书的其他特色

您手里的这本书只关心一件事情，就是雅思写作考试需要什么（What counts in IELTS Writing counts here）。只是听起来好听而在考场里面却完全用不上的东西我一点都不关心。具体来说，本书在以下方面均会有所突破：

（1）明显提高你思考素材的速度。很多学生怕雅思写作，是因为看到题目后根本没有思路。因为工作的需要我自己多次进过雅思考场，每次都发现身边有很多考生拿到题目之后长时间不能动笔，这些时间如果节省下来多写一些漂亮的词汇和句子，减少一些语法错误，会是一件多么好的事情。所以，想素材一定要快。快到什么程度？一分钟搞定。可能么？本书 Day 2 的内容就要达到这个效果。

（2）真正掌握雅思写作需要的核心词汇。雅思作文到底需要多大的词汇量？这个问题很多学生考完试了心里还是没底，有的说6000，有的说8000，听起来很像在拍卖。我的长期教学实践告诉我，考雅思议论文集中背熟288个常用加分词足够了，而图表题背熟20个词就可以准备得很充分，再多就是鸡肋——客观地说，考场里面那么紧张的状态下你是根本想不起来用更多词的。Day 3就专门突破词汇。

（3）提高用词的准确度与多样性。国内同学关于词汇的另一个误区是有量无质。其实对于拿分而言，用词的准确性与灵活性远比单纯的数量要重要得多。在Day 3、附录H与附录I里我们将无情地“揪出”国内同学们笔下的高频易错词，并详解地道英文中的抽象加分词、论证时经常调用的核心动词以及在essays中如何真正有效替换同义词。

（4）帮助读者理性地看待模板。什么是好的模板？起码应该没有明显的错误（听起来难以置信，但网上流行的作文模板里没有中式英语错误的真的并不多）。而雅思写作更高的要求则是脱离模板，凭自己的真实实力去写作。Day 8（上）主要为基础相对薄弱的同学介绍如何编写有特色的模板；而Day 8（下），附录（A）与附录（B）则是针对英文功底比较好的同学们，帮你磨练出独立写原创作文的能力。

（5）流程图（process diagram），仅仅听到这三个字就足以让一半以上的烤鸭们肝儿颤了。国内的孩子惧怕考流程图已经成为经典。好的，让我告诉您，流程图是雅思作文六种可能考的图表里最容易拿分的一种。Day 10就跟您详述流程图的秘笈并给出我对剑8中那道“史上最难流程图”的诠释。

本书的特色还有很多，比如“语法的七宗罪”，43个原创高分段落，怎样才能确保图表作文的时态不出错，写作211重点替换工程…… 接下来的十天，一定会是令人兴奋的10天。

对于时间特别紧迫的读者，还可以先重点研读书中边侧做了“**V**”字标识的部分。

☆ 致谢

本书的出版，首先要感谢的是我数以万计的学生们。他们/她们给我的大量建议和意见，让我在5年里得以不断完善自己的教学；他们/她们拿到考试成绩后对我的口头或者书面的致谢，让我有了不断前行的动力（Pat的博客上选登了一部分学生的来信 blog. sina. com. cn/ieltsguru）；也正是他们/她们的一再鼓励和催促，让我有了最终完成这本写作书的信心和决心。

Your input definitely gave my book some extra zing. ☺

本书其他参与协助编写工作的人员有：朱燕麟、于雷、宋朝晖、朱卫红、张静、周晖、李梅、高路、董明明、张中华、魏林、王玲、李晨光、王向雨、董倩、谢冰、

高峰、袁诗宁、刘盈、毛润卿、张哲、阎密、范喻欣、刘瑾辉、陈蕲春、尹东临、郭东岚、叶彤彤、陈宏、尚彬、孔梦洋、孟若冰、冉鹏飞、苏惠心、宋文顺、袁进、杨毅、张红燕、王军、黄洋、李纲、刘菲、陈洁、闫文健、于辉、张洪霞、汪洋、陈江升、孟玉琴、沈刚、朱卡亚、李玉亚、李杰、谷明义、毕骁、董月、齐函芝、苑茜、杨欣、衡珊、陈雷、陆云、孟建章、王玉丰、王硕、董登阁、邱天、郎巍、李万博、徐彤英、刘振新、韩晚亭、谷茂云、万礼真、邱茂林、杨雅琳。

I wish to thank my parents for inspiring me in practically all my areas of exploration. Without their constant love, support, encouragement and reassurance, this book wouldn't have been possible.

A special note of appreciation to Amanda, for the loving support, for the touching up of the Chinese text I wrote in the first and second drafts and for giving me hints about how to make this book more meaningful in a Chinese context.

慎小嶷

英文自序（1）

Preface

While I was on vacation this past spring, getting a brief respite from my whirlwind life as an IELTS teacher, I had a chance to reflect on the five and a half years and to ponder how I could better help my students with the forthcoming publications.

Legions of university students and professionals throughout China had committed themselves to taking the IELTS test, which was generally considered a crucial first step on the road to educational institutions, immigration and numerous career destinations in commonwealth countries. Even so, in preparing for the IELTS writing test, they often found themselves daunted by the sheer amount of information they were supplied: the colossal word lists, the baffling grammatical quagmire, the bizarrely contorted sentences and the innumerable passages which could, purportedly, help them break through to a higher-band score if they memorized the passages word for word. These insecurities persisted even after they took the test.

In my experience, though, most of the prospective IELTS candidates were pressed for study time and worse yet, they had four modules to prepare: listening, reading, writing and speaking. None of these modules was exactly a *cinch*.

My hard work as an IELTS teacher paid off. My performance as an IELTS writing teacher was fully recognized when I won the number one ranking in the survey of students' overall teacher ratings conducted by Global IELTS School, the foremost IELTS training school in China.

I contemplated it was time that I shared my thoughts and beliefs about the IELTS writing test with candidates not in my class. Getting my own textbook published became the logical next step.

Should such a book actually be published, I decided it would go beyond what readers generally found in other IELTS textbooks, cutting to the heart of skills, techniques and the mindset needed for doing well in IELTS writing. Also, it must be nothing short of these 10 criteria:

a) ***Enabling the readers to recognize the complexities of the test questions and generate enough literate ideas for an IELTS essay within the time constraints.***

b) Distilling the English writing lexicon into a very concise list of words and phrases that are most commonly used in IELTS essays. Moreover, this book should train the readers in proper diction (word choice and usage).

c) Deconstructing the bewildering grammatical points for the readers in a practical, easy-to-absorb fashion, and identifying the glaring mechanical errors many candidates make.

d) Instilling good sentence sense and equipping the readers with a toolkit (i. e. essential conjunctions, transitional phrases and key sentence structures) to write reasonably-complex sentences naturally, clearly and fast.

e) Making an earnest attempt to train the readers to construct a tight-knit, focused IELTS essay.

f) Supplying copious sample essays and paragraphs written by the author for readers to learn from but at the same time discouraging mere reproduction and the use of trite or stereotyped expressions. Besides, the phrasing of sample essays should be deliberately not-so-polished to cater to the realistic need of the majority of Chinese candidates.

g) Adopting an open-ended approach to instruction and affording quality online resources from which the readers can gain knowledge of facts, data and ideas about the IELTS essay topics.

h) Furnishing the readers with accompanying audio help — such as CD recordings by the author, to assist them in memorizing parts of the visual text.

i) Mirroring the latest changes in the IELTS writing test and being updated in a timely manner.

j) Presenting a high level of utility to candidates of other English writing tests, such as the writing test in TOEFL-iBT.

Those were my main concerns when I conceived this book, hence a book like this in your hands and a CD like that in your CD tray.

Xiaoyi

(*a. k. a. Patrick*)

英文自序（2）

Changing Lanes

It has been three and a half years since I sat down to draft the first edition of *The Ten-Day Step-by-Step Guide to IELTS Writing*. I confess that I did not quite anticipate the rave reviews this book would receive before letting it go to press.

Back then, as today, my overriding goal was to offer a stand-alone handbook for prospective IELTS candidates who are interested in but unfamiliar with English essay writing. Still, I am most gratified to learn many IELTS training programs in China have adopted my book as their main course book, sometimes along with supplemental pamphlets.

To me, every new edition is like a new roadmap for my intellectual inquiry. Since I spent much of my time since the last edition in countries other than China, the text you will be reading reflects the ways in which these experiences have influenced my thinking on essay writing. For instance, some newly-added chapters address the issues and questions on exemplification that involves life in English-speaking countries such as Britain and Australia. Besides, many of the new sample sentences have been drawn from works published in Commonwealth countries. This new edition has also been devised as a reaction to Cambridge IELTS 8 and the corresponding changes in the test per se.

I continue to believe that acquiring the skills for the IELTS Essay Test, a test noted for the variety and complexity of its essay questions, has three dimensions: reading, writing and reflecting. Ideally, the outcomes of each can continually interact. Read widely about the IELTS essay topics. Write arduously about these topics while drawing on the reading materials. Then reflect on those topics by keeping a test-prep journal documenting your reading and writing experiences and by discussions with your mentor and peers.

What makes IELTS Writing formidable is in large part the fear of the unknown. It is my deepest hope that after reading this new edition, readers will realize that preparation for the test can actually be highly enjoyable if it is undertaken in the proper frame of mind.

For this new edition, I gleaned feedback from my incredibly responsive audiences of the past editions. I was also encouraged and inspired by them to inject substantial amounts of fresh

thought into the text. I thank them for their honesty, their patience and their insight.

Special kudos goes to Mrs. Yu-qin Meng, the CMP editor of this book, for prodding and cajoling me into revising this book as promptly as possible, with the most energy I could have possibly summoned up.

I appreciate, as always, the loving support from my parents, my sister and friends of mine, without whom I would not have embarked upon this "cottage industry".

For any sins of commission and omission that remain, the author alone is to blame.

Pat,

NYC

目　录

剑 8 时代致读者
英文自序（1）
英文自序（2）

Day 1　其实你不懂雅思写作

多数国内考生无法回答的 10 个问题 / 3
My Answers / 4
每日一练 / 18
练习答案 / 19

Day 2　我怎么想素材

IELTS 写作真题 / 23
3 种快速解题方法 / 25
测测你的进展 / 32
每日一练 / 33
练习答案 / 34

Day 3　多大的词汇量算大

雅思议论文 6 分必备 136 个词汇分类讲解 / 39
IELTS 写作 288 个高分词汇 / 44
IELTS 作文常用同义词浓缩版 / 64
IELTS 作文中最容易失手的词汇总结（高分内容）/ 66
考官惯用伎俩揭秘（1）：学会使用抽象词（高分内容）/ 69

7 分进，6 分禁 / 72
每日一练 / 73
练习答案 / 75

Day 4 真正实用的 IELTS 作文语法

正确理解 5 种句子成分 / 79
分清 3 种句子 / 83
语法七宗罪 / 85
考官惯用伎俩揭秘（2）：让你的句式像考官范文一样多变（高分内容）/ 88
每日一练 / 99
练习答案 / 101

Day 5 写好复杂句的秘诀

考官的句子为什么严密：主句与从句之间永远只有 6 种关系 / 106
IELTS 议论文主体段 20 个最高频逻辑衔接总结（高分内容）/ 114
考官惯用伎俩揭秘（3）：五个词组、一种关系和三门绝活儿（高分内容）/ 116
考官惯用伎俩揭秘（4）：请看管好你的平行结构 / 120
每日一练 / 121
练习答案 / 123

Day 6 36 和 63

IELTS 写作 36 个基础句型 / 127
IELTS 写作 63 个高分句型 / 136
每日一练 / 152
练习答案 / 154

Day 7 经得起推敲的结构

“四段式” VS. “五段式” / 157

剑桥考官为何雪藏一边倒 / 159
4 段式的结构究竟怎样安排? / 160
Mixed 结构 / 164
每日一练 / 164
练习答案 / 164

Day 8　突破模板写作文 & 剑桥范文解构版

Day 8（上）/ 169
A. 模板到底属于谁? / 169
B. 怎样写 Report / 184
C. IELTS 议论文考场实战 6 步（专门推荐给正在为写不完作文而纠结的“小白”们）/ 190
Day 8（中）/ 191
更具挑战性的一边倒作文怎样写?（高分内容）/ 191
Day 8（下）/ 194
突破模板写作文——一个解构主义者眼中的剑桥范文（高分内容）/ 194
每日一练 / 205
练习答案 / 207

Day 9　图表题，能提前写完吗

task 1 的语言特色 / 213
图表题的 3 个核心要求 / 214
决定成败的 3 个准备工作 / 215
图表题的 3 种段落 / 219
主体段介绍数据或描述变化趋势的常用词详解（每组最多背 3 个就足够，例句也要看）/ 227
图表题的 3 种特殊题型（高分内容）/ 239
考官惯用伎俩揭秘（5）：如何打破小作文的时态魔咒 / 242
测测你的进展 / 244
每日一练 / 244
练习答案 / 248

Day 10　关于流程图的恶狼传说

流程图的 4 要素 / 253
面对流程图，连雅思考官也只能“从了”/ 254
真题放送 / 255
词汇量不够如何读懂《剑 8》里的“史上最难流程图”/ 259
每日一练 / 262
练习答案 / 265

G 类考生特训

书信的 3 大纪律 / 269
书信的结构 / 270
雅思书信分类范文 / 271
雅思书信常用模板和书信 10 大最常用短语 / 277
每日一练 / 280
练习答案 / 281

终于该上战场了

附　录

附录 A　突破模板的 1000 种可能性 / 289
附录 B　43 个原创雅思作文高分背诵段落 / 305
附录 C　我怎么做预测 / 319
附录 D　雅思写作考什么 / 323
附录 E　如果计划在国外考雅思 / 339
附录 F　雅思作文最常引用的名人名言汇总 / 341
附录 G　鲜为人知却极为实用的英文写作网站 / 345
附录 H　那些让你的论证更加给力的 verbs / 349
附录 I　雅思写作之 211 替换工程 & 211 重点 Spot Check / 357
结束语 / 376

Mission Statement

—考点选择

—写作顺序

—难度控制

—雅思作文的特殊性

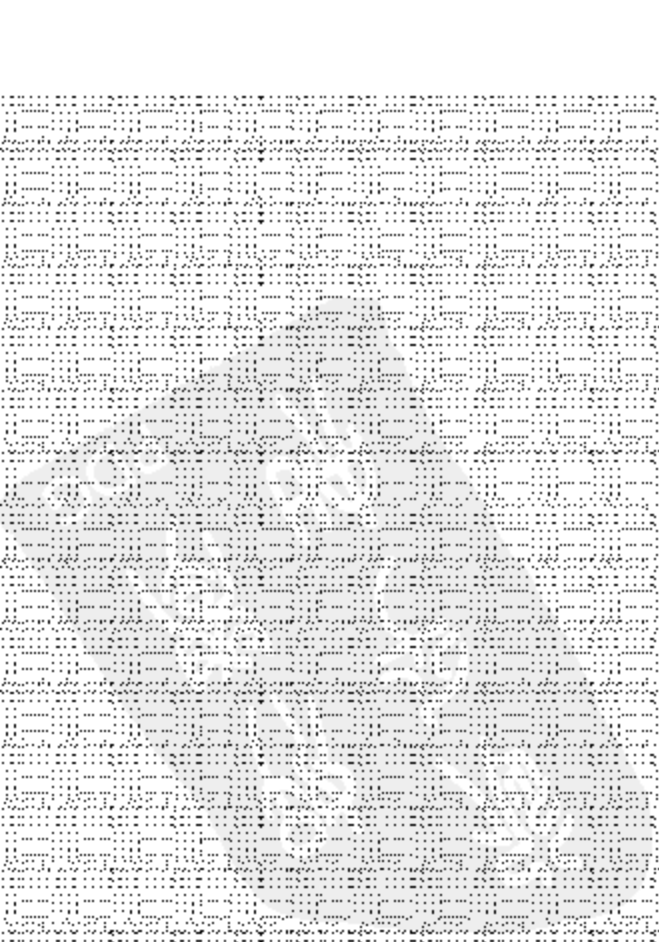
Day 1

其实你不懂雅思写作

Uncharted Territory in the IELTS Writing Test

So many candidates seem to have a whole superstructure with no foundation. It is time to focus on the basics, to get back to square one.

— *Pat*



多数国内考生无法回答的 10 个问题

10 Questions That May Well Put You on the Spot

☆ 怎样选择雅思考试的考点?

☆ 准备雅思写作考试需要背范文吗?

☆ 写作考试应该先写 task 1 还是 task 2?

☆ 对作文字数如何掌控?

☆ 作文里句子越长越难就越容易得高分吗?

☆ 怎样合理使用雅思写作真题?

☆ 拼写错误会扣分吗?

☆ 写作考试是否需要打草稿?

☆ 雅思考试会变题吗?

☆ 雅思考试与国内的英语考试，比如四六级或者考研英语相比有什么不同?

Bonus Questions

★ 作文考试时应该用什么样的格式和字迹（高分内容)?

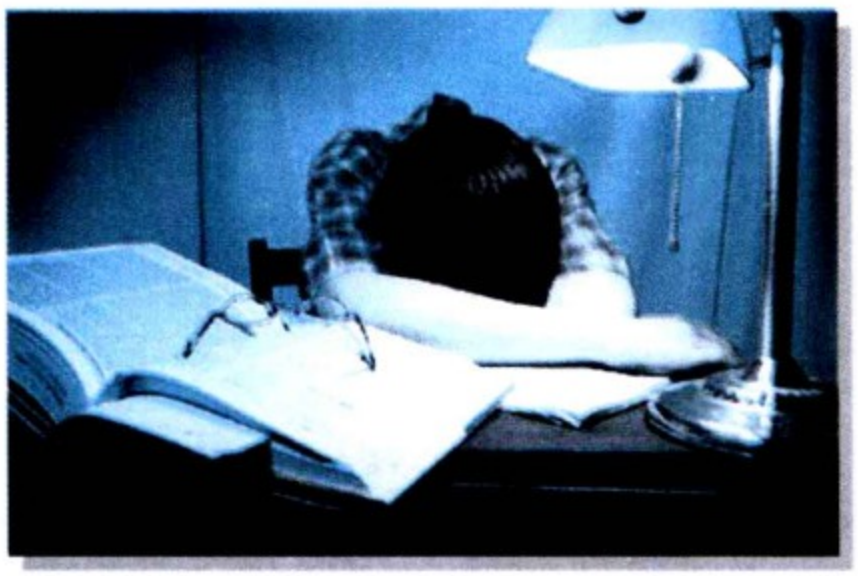
★ 雅思作文中是否可以使用 I 和 we（高分内容)?

★ 在开头段中是否必须表明自己的观点（高分内容)?

★ IELTS 写作里使用被动语态到底好不好（高分内容)?

★ 在句首使用 But 或者 So 是否犯规（高分内容)?

★ 同样的意思是否使用字数更多的英语表达才更拿分（高分内容)?



一只饥寒交迫的典型烤鸭

My Answers

怎样选择你的考点？

考场如战场，对它的选择当然重要。雅思听力和阅读是客观题，有标准答案，所以在不同城市考基本没有区别，我们重点说写作和口语。

首先需要明确的是：同一天里的考试题目在全国所有考点是完全相同的。事实上，雅思听力、阅读和写作题目同一天内不仅在大陆，而且在整个亚太考区（包括东南亚和澳洲、新西兰）全都是同步的。至于口语题，同一天内在澳洲、新西兰与在大陆的题目是不一样的，但是大陆的每个城市之间口语题是同步的（口语考点的选择请看本书的姊妹篇《十天突破雅思口语》Day 1：最真实的谎言）。所以选择考点对考题本身的难度没有影响。

那么考点对于评分有没有影响呢？对口试打分确实是有影响的，这是我在国内5年教学之后的体会。但是不同考点对作文打分的影响却不大，因为其实内行人都知道，写作试卷不是在考点当地批改的，而是打包后集中送到英国驻华使馆文化教育处由少数考官集中进行批改。所以从理论上来说，考点对写作打分的影响并不明显（当然严格来说打包后不同的“包”之间评分还是可能有差异的，但是这确实已经超出我们的讨论范围了）。

Pat对多名北京赴外地考生的成绩进行统计后得到的结论也是一致的：是不是要躲开一线城市主要还是应该看行程是否方便，如果感到去外地很麻烦却非要迎难而上，反而可能会影响考试的状态，得不偿失。

准备雅思写作考试需要背范文吗？

这个问题也是我被无数次问到过的问题。最理想的状态当然是每个学生都能背上几十篇范

文。但根据我的实际观察，大多数雅思考生的实际情况是准备时间比较短，而且很多同学还要工作或者上学，在考前能有足够的时间把听力机经看一遍，剑 4 到剑 8 的听力和阅读题都做一遍，再背些听说读写的词汇就算是万幸了。在这么短的时间内，去背几十篇范文，即使真的能记住，考场里能想起来多少是难以想象的。更重要的是：只背范文，万一背的文章没有碰上考题，就有全军覆没的可能。不过如果真的有时间、有脑力并且愿意背诵，本书附录（A）和（B）里面收录了大量原创范文，其论证非常深入，对于想突破到 7 分或者更高分数的同学会有实质性的帮助。

写作考试应该先写 task 1 还是 task 2?

这个问题看起来简单，其实技术性还是很强的。有些人提出先写 task 2 再写 task 1。这种说法乍听起来有道理，其实是在回避考试的不确定性，与先写 task 1 再写 task 2 的做法并没有本质的优劣之分。我记得以前自己刚开始教雅思作文的时候，有个学生考试时就是按照这种思路，非要先写议论文。正赶上那次的议论文特别难，坚持写完后，一看表已经过了 53 分钟。只剩下 7 分钟写 task 1，结果总分还是很低。

那么到底应该如何科学安排雅思作文写作顺序呢?

事实上，在拿到考卷之后，不管一个人心理素质多好，也没有人会只看见一道题就开始写作的。任何考生在拿到试题之后即使仅仅出于好奇心的驱使也一定会本能地先把大小作文题都很快地扫视一遍后再开始全力写其中的一道题。因此从实战的要求出发，我建议同学们如果确实感觉拿到的 task 2 考题自己准备得较为充分，有信心在 40 分钟左右写出一篇自己满意的议论文，那么我们就应该先写 task 2。因为在 IELTS 写作评分中 task 2 占总分的 2/3，我们当然应该先把分多的拿在手里。但是如果您看完题之后，感觉手中的 task 2 考题自己准备得并不充分或者一时想不出足够的内容，那么我强烈建议您先写 task 1。图表题是描述，不存在想不出素材的问题。写完图表再写议论文，由于已经写了 20 分钟的作文，肯定会比刚开始时顺手一点。否则，如果明明议论文不好写，非要迎难而上先写议论文，就很可能导致两部分都完成得不好的惨烈结果。

对作文字数如何掌控?

字数多确实可能拿高分，但前提必须是：要有实质内容，如果只是一个意思重复地说那还不如少写点。

此外，字数多意味着用的时间增加，所以要根据自己的实际情况来调整。在这里需要提醒大家，不管时间多紧一定要尽量写出结尾段。我教过最能写的学生在考场里写过 540 多个词，但结尾段没写，最后也只得了 6 分。

因此比较实际的要求是，6 分作文写出 260 ~270 个词左右就可以达到字数的要求了，6.5 分最好是 300 个词以上（但还是那句话，主要是看有没有实质内容）。

作文里句子越长越难就越容易得高分吗?

这种说法我听得不少。自己教学5年来一直坚持给学生判作文，到现在判过的作文可以肯定不少于2万篇，但是没有语法或者用词错误的句子还真是难得一见。我个人认为雅思作文没有必要一定要写长难句。请大家翻翻剑8后面由考官（examiner）提供的9分范文，您发现了多少我们所谓的“无敌长难句”呢?

请看《剑8》中第163页考官满分范文中的这段话：

"A child's education has never been about learning information and basic skills only. It has always included teaching the next generation how to be good members of society. Therefore, this cannot be the responsibility of the parents alone..."

这些可是9分范文中的句子，请问它们是您心目中的“无敌超长复杂句”吗?

请再看这段话：

"Of course not everyone enjoys their work. Hard economic realities mean that many people have little choice in the kind of job they can get. In some cases, an employee is working in a job that suits neither their skills nor their personality..."

这些是剑7第167页考官范文中的句子，也实在和“长难”扯不上边儿。

请再看剑6第162页7.5分范文中的句子：

"Also, on the television screen, a product may look gorgeous and good quality. As a result of it, people often buy goods without enough consideration. Consumers may not actually need it but they buy goods impulsively（冲动的）soon after they watch the advertising..."

这些是长难句吗?

当然，如果在作文中能够流畅地写出复杂的句子，肯定是有加分效果的，但这种能力必须来自对于造句知识的系统梳理，而不是刻意地去拉长句子的机械结果。雅思作文中好句子的标准并不是令人费解，而是准确、严密、多样、易懂的句子。从实战角度来看，即使是7分范文，作文里有1/3的简单句也是完全正常的。而剩下的2/3句子中，还会有一部分是and/or/but连接的并列句。最后真正剩下的复杂句也就是一半左右。我们将在Day 4、Day 5与Day 6系统锤炼英语造句的能力与技巧。但还是要强调：所谓“三四行的长难句”并不符合剑桥官方对于写作的要求，听起来好听，让考生在考场里很紧张的状态下写，结果只能是充满了各种令人匪夷所思的错误，等着被考官扣分。

怎样合理使用雅思写作真题?

真题是指Cambridge ESOL在全球三大考区（亚太、欧洲、北美）的考试中实际使用的题目。在本书附录D中您可以看到近7年来的全部雅思写作真题，并且划分成了不同的话题，

建议大家每一类至少认真思考一道考题，感受不同话题的特点。

拼写错误会扣分吗？

这点请大家可以稍微放松一下。写作当然要尽可能保证拼写正确，连基本单词的拼写都搞不定的“半文盲”肯定拿不到好分数。但是雅思考官理解考生是在时间很有限的情况下完成文章的，所以偶尔出现的拼写错误，只要不引起重大歧义，就不会导致扣分。本书给大家总结出了最核心的词汇，考生要尽可能准确地记忆这些词汇。

写作考试是否需要打草稿？

一个冰冷的事实是：考场里根本没有时间打草稿。

请大家牢记：写作考场里任何一分钟都绝不能浪费，要不然真可能写不完作文，这是大多数参加过实战的考生们的真实体会。不过看完题之后，您倒是可以在试题纸上（切记：不是那张带有横格的答题纸，答题纸一定确保干净）把看到题目后头脑里闪现出的分论点、考前准备的相关加分词汇和句型大致记录一下，动笔写的时候可以随时参考。

雅思考试会变题吗？

分析过去七年的真题（附录 D）我们会发现，在 2006 年 1 月写作题库确实曾经大调整过一次（因为当时直接面对新托福的竞争）。而从那时起直到现在，雅思写作还没有重大的变化出现。即使 2006 年这次真正意义上的变题，其实也只对我们这些做预测的老师有影响，对学生真的有什么影响吗？题目还是那个难度，还是那个形式，也还是那几类话题，对考生的备考又有什么影响呢？为什么非要自己吓自己呢？2011 年的考试中确实出现了一些新题，但是作文总体风格并没有变化，难度也没有提高，今年有不少的考题还出现在我的考前预测里面。七年来对 IELTS 考试的观察实践告诉我，关于雅思的“变题”传闻，不管听起来多么唬人，最后都无一例外地因被证伪而随风逝去。有自己吓自己的时间还不如踏踏实实多练几篇作文。

变题还是不变题？真正靠得住的信息来源永远是 IELTS 全球官方网站 http://www.ielts.org/default.aspx。

雅思考试与国内的英语考试，比如四六级或者考研英语相比有什么不同？

雅思考试和中国考生更熟悉的英语考试相比，最重要的差异有 5 个。

区别之 1：Timing（时间安排）

IELTS 写作考试放在上午的最后，时间达到一个小时，一般的国内学生并没有参加过时间

这么长的英文写作考试。而且要写两篇文章（task 1 图表和 task 2 议论文），这对“小盆友们”的脑力和心理素质都是很大的考验。但请大家注意，当考官要求停笔的时候即使还没有写完也一定要停下来，否则算违纪行为，如果遇到特别严厉的考官，超时写作的事实还会以 note 的形式被记录在考生的成绩单上寄到他/她所申请的大学去，得不偿失。

对策：考前练习一定要尽可能模拟实战，没有任何限制的考前练习没有实战意义。建议大家考前练习作文时最好是复印或者从 Cambridge ESOL 官方网站 https://www.teachers.cambri-dgeesol.org/ts/exams/academicenglish/ielts 的页面下方下载标准格式的 IELTS Writing Answer Sheet。用铅笔写作，每行写 10～12 个单词，并且严格控制时间——在考前练习的时候，写图表题用时不应超过 25 分钟，写议论文用时不应超过 45 分钟。

区别之 2：Different tasks（不同的写作任务）

雅思写作考试分为两部分：task 1 图表题和 task 2 议论文。图表题要求同学们在 20 分钟左右完成，议论文在考生方法得当的情况下，可以在 40 分钟内完成，考试时间总长度为一小时。

task 1 图表题是客观性写作，强调的是客观、准确和详尽，考生必须如实而且详尽地用英文记录图表中的信息——task 1 的最高境界就是让考官即使不看图表，只看考生的作文也能准确地想象出图表的内容。不过从语言上看，task 1 所使用的词汇有限，句式要求也并不高。所以只要方法得当，突破起来很快。

相比之下，task 2 议论文明显地带有主观性——剑桥考官都经过 Cambridge ESOL 职业训练，并不追究你写的内容是否是“真理”。雅思议论文在观点上是没有标准答案的，考官关心的并不是你的见解是什么，而是你是否可以用英文去比较准确地表达并且强有力地支持这种观点。这明确提示我们：看到议论文题目之后，不要浪费时间去想到底怎样的观点才是“正确的”，我们要考虑的只是这道题持怎样的论点最好写，怎样写着最顺手，最能充分利用自己考前准备的内容。这就是我们在确定 IELTS 考试议论文论点时必须持有的“机会主义”。从语言上看，task 2 议论文对词汇量要求较高，而且句式灵活多变，这也是与 task 1 的重要差异。

task 1 和 task 2 的这种差异同样可以从两类作文不同的评分标准看出来。IELTS 作文考试 task 1 和 task 2 各自的四项评分标准分别是：

Task 1

Task achievement 写作任务的完成情况（实际上就是有没有按照题目要求写，题目是三根线你写成三个饼肯定不行）；Coherence and cohesion 逻辑连贯性和结构整体性（简单说就是介绍数字清楚不清楚）；Lexical resource 词汇运用能力（说明白点就是你不能只用小学词汇）；Grammatical range and accuracy 语法的多样性和准确性（句子要有变化，错误多了也不成）。

Task 2

Task response 对写作任务的回应情况（就是说论证要强有力）；Coherence and cohesion；Lexical resource；Grammatical range and accuracy（后三项标准和 task 1 相同）。

很明显，两者评分标准唯一的分歧在于图表题强调客观性，而议论文是主观的，只要紧扣题目，议论文的观点正、反还是折中考官都爱看。

对策：在备考初期，可以把图表题和议论文分开来练习。但是到考前一周，Pat 强烈建议大家至少演练一次图表题 + 议论文的写作考试全过程，时间可以控制在 65 分钟左右，中间不要休息，也一定不要查阅词典。全部写完之后再查词典或者找有经验的老师批改。

区别之 3：No specific topic pool.（雅思作文没有固定的题库）

IELTS 写作考试并没有给广大考生一个明确的题库，这无疑增加了备考难度。

对策：雅思写作话题是有明确的范围的。最近 7 年里所有的雅思 A 类议论文话题都超不出以下两大类十大话题：

文明类

Tourism
Education
Government
Women and Families
Language and Culture
Technology and the Media
Development and Globalisation

野蛮类

Crime
Animals
Environmental Problems

这样把话题分成十类的重要意义在于可以帮助我们减小备考的工作量。每一大类内部不同题目的写作无论是素材、用词还是句型，都很相似，其实我们只要每个类别掌握一篇范文，同一类别中的其他题目即使没准备我们也可以做到心中有数了。

区别之 4：Unfamiliar topics（中国考生不熟悉的话题）

很多雅思作文话题是多数中国考生不熟悉的，所以考生经常会拿到题目之后头脑一片空

白，想不出写什么内容，而时间却在一分一秒的过去，这是一种多么囧的感觉。比如下面几道雅思作文真题：

题目一 Increasing the price of petrol is the best way to solve traffic and pollution problems. To what extent do you agree or disagree? What other measures do you think are effective? (剑 8 真题)

题目二 Unlike many other countries, in the UK the police officers do not carry guns. Some people think this leaves citizens unprotected while others believe this reduces the overall violence in society. Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.

题目三 Some people think that it is better to educate boys and girls in separate schools. Others, however, believe that boys and girls benefit more from attending mixed schools. Discuss both these views and give your own opinion. (剑 8 真题)

这些话题都是曾在英国引起争议的话题，但国内考生却对此很陌生。绝大多数中国考生恐怕从来没有想到过——原来警察执行任务时是否应该带枪这样在国内没有争议的事儿在雅思作文里也要拿出来晒晒。

对策： 我为大家总结了三种解决 IELTS 议论文素材问题的实用方法。我们将在 Day2 中进行学习。

区别之 5：Academic writing（学术类写作的特殊要求）

一些学生考试之后本来觉得自己一定能拿 6 分或 7 分，但成绩发下来却只有 5 分左右，很多时候其实是因为自己的作文从学术类写作的角度来看只值 5 分。

对策： 下面的 10 个改错题可以让您快速掌握英语学术写作的核心特点，我们现在一起来改错：

练习 1 ***Wealthy parents shouldn't spoil their children. Otherwise, their children will become too dependent on them.***

分析：文体错误，雅思写作中不可以用缩写，shouldn't 应该改成 should not；相应的 I'm 应该写成 I am；而 can't 应该写 cannot，请注意 cannot 中间没有空格，如剑 8 例句：This cannot be the responsibility of the parents alone.

练习 2 ***Today, newspapers report lots of crimes in horrible detail.***

分析：使用了非正式口语词汇 lots of，写作里面如果修饰可数名词可以改用 numerous，a host of 或者 a vast number of；修饰不可数名词可以用 a great deal of。

练习3 ***The impact of tourism on these traditional neighborhoods must be analysed.***

分析： 英美拼写混淆。Cambridge ESOL 明确规定：英式和美式拼写都可以接受，但是不接受把英美拼写在同一篇文章里面混用。两种拼写最重要的三个差异请大家记清：英式-se结尾时美式用-ze，英式用-our 结尾的单词美式用-or，而英式经典的-tre 结尾在美国则变成了中国考生更熟悉的-ter 结尾。

练习4 ***Serious crimes harm people's lives.***

分析： 用词没有特色，每个词都是初中词汇，完全可以用下列方式替换：

serious → severe (or grave)

crime → offense (or criminal act)

harm → damage (or destroy/ undermine/ jeopardise)

people → individuals

官方对 IELTS 作文用词的首要要求是准（详情请见 Day 8（下）），其实并不需要特别难，但如果完全沉迷于初二词汇还是不行的。更多的替换表达请大家查阅本书附录中的"211 同义词工程"。

练习5 ***The advantage of space research is more than its disadvantage.***

分析： be more than 没有特色，雅思作文里可以用 outweigh 这个及物动词表示大于或者超过的意思。

练习6 ***Today, our world is becoming more and more reliant on modern technology.***

分析： more and more 松散，可以用 increasingly 这个副词表示"越来越……"，后面再加形容词。

练习7 ***Advertisements are everywhere. There are many ways to do advertisements.***

分析： 句式过于短促，有 rap 的效果，可以在两句话中间把句号去掉加上 and，形成一个并列句。

练习8 ***The environment is becoming worse. We must work together to cope with this situation.***

分析： 句式过于简单，可以在两句话中间把句号去掉加上 therefore，形成一个因果关系的复杂句。

练习9 ***So, we should make sure that globalisation does not endanger our own traditional culture!***

分析： 感情色彩过分强烈，像 love letter 的效果，应该把句尾的"!"改成句号，so 也可以改用更学术的 therefore 来替换。请注意不要把你的雅思作文写成"咆哮体"。

练习10 ***We must be friendly to others because the Bible said, "Treat your neighbors as you would like to be treated."***

分析： 圣经在西方确实重要，但在英美等多数大学中宗教信仰（religious faith）不可以作为 adademic essays 中的论据。

作文考试时应该用什么样的格式和字迹？（高分内容）

很多同学问到这个问题，这里 Pat 给大家深入解答一下。

关于格式，大家一般都知道英文写作有两种最常见的格式：

☆ Full-block style（齐头式）

就是每段开头顶格写，但每段之间空一行，比如《剑 8》中的范文格式：

There is no doubt that traffic and pollution from vehicles have become huge problems, both in cities and on motorways everywhere. Solving these problems is likely to need more than a simple rise in the price of petrol.

While it is undeniable that private car use is one of the main causes of the increase in traffic and pollution, higher fuel costs are unlikely to limit the number of drivers for long...

齐头式是 Pat 更推荐同学们在考场中使用的格式，最主要的原因还是出于实战的需要：因为每段之间有空行，所以看起来文章更工整，可以方便考官阅读（而且因为有空行，感觉上文章也显得更长一点：）。需要特别强调的是：剑桥系列中的考官范文全部是用齐头式给出的。

☆ Indented style（缩入式）

这种格式和中文比较接近，就是每段开头后退 3 ~4 个字母的距离，但是每段之间不空行。比如刚才的剑 8 范文如果改用这种格式就变成了下面的样子：

There is no doubt that traffic and pollution from vehicles have become huge problems, both in cities and on motorways everywhere. Solving these problems is likely to need more than a simple rise in the price of petrol.

While it is undeniable that private car use is one of the main causes of the increase in traffic and pollution, higher fuel costs are unlikely to limit the number of drivers for long...

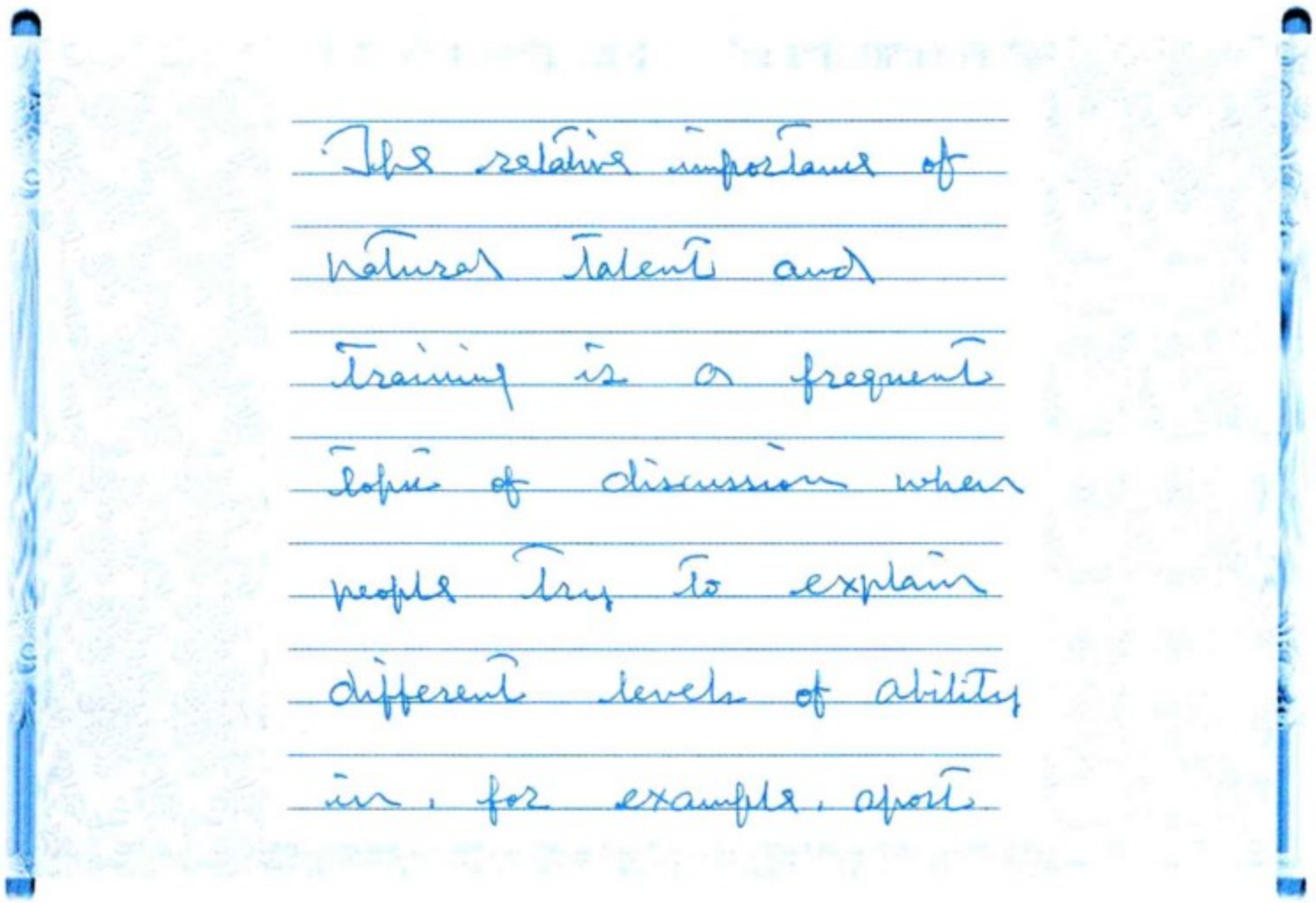
这种格式也许更有艺术性，但是因为没有段间的空行，在考场里比较容易让你的作文显得混乱，所以不太推荐。

至于书写笔迹问题，则更抽象一些。不过建议大家重点把握一个原则：考试时的笔迹永远是易懂第一，美观第二。

如果你能写得漂亮甚至“连笔”当然是好事，可是写作考试的 1 个小时对多数考生来说实在太紧张了，想写得既“帅”又让考官容易看懂，一般考生确实很难做到。

所以，关于笔迹比较实际的做法是：按照你平时习惯的书写方式去写就好了，平淡是真。毕竟对于考试来说，写作速度是主要的矛盾，不必太在意美观的问题。但另一方面，也适当注意笔迹不要太潦草，否则有可能导致难以理解甚至误解。

下面这段是 Pat 自己的“真迹”，不过本人真的并不推荐您在考试时用这样的字体：p



也许剑 8 的第 168 页和 169 页上的字迹在考场里反而更靠谱儿一些（比它们再潦草一点都成）。

雅思作文中是否可以使用 I 和 we？（高分内容）

这个问题看起来很简单，其实是很专业的问题，涉及到英文学术写作的本质。

国外大学的学术论文中一般是不鼓励学生使用这两个词的，更多的时候使用泛指或者用被动形式，比如 It can be argued that... / It is advised that... / It is believed that...这类“更客观”的写法。

那么 IELTS 写作中是否可以使用 I 和 we 呢？最权威的答案，不是我的，也不是其他任何机构的，而应该是雅思考官的范文。

我们来看下面的考官范文实例：

剑 5 第 165 页考官范文主体第 2 段：I think this is less likely today, ...

剑 5 第 165 页考官范文结尾段：My view is that young people...

剑 5 第 169 页考官范文主体第 2 段：My own view is that there is no one...

剑 5 第 169 页考官范文结尾段：In conclusion, I do not think that...

剑 6 第 164 页考官范文结尾段：Personally, I think that...

剑 6 第 168 页考官范文开头段：... the whole way we view the world...

剑 6 第 168 页考官范文结尾段：In conclusion, I would say that...

剑 7 第 163 页第 2 段：... we can find plenty of evidence...

剑 7 第 163 页结尾段：In conclusion, I agree that...

剑 7 第 167 页结尾段第 2 行：I think it is not unrealistic to...

剑 7 第 173 页开头段：I agree with the view that...

剑 7 第 173 页开头段：I agree with the view that...

剑 8 第 167 页第 3 段：I think to tackle the problem...

剑 8 第 167 页第 4 段：To do this, we need to...

剑 8 第 173 页第 4 段：Personally, I think that...

这么多的实例（实际上是剑 5、剑 6、剑 7 和剑 8 后面几乎所有考官范文）全都含有 I，而且其中三篇范文也旗帜鲜明地使用了 we。

所以，请大家再写 IELTS 作文的时候，放心地使用 I 和 we 这两个“主观”的代词吧（当然也没必要刻意用太多次）。

在开头段中是否必须表明自己的观点？（高分内容）

这是一个相当专业的问题，甚至在很多外教中也存在争议。开头段表明自己的观点无疑是可以的，但关键是是否可以选择不在开头段表明自己的观点。

Pat 的答案非常明确：在国外大学里，教授们往往会有自己的偏好，毕竟教授也是人，确实有时会推荐自己的学生用某种开头的方式。但对于雅思作文来说，开头段只有“引出话题”的部分是绝对不能省略的。而其他部分，包括表明自己观点的部分，都是允许考生选择写或是不写的（更具体的您还可以参看本书 Day 7 里的议论文结构表）。

我们还是用剑桥的实例来说话吧，下面的文章开头段均选自剑桥考官的辩论类范文，它们充分说明了开头段是允许选择省略作者的观点的：

（a）剑 8 第 173 页考官范文的开头段：

Some countries have single-sex education models, while in others both single sex and mixed schools co-exist and it is up to the parents or the children to decide which model is preferable.

这是一个再典型不过的只引出背景与话题而不表明自己的态度的开头段。

（b）剑 7 第 163 页考官范文的开头段：

The relative importance of natural talent and training is a frequent topic of discussion when

people try to explain different levels of ability in, for example, sport, art or music.

这是一个更加典型的只有辩论话题而没有表明自己态度的开头段。

如果您觉得这两段文字写得很漂亮，不要着急，通过今后 Day 4，Day5 和 Day 8（下）的认真学习，您将彻底领悟剑桥考官写句子的秘诀。

IELTS 写作里使用被动语态到底好不好？（高分内容）

您可能觉得这个问题更不靠谱：被动语态（passive voice）N 年前就学过了，怎么现在还要问好不好的问题呢？其实这真的是个让 experts 都会头疼的问题。

在国外大学里，很多教授对被动形式相当看重，有些教授甚至明确要求写 research papers 或者 thesis 的时候尽量少用 I，we 这类主观的人称，而是改用一些类似：

It can be argued that...
One argument put forward is that...
It is advised that...
It is believed that...
It is commonly accepted that...
It is reported that...（注意可以用现在时）
It is estimated that...
It is generally recognised that...（recognise: BrE）

这类的表达来凸显学术论文的客观性。

但另一方面，在西方也有一派学者（主要是研究文学或者专攻语言学的）对被动语态相当 BS。比如美国大学里人所共知的写作圣经 *The Elements of Style* 这本书（本书附录部分提供了这本书的网址）中就曾明确指出：

The active voice is usually more direct and vigorous（强有力的）than the passive.
I shall always remember my first visit to Boston.
is much better than
My first visit to Boston will always be remembered by me.

当然，在下文中，九十多年前写这本书的老前辈也承认了被动语态在必要的时候还是可以用的。不过总的来说，他的倾向非常明显：能用主动就尽量不用被动。

对于雅思考生来说，当然没有必要让自己卷入这种“派系斗争”中，但是雅思写作到底是否应该多用被动呢？

There is truth in numbers. 还是用统计数字来说话吧：在《剑 8》当中被动句并不鲜见。比如：

《剑 8》第 163 页：Educating children to understand the need to obey rules and respect others always begins in the home and is widely thought to be the responsibility of parents.

同页：They will certainly be the first to help children learn what is important in life, how they are expected to behave and what role they will play in their world.

《剑 8》第 167 页：Traffic congestion will not be solved by changing the type of private vehicle people can use.

以及《剑 8》第 173 页：Similarly, boys in single-sex schools are more likely to take cookery classes and to study languages, which are often thought of as traditional subjects for girls.

所以，结论就有了：雅思考官对于被动语态并不反感，能自然使用的时候就尽管用吧，一篇雅思作文里出现 2 ~3 次被动形式是完全正常的，只要不是过多就好了。

在句首使用 But 或者 So 是否“犯规”（高分内容）？

这似乎也是个不是问题的问题，但其实这很是个问题（请原谅我的绕口令）。

在英语国家大学中有很多“叫兽”是明确反对在学术论文里用 But 或 So 作为句子开始的，有些比较“勤快”的叫兽看到论文里有这类句子时还往往会指出要求学生改正。

但具体到 IELTS essays，使用 But 和 So 开头的句子却在剑 4 ~剑 8 考官范文中屡见不鲜，例如：

剑 8 例句：

But hopefully times have changed, and both genders（性别）of student can have equal chances to study what they want to in whichever type of school they attend.

But this does not mean that people without these conditions cannot be happy.

So the notion（概念）of “fairness” is not the issue.

So feelings about one's job must reflect（反映）how an individual feels about his or her life as a whole.

等等实例，不一而足，所以在写 IELTS 作文时确实没有必要对于 But 或 So 开始的句子“噤若寒蝉”。

同样的意思是否使用字数更多的英语表达才更拿分？（高分内容）

论证是一种能力。7 分或者以上的作文对于用词的要求是准确而不是“冗长”。在地道英文写作中对于冗词（用简单的话说就是“啰嗦”）其实是很排斥的。比如下面左侧的这些表达，由于用词的意思重复，在国外大学写作时一般都会被教授强制改为右侧的表达方式：

The reason is because... → The reason is...

new innovations → innovations（创新）

more and more + 形容词 → increasingly + 形容词

consensus of opinion → consensus（意见一致）
repeat again → repeat
past history → history
co-operate together → co-operate（with sb.）

另外，Pat 还发现国内考生在作文中喜欢对语气本来就已经很强的形容词再用 very 去修饰，这种写法在国外大学中一般也会被视为“业余选手”。比如：

very beautiful → beautiful
very unique → unique（独一无二的）
very excellent → excellent

IELTS 作文中唯一可以接受的“冗语”是 **There be** 句型。这个句型由于比较拖沓，在国外的大学论文里教授们一般不推荐学生使用，但在剑桥范文中却屡见不鲜。比如下面的这三个剑 8 例句都是：

There are four main causes of farmland becoming degraded in the world today.

There are various other measures that could be implemented（实施）that would have a huge effect on these problems.

Personally, I think that there are advantages to both systems.

思考题

请说明为什么下面这句“名人名言”从英语写作的角度看是错误的：

"I never make predictions, especially about the future."

— Samuel Goldwyn

每日一练 Question of the Day

问答练习

1. 雅思写作考场里如何正确决定 task 1 与 task 2 之间的写作顺序?
2. 应该如何看待写作考试“打草稿”的问题?
3. 如何合理对待写作“机经”?
4. 雅思议论文的“野蛮类”话题包括哪 3 种?

改错练习

请利用本文学到的 Academic writing 学术类写作的特点找出下面句子的错误。

1. 下面的句子从写作风格看存在什么问题?

Mobile phones are so important to our lives. Let everyone use mobile phones!

2. 请在下面的两个句子中间加上一个恰当的连词将其改写为复杂句:

The pollution is increasingly serious. We should take action to deal with it.

3. 请迅速找出下面句子里的拼写错误:

The color scheme of this design is not very organised.

4. 请找出下面句子的非正式词汇并替换:

Today, lots of rivers and lakes have been severely polluted.

5. 请改写下面句子中的词汇使其用词更正式:

The crime rate in cities is higher and higher so I think the advantages of these security (安全) measures are more than disadvantages.

6. 请审核下面句子的引用部分是否恰当?

Many students have behavior problems and parents are worried about this. "To be or not to be, that is the question."

练习答案 Answer Key

问答练习

1 先很快把两道题都浏览一下，如果觉得 task 2 好写就一定先写 task 2，因为占分多。但当感觉 task 2 难度大时则坚决先写 task 1，实战中一分钟也不能浪费。

2 雅思写作考场没有时间写草稿，只能在试题纸上把想到的素材、加分词汇和句型简要记下，供在答题纸上写正文的时候参考。

3 整理机经是很花时间的一件事，考前的时间应该花在更宝贵的地方。本书的附录里面按照话题分类整理了过去 7 年在亚太地区的典型议论文题目，不仅比较全，而且是“机经”的话题分类版。

4 议论文的“野蛮类”话题包括动物类、环境类和犯罪类。

改错练习

1 本句感情色彩过强，完全不符合 academic writing 的要求，可以改为：Mobile phones play a key roles in our lives; therefore, we should further advance the mobile phone technology.

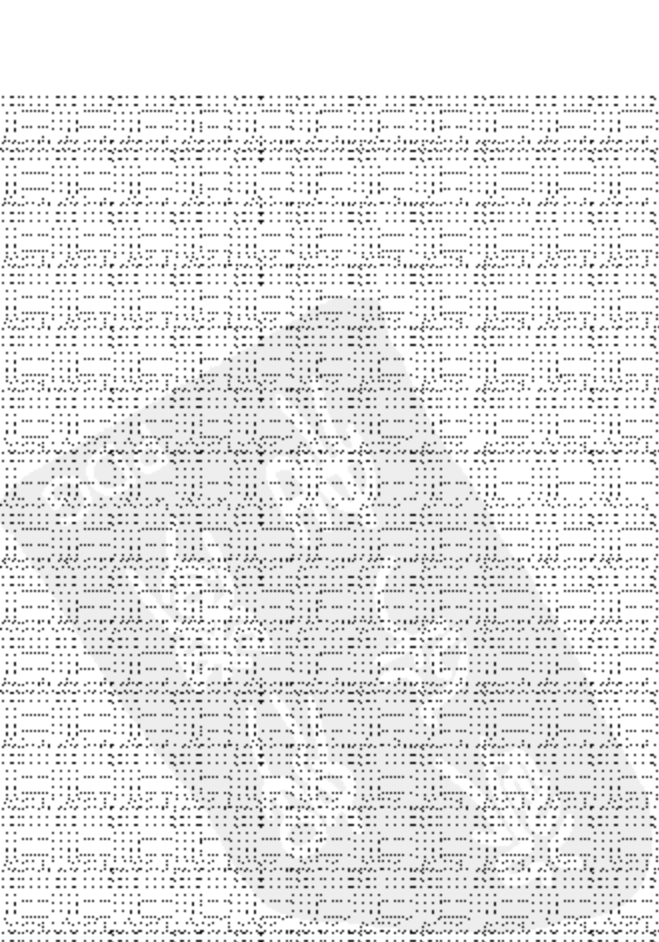
2 两句话是因果关系，中间可以加上 therefore/ thus / hence。

3 -or 结尾是美式拼写，-se 结尾是英式拼写，可以把 color 改为 colour 或者把 organise 改成 organize。

4 句子中 lots of 是口语词汇，可以改成 a host of 或者 numerous。

5 全句可改为 The crime rate in urban areas is increasingly high; therefore, I am convinced that the advantages of these security measures outweigh their disadvantages.

6 莎士比亚的这句名言用在这里实在是小题大做，可以改写为：Parents are concerned about their children's behavioral problems at school and they argue that immediate steps should be taken to change this situation.



Mission Statement

—分类法

—替代法

—裸奔法

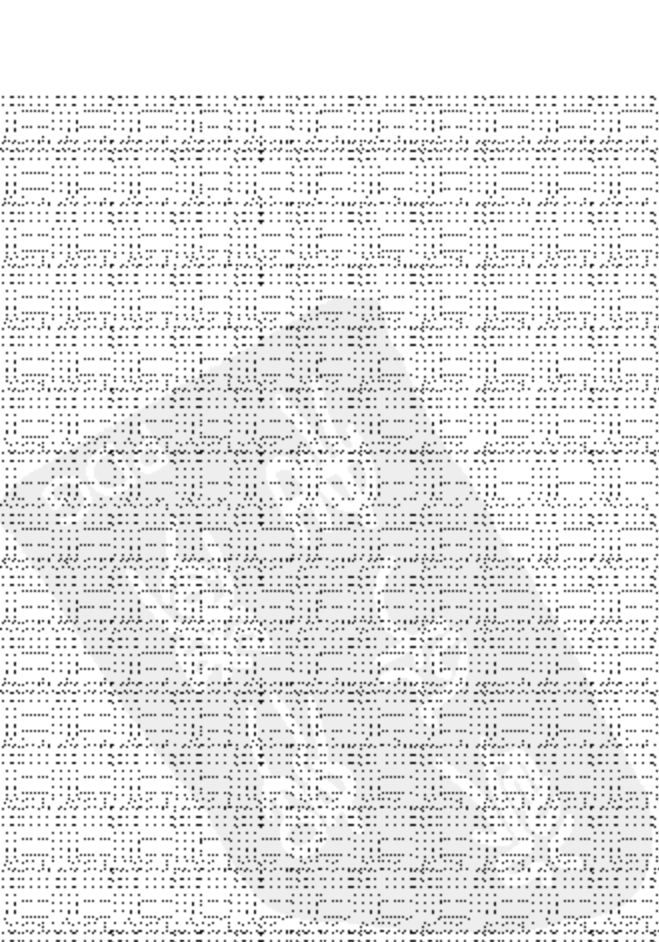
Day 2

我怎么想素材

Eureka!

An idea that can be put into action is way better than an idea that can only exist as an idea.

— *Pat*



如果没有足够的写作素材，即使满脑子都是经典的句型和词汇也不会有用武之地。遗憾的是，很多考生并没有掌握有效的方法在有限时间里面找到写作考官希望看到的素材，就匆匆进考场当了牺牲品。

至于什么是雅思考官希望看到的素材，国内考生甚至一些培训教师都明显陷入了一个误区。

有件事情必须明确：就是 IELTS 写作与美国的 GRE 考试写作部分是有本质区别的。GRE 是真正的思维能力测试，美国本土的学生申请 graduate schools 也同样需要提供 GRE 成绩，所以它对 ideas 的要求是 profound（深刻的）。而 IELTS 是很典型的语言能力测试，只有英语非母语的人在申请大学或者移民时才需要提供 IELTS 成绩。所以它的写作部分主要目的是考查考生用英语表达出 ideas 的能力，对于 ideas 本身的要求是 reasonable（符合常理的），却并不是 profound（深刻的）。

这个事实同样可以从剑桥系列的范文实例中清晰地看出来。仔细研究本书 Day 8（下）部分分析的大量剑桥范文，并对比本书附录（A）的最后几篇范文，您会发现剑桥考官范文的素材确实只能算是符合生活常理，虽然用词造句很好，但如果把范文的思路翻译成中文，你真的会发现道理实在太浅显了，跟“深刻”两个字完全不沾边儿。

如何把 reasonable 的素材在 40 分钟之内用正确、流畅的英文表达出来，才是 IELTS 写作的真正挑战，也才是考官真正强过考生之处。

我在授课过程中要求每个同学在一分钟之内要能想出可以写 300 个单词的素材。如何达到这样的神速呢？有 3 种方法，下面给大家逐一讲解。

首先请阅读下面的题目，并且尝试着在短时间内确定主体段的理由分论点。

IELTS 写作真题

★ Increasing the price of petrol（汽油）is the best way to solve growing traffic and pollution problems. To what extent do you agree or disagree?（剑 8 test 3）

★ In some countries the average weight of people is increasing and their levels of health and fitness are decreasing. What do you think are the causes of these problems and what measures should be taken to solve them?（剑 8 test 4）

★ As most people spend a major part of their adult life at work, job satisfaction is an important element of individual wellbeing. What factors contribute to job satisfaction? How

realistic is the expectation of job satisfaction of all workers? (剑 7 test 3)

★ Some people think that universities should provide graduates with the knowledge and skills needed in the workplace. Others think that the true function of a university should be to give access to knowledge for its own sake, regardless of whether the course is useful to an employer. What, in your opinion, should be the main function of a university? (剑 7 test 4)

★ Some people think old buildings should be destroyed and replaced with modern buildings. Do you agree or disagree?

★ Some high-school graduates go to travel or work for a period of time before they go to study in universities. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of this practice.

★ Some people think motorized flight was the greatest invention in the 20th century and it has the biggest impact on our lives. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

※ 其中 motorized flight 是“机械化飞行”，impact 是“影响”。

★ Some people think stricter punishment for driving offenders is the only effective way to improve safety on the roads. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

※ 其中 punishment 是“惩罚”的意思，offender 是“肇事者”。

★ The only way to solve housing shortage in big cities is through the help of the government. To what extent do you agree?

※ 其中 shortage 是“短缺”。

★ Many people are optimistic about the 21st century and see it as an opportunity to make positive changes to the world. To what extent do you agree or disagree with their optimism? What changes would you like to be made in the new century?

※ 其中 optimistic 是“乐观的”。

★ People today can perform the everyday tasks such as shopping, banking or even business transactions, without meeting others face to face. What effects will this phenomenon have on individuals and society as a whole?

※ 其中 perform 是动词“从事”，transaction 是名词“交易”。

★ Some people think the exterior of buildings is more important than their functions. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

※ 其中 exterior 是“外观”，function 是“功能”。

以上题目都看了一遍，怎么样？短时间内决定主体段的分论点是不是挺难的？

3 种快速解题方法

分类法 A =（B，C,...）

原理：当题目的讨论对象（A）过于广泛或者抽象的时候，我们可以把讨论对象具体化，对其加以分类（B，C...）。比如分成两大类，那么素材就比原来增加了一倍，如果分成 3 类，那素材就是原来的 3 倍了。这样我们发现可写的内容成倍地增加了。需要强调的是，分类法对同学们在考场里的思维清晰程度要求是比较高的，分类时应该尽可能全面、科学，否则有可能出现逻辑上的问题。

具体说明如下：

第一题

Some people think old buildings should be destroyed and replaced with modern buildings. Do you agree or disagree?

提示：老房子包含的范围非常广，直接入手很可能会有困难。那么从拆还是不拆的角度看，老房子可以分成几大类呢？明显是两大类：应该拆的和不该拆的。所以全文写四段（文章结构的安排我们会在学习 Day 7 内容时作透彻的分析，今天只重点讲快速突破素材的方法）。

Para. 1 Introduction 背景介绍，现在城市里老房子很多。人们对是否要拆掉有争议（There are a vast number of old structures in cities today. Whether they should be demolished is a controversial issue.）。

Para. 2 提出一些老房子应该拆，分论点可以写两点：比如老房子不安全（unsafe）或者影响市容（spoil the cityscape）。

Para. 3 另外一些老房子不能拆。这一段可以写三个分论点，可以再次使用分类法，比如分成有特殊历史意义的老房子（buildings of historic value），非常漂亮的老房子（gorgeous historic buildings）和特殊的民居（unique ethnic architecture）等等。

Para. 4 Conclusion 结论：有些老房子由于城市发展必须拆掉，但是有特殊价值的不能拆，反而应该有效保护（should be effectively preserved）。

全文结束。

※ 如果你发现英文部分有很多你不认识的词汇，不用紧张，到 Day 3 我们会集中突破词汇。

再练习一道题：

V

第二题

Some high-school graduates go to travel or work for a period of time before they go to study in universities. Discuss advantages and disadvantages of this practice to their studies in university.

提示： 我们可以按照学生的不同学科讨论，把讨论对象（high-school graduates）分成准备学文科的学生（high-school graduates who plan to study humanities or social science in university）和准备学理工科的学生（high-school graduates who intend to study science and engineering in university）两大类。旅游和工作对中学生的影响明显是不同的，两个主体段分别讨论进大学之前先去旅游或者工作对两类学生各自的利与弊，内容就增加了一倍。当然，如果学科分得更细，比如再加上艺术类，那么可写的内容就更多了。

替代法 A ⇒ B, C, D...

原理： 当我们发现题目当中出现-est（形容词最高级），only（唯一的）或者 ban/stop（禁止）这类词汇的时候，就可以用替代法。这三类词汇的共同点是它们的语气都很绝对，“最……”/“唯一的”/“完全禁止”，听起来很恐怖。这样的逻辑命题如果仔细推敲多半站不住脚：因为它们太绝对因而想证明它们对会非常困难。而如果想证明它们错呢？很简单，举出几个反例就好了。

第一题

Some people think motorized flight was the greatest invention in the 20th century and it has the biggest impact on our lives. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

分析： 要想证明机械化飞行是最伟大的发明在逻辑上相当困难，而想证明它不是最伟大的发明只要找出另一种更伟大的发明替代它就可以了。比如 computers，the Internet，cloning，mobile phones 和汽车（automobiles），对人们生活的影响都明显比机械化飞行更大。全篇写四段：

Para. 1 Introduction 背景介绍，说现在飞机被广泛使用（are used extensively），但它到底是不是 20 世纪最伟大的发明人们尚有争议（is highly debatable）。

Para. 2 让步段，先承认飞机是一种伟大的发明（Admittedly，motorised flight was a groundbreaking invention in the twentieth century.），接下来举两点分论点支持就可以，比如它促进国际贸易（promote international business），促进文化交流（international cultural communication）……

Para. 3 举出反例，证明它并不是最伟大的发明（However，there were inventions even more influential than motorised flight.），比如 computers，the Internet 和 automobiles。

Para. 4 结论：motorised flight 是 20 世纪伟大的发明之一，但是还有比它对人类影响更大的发明。

全文结束。

再看一道替代法的题目：

第二题

Some people think stricter punishment for driving offenders is the only effective way to improve safety on the roads. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

分析： only 这个词说明这个命题很可能有逻辑错误。其实不难想象改善道路安全如果只是管理司机肯定不够。

Para. 1 Introduction

Para. 2 让步段（Admittedly，giving driving offenders stricter punishment contributes to the improvement of road safety.）

Para. 3 举反例（On the other hand，there are plenty of other choices that can improve safety on the roads.），比如，管理好行人（pedestrians），提高交通警察（在英国通常被简称为 traffic officers，完整的叫法则是 road policing officers）的工作效率，改善道路设备等措施也都会有效。

Para. 4 结论：只管理司机是不够的，需要整个社会的努力。

第三题

Increasing the price of petrol is the best way to solve growing traffic and pollution problems. To what extent do you agree or disagree? What other measures do you think might be effective? （剑 8 test 3）

分析： the best 这个词强烈暗示我们这个命题很可能存在逻辑漏洞。其实近期的国际油价飙升（petrol price hike）已经明白无误地说明了油价上涨必然带来交通、食品、旅行等费用的全面上涨（across-the-board rises in transport costs，food prices and travel expenses），进而引发一系列经济与社会问题（trigger a series of socio-economic problems，such as high inflation，reduced industry profits and less travel），甚至直接导致经济衰退（drag the economy into recession）。所以汽油涨价不可能是“最好”的解决交通与环境问题的方法。发展更环保的交通工具（例如 electric cars 电动汽车或者 hybrid vehicles 混合动力车）、提高公众的环保意识（raise the public awareness of environmental protection）、提高公交服务的质量（improve the public transport services available to citizens）等措施都是比简单提高油价“更好”的反例。

裸奔法 TM STREEC $

V

名字听起来很火爆吧？用起来更火爆！这种方法是考场里**最实用的一种方法**，覆盖了人类生活中所有常见的方面，而且可以把抽象的题目迅速具体化。这种方法需要我们快速记忆 18 个单词。

先看下面的三组符号：

TM STREEC $

其中的 streec 和英文的裸奔 streak 这个单词正好发音相同，所以叫这种方法“**裸奔法**”。这三个符号可以帮助我们快速记忆下面的九组共 18 个英文单词。请各位同学先把下面每一行词汇的第一个单词看一遍，每行的第二个词先不看：

Technology & Efficiency（效率）

Mind & Soul（精神）

Society & Crime

Time & Space

Rights & Responsibilities

Environment & Health

Employment（就业）& Competition（竞争）

Culture & Population

Money & Fun

你会发现，每行的第一个单词首字母拼在一起，就是 **TM STREEC $** 这三个符号。把三个符号多写几遍，同时回忆对应的 9 个单词，几次下来，每行的第一个词就记住了。

再看每行的第二个词，它们和每行的第一个词都有严格的逻辑对应关系，这样记忆起来很快。请看：

科技（提高）效率

头脑（对应）精神

社会犯罪（严重）

时间（对应）空间

权利（对应）义务

环境（影响）健康

就业竞争（激烈）

文化人口（创造）

金钱（买到）乐趣

这样我们通过 TM STREEC $ 这三个符号可以记牢每行的第一个词，再通过逻辑关系来记牢每行的第二个词。在考场里即使再紧张，有了这些提示也就不会忘了。

而且在考试实战中，Pat 建议大家不要写全每个单词，只要用下面的缩写提示自己就好了，以进一步节省宝贵的实际写作时间。

TM STREEC $

Tech & Ef

Mind & Soul

Soci & Crim

Time & Spa

Ri & Resp

Envi & Heal

Empl & Comp

Cul & Pop

Mon & Fun

下面举例说明。

第一题

Many people are optimistic about the 21st century and see it as an opportunity to make positive changes to the world. To what extent do you agree or disagree with their optimism? What changes would you like to be made in the new century?

※ 其中 optimistic 是“乐观的”。

分析： 这道题说白了就是问我们 21 世纪的利大于弊还是弊大于利。

那么，21 世纪的利弊各有哪些呢？立即用裸奔法分析。

21 世纪在 technology，efficiency，rights，money，fun 等方面明显取得了积极的进展；而 21 世纪在 soul（压力大），crime，environment，employment，competition，population 等方面明显存在令人担心的状况。

素材确定，分析完毕。如此之大的一个话题，立即就被“裸奔法”具体化了。

再看一道题。

V

第二题

People today can perform the everyday tasks such as shopping, banking or even business transactions, without meeting others face to face. What effects will this phenomenon have on individuals and society as a whole?

※ 其中 perform 是动词“从事”，transaction 是名词“交易”。

分析： 其实就是分析电子商务（e-commerce）对个人与对社会的影响。

对个人的影响从 efficiency，money，fun 这几方面很快可以确定。

对社会的影响则从 efficiency，crime，employment 这几方面也能迅速确定。

第三题

As most people spend a major part of their adult life at work, job satisfaction is an important element of individual wellbeing. What factors contribute to job satisfaction? How realistic is the expectation of job satisfaction of all workers?

※ 其中 job satisfaction 是“工作满意度”，element 是“成分”，factor 是“因素”，realistic 是“现实的”。

分析： 第一个问题问的是有哪些因素会影响员工的工作满意度呢？第二个问题的本质是问从现实情况说雇主可以在哪些方面提高员工的满意度？两个问题可以分别在两个主体段里回答。

影响员工满意度的因素可以从 efficiency，soul（例如 stress），rights，environment，health，competition，money 等很多方面中选择 2 ~3 个来论述。

而雇主可以为改善员工满意度所做的事情则可以通过 money，space，fun，culture（比如 corporate culture 企业文化）等方面瞬间搞定。

第四题

Some people think that universities should provide graduates with the knowledge and skills needed in the workplace. Others think that the true function of a university should be to give access to knowledge for its own sake, regardless of whether the course is useful to an employer. What, in your opinion, should be the main function of a university?

※ 其中 give access to 是“让……获得……”，for its own sake 是“就是为了……而……”，regardless of 是“不论”（这些雅思真题高频词组我们在后面的 Day 5 和 Day 6 中都将学到）。

分析： 大学的目的到底是教就业技能还是教理论知识呢？在现代社会，多数大学是盈利性的，学生们花钱去上学，所以教就业技能对于招生还是很重要的。但是今天的科技变化太快，所以理论也有作用，可以让毕业生在就业技能过时的时候拥有更新自己知识的能力。

教 job skills 的必要性可以从 efficiency，employment，competition 和 money 等方面选择 2 ~3点来论述。

教 theories 的理由则可以从 mind 或者 technology 方面快速解决。

分析完毕。

有了“裸奔法”就再也不用在考场里无奈地狂啃“IELTS 专用铅笔”了。

第五题

Some people believe that there should be fixed punishments for each type of crime. Others, however, argue that the circumstances of an individual crime, and the motivation for committing it, should always be taken into account when deciding on the punishment. Discuss both these views and give your own opinion. （剑 7 test 2）

※ 其中 fixed 是“固定的”，circumstances 是“处境”，motivation 是“动机”，commit crime 是“犯罪”，take into account 则是“考虑到”。

分析： 这是剑 7 中的第二套作文题，难度相当大。那么到底是该对每种犯罪给予固定的量刑还是应该有灵活度，充分考虑罪犯的处境和犯罪动机来决定量刑呢？这个问题即使在法律界也存在争议，否则也不会出现西方媒体对今年海地大地震中的难民哄抢食品事件“判还是不判”的争议了。那么在时间和心理都极为紧张的考场条件下应该如何决断呢？

固定量刑的好处可以有：

efficiency（提高司法效率），crime（有效控制犯罪），money（减少司法过程的费用）等。

量刑时充分考虑罪犯处境和犯罪动机的好处则可以有：

soul（更人道），society（有利于社会和谐），rights（罪犯也是公民，公民权理应得到尊重）等。

不管是正着说还是反着说都很轻松。

V

第六题

In some countries the average weight of people is increasing and their levels of health and fitness are decreasing. What do you think are the causes of these problems and what measures should be taken to solve them? (剑 8 test 4)

分析： 肥胖人数激增的原因从 technology（特别是 automation 自动化技术的发展），time（leisure time 休闲时间的增加），health（health sense / health consciousness 健康意识的缺乏和 addiction to junk food 对垃圾食品的痴迷），money & fun（公众用于饮食和娱乐的开支增加）等方面都可以言之有据。相应的，解决办法就有鼓励大家多运动（encourage the public to get active and exercise regularly）、提倡健康饮食（promote healthy diets）以及减少对自动化生活方式的依赖（change the automated lifestyle）等等。

测测你的进展

请快速确定下面作文题的主体段分论点。

The only way to solve housing shortage in big cities is through the help of the government. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

※ shortage 是“短缺”。

The purpose of libraries is to provide books. They should not use limited resources and space to provide CDs or DVDs. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

Scientific research should be carried out by the government rather than the private companies. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

每日一练 Question of the Day

问答练习

1. 替代法的三个标志词分别是什么?
2. motorised flight 中文是什么意思?
3. 电子商务的英文如何表达?

填空练习

请迅速填写 TM STREEC $ 法当中的空格对应的单词:

Technology & _____

_____ & Soul

Society & _____

Time & _____

Rights & _____

_____ & Health

Employment & _____

Culture & _____

_____ & Fun

分析练习

请用 TM STREEC $ 法快速思考出下面两题的主体段各自的分论点，并用英文简要表述出来:

1. Some people think students should focus on a few subjects while others think they should study a wide range of subjects. Discuss.
2. The media should not report crimes in detail. To what extent do you agree?

练习答案 Answer Key

问答练习

1 替代法的三个标志词是 only，-est 或者 ban/stop。

2 名词 motorised flight 是“机械化飞行”。

3 “电子商务” 英文是 e-business/e-commerce。

填空练习

Technology & Efficiency

Mind & Soul

Society & Crime

Time & Space

Rights & Responsibilities

Environment & Health

Employment & Competition

Culture & Population

Money & Fun

分析练习

1 分析：主体段两段分别写集中学习某几门课的好处和广泛学习科目的好处。用 TM STREEC $ 法得出分论点如下：

Focusing on certain subjects allows them to better concentrate on the specialised knowledge, which enhances（提高）their efficiency in study.

— efficiency

Focusing on specific subjects enables them to grasp these subjects better.

— mind

Studying a wide range of subjects gives students the opportunity to expand their outlook（开阔眼界）.

— mind

Understanding a wide variety of subjects helps students to find a job more easily upon graduation.

— employment

Studying subjects such as music and painting deepens students' understanding of arts and culture in general.

— culture

② 分析：主体段两段分别写媒体报道犯罪细节的好处与坏处。用 TM STREEC $ 法得出分论点如下：

Detailed reports of crimes may leave citizens apprehensive（担惊受怕的） about their own safety.

— soul

Detailed coverage（报导）of crimes may help potential（潜在的） criminals avoid mistakes in their criminal plan and further drive up the already high crime rate.

— crime

Reports of violent crimes bring sufferings to the victims of these crimes.

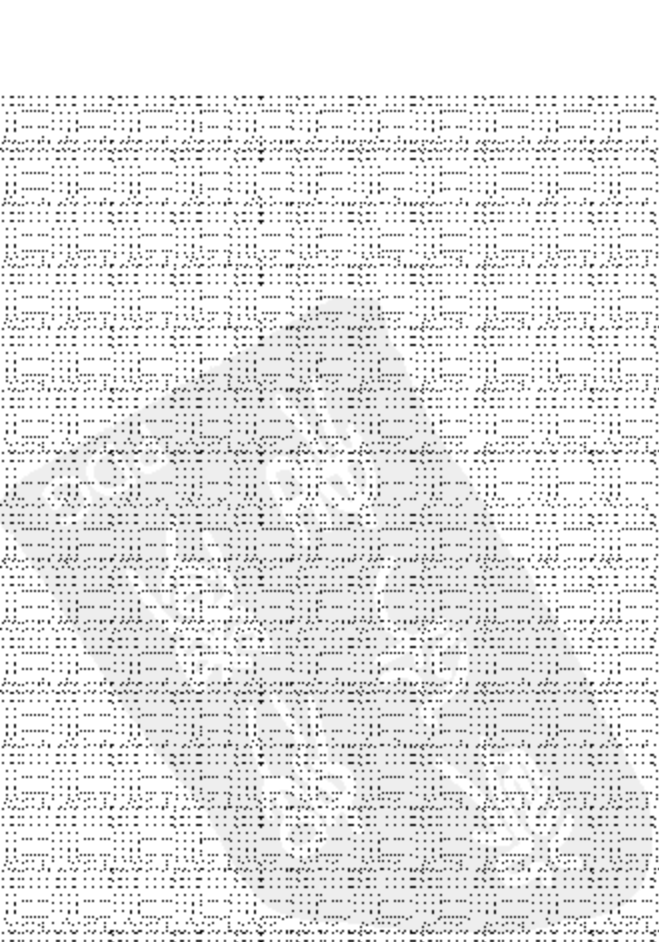
— right

Citizens can better understand how criminals carry out their criminal plans through reading reports about these crimes, which helps law-abiding（守法的）citizens acquire knowledge about protecting themselves against crime.

— mind

Such reports can effectively increase the popularity of the media among specific（特定的）audiences（观众或听众）, enabling the media to make more money and create more job opportunities.

— $ and employment



Mission Statement

—6分作文兴备的136个词

—高分作文兴备的288个词

—灵活使用同义词

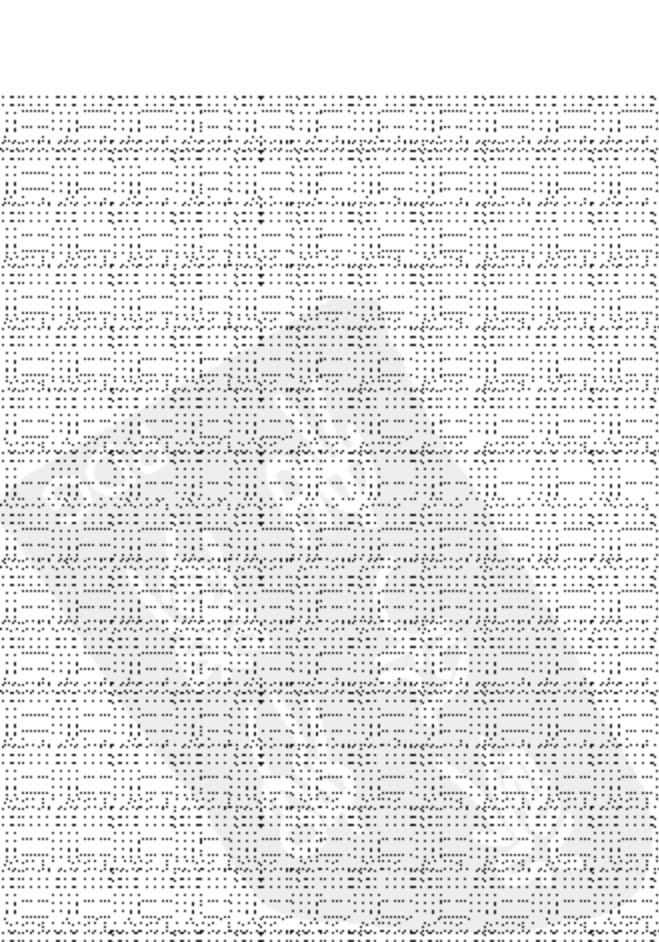
Day 3

多大的词汇量算大

IELTS Writing Word Bank

Writing requires discipline. Your initial discipline is your vocabulary, then grammar and punctuation and finally the courage to simply everything.

— Pat



大家都知道，如果要考高分（7 分或者以上），写作需要比较大的词汇量。那么雅思作文到底多大词汇量算大呢？我的教学实践告诉我，够用的词汇量就叫大词汇量！

必须要清楚这个事实：除非非要考 9 分，否则一篇文章里有 7 ~10 个单词有一定的难度就已经很不错了，关键是要把单词用准确。请仔细看看剑 4 到剑 8 后面的高分范文到底用了多少难词就是很好的证明。我们为什么总是做一厢情愿的事呢？为什么不把有限的备考时间用在把真正精华的词汇背准确呢？

作文课上我常常跟同学们说："想考 6. 5 甚至 7 分，掌握议论文常用的 288 个单词就足够了。如果目标是 6 分，甚至还可以减少到最精华的 136 个单词，而图表题 20 个词绝对够用。背得再多就是鸡肋，因为在考场里面你根本想不起来那么多单词。"

Come on，我知道您对我的说法充满了怀疑。可惜备考时间这么紧，单词必须记最常用的。根据过去大量的学生考场实战经验，下面的词汇确实是写作考场里面最实用的 136 个词。请您先看看这些词再怀疑也不晚。 :)

OK. Here we go.

雅思议论文 6 分必备 136 个词汇分类讲解

说明：⇩

❶ 对于基础一般的同学，划等号的同义词只要掌握一个就够。

❷ 今后的 7 天里我们会通过大量的例句和范文来不断加深大家对这些词汇的印象。

话题	排序	词汇	词性	含义
Education	1	**parenting**	*n.*	家长对小孩的教育
	2	**schooling**	*n.*	学校对学生的教育
	3	**cultivate**	*vt.*	培养
	4	**awareness = sense = recognition**	*n.*	意识
	5	**creative/original**	*adj.*	有创造力的
	6	**physical**	*adj.*	身体的
	7	**psychological**	*adj.*	心理的
	8	**peer**	*n.*	同龄人
	9	**motivation**	*n.*	动力（形容词 motivated，有动力的）

V

（续表）

话题	排序	词汇	词性	含义
Education	10	**adapt to**		适应……
	11	**discipline**	*n.*	学科，纪律
	12	**memorise**（英式拼写）	*vt.*	记忆
	13	**acquire**	*vt.*	获得（后面经常加 knowledge/skills）
	14	**stimulating**	*adj.*	有趣的（在教育类作文中经常可以代替 interesting）
Media	15	**prevalent**	*adj.*	形容词“无处不在的”，经常可以代替 everywhere
	16	**objective**	*adj.*	客观的
	17	**biased**	*adj.*	不客观的
	18	**celebrity**	*n.*	名人
	19	**journalists**	*n.*	记者
	20	**the press**		新闻界
	21	**coverage**	*n.*	报道（动词是 cover）
	22	**misleading**	*adj.*	有误导性的
	23	**dependable**	*adj.*	可靠的
	24	**up-to-the-minute**	*adj.*	非常及时的
	25	**sway**	*vt.*	媒体影响公众经常用 sway 后面加宾语的表达
	26	**informative**	*adj.*	信息量大的
	27	**entertaining**	*adj.*	娱乐性强的
Technology	28	**transform**	*vt.*	改变，代替 change
	29	**breakthrough**	*n.*	突破
	30	**advance**	*v. & n.*	发展
	31	**a staggering rate**		惊人的速度
	32	**information overload**		信息爆炸
	33	**enhance = boost**	*vt.*	提高，增强
	34	**innovations**	*n.*	创新，发明
	35	**telecommunications**	*n.*	远程通信
	36	**productive**	*adj.*	高生产率的（它的名词 productivity 生产率对于科技类话题也很常用）
Government	37	**priority**	*n.*	首要任务
	38	**stability**	*n.*	稳定
	39	**establish**	*vt.*	建立
	40	**solve = combat = tackle = resolve = address**	*vt.*	解决……

（续表）

话题	排序	词汇	词性	含义
Government	41	**alleviate = ease**	*vt.*	减轻，缓解
	42	**invest in = allocate money to**		对……投资
	43	**the authorities**		当局
	44	**ban = forbid = prohibit**	*vt.*	禁止
	45	**scrutinise/monitor**	*vt.*	监督
	46	**administer = regulate**	*vt.*	管理
	47	**tax revenue**		税收
	48	**democratic**	*adj.*	民主的
	49	**demand**	*vt. & n.*	需求
	50	**efficient**	*adj.*	高效率的
Tourism	51	**broaden one's horizons/ expand one's outlook**		开阔人的眼界
	52	**conflicts**	*n.*	冲突
	53	**explore**	*vt.*	探索
	54	**promote**	*vt.*	促进（反义词是 restrict，阻碍或限制）
	55	**tourist attraction**		旅游点
	56	**local residents = local inhabitants**		当地居民
	57	**mutual understanding**		相互了解
	58	**enrich one's experience**		丰富人的经历
Languages	59	**the proliferation of...**		……的大量扩散（比如英语，互联网，环境污染等）
	60	**plays a dominant role in...**		在……占统治地位
	61	**go extinct**		灭绝
	62	**lesser-known languages**		小语种
	63	**the widespread use of...**		……的广泛使用
Culture	64	**ancestors**	*n.*	祖先
	65	**descendants**（请注意倒数第三个字母是 a 不是 e，很容易拼错）	*n.*	后代
	66	**cultural assimilation**		文化同化
	67	**indiscriminate**	*adj.*	盲目的
	68	**time-honoured**	*adj.*	历史悠久的
	69	**cultural heritage**		文化遗产

（续表）

话题	排序	词汇	词性	含义
Culture	70	**cultural diversity**		文化多样性
	71	**cultural identity**		文化特性
	72	**ethnic minorities**		少数民族
Development	73	**the pace of life = the tempo of life**		生活节奏
	74	**the gap between the urban area and the rural area**		城乡差距
	75	**eliminate**	*vt.*	消除
	76	**inferior**	*adj.*	质量差的
	77	**facilities**	*n.*	设施
	78	**alienated**	*adj.*	（人与人之间）疏远的
	79	**materialistic**	*adj.*	（人）物质化的，现实的
	80	**the present situation = the current situation = the status quo**		现状
	81	**exterior**	*n.*	（建筑的）外观
	82	**function**	*n.*	功能
Globalisation	83	**sweeping trends**		席卷一切的潮流
	84	**synthesise the Asian and the Western cultures**		有机结合东西方文化（culture 表示种类时可以加复数）
	85	**erode**	*vt.*	侵蚀（本土文化）
	86	**universal**	*adj.*	普遍的
	87	**isolated**	*adj.*	孤立的
	88	**import**	*vt. & n.*	进口
	89	**export**	*vt. & n.*	出口
Women	90	**domestic violence**		家庭暴力
	91	**gender equality**		性别平等
	92	**discrimination**	*n.*	歧视（后面的介词跟 against）
	93	**an enlightened society**		一个开明的社会
	94	**household chores**		家务事
	95	**be tied down by**		被……所拖累
Family	96	**offspring**	*n.*	后代
	97	**personality clashes**		性格冲突
	98	**household**	*n.*	家庭的另一种写法
	99	**affluent**	*adj.*	富裕的
	100	**impoverished**	*adj.*	贫穷的

（续表）

话题	排序	词汇	词性	含义
Family	101	**community**	*n.*	社区
	102	**family values**		家庭观念
	103	**generation gap**		代沟
	104	**family bonds**		亲情
	105	**harmony**	*n.*	和谐
Crime	106	**crimes = offence = criminal acts**	*n.*	犯罪
	107	**commit a crime**		犯罪（动词短语）
	108	**stringent**	*adj.*	严厉的
	109	**punishment/penalty**	*n.*	惩罚
	110	**the crime rate = the incidence of crime**		犯罪率
	111	**rampant**	*adj.*	猖獗的
	112	**violate the law**		违法
	113	**restrict**	*vt.*	限制（自由等）
	114	**impulsive**	*adj.*	冲动的
	115	**consequence**	*n.*	后果
	116	**circumstance**	*n.*	处境，状况
	117	**reform/rehabilitate criminals**		改造罪犯
Animals	118	**preserve**	*vt.*	保护（某种资源，比如 natural resources 或者 old buildings），如果保护某人可以用 protect
	119	**inhumane**	*adj.*	残酷的
	120	**biodiversity**	*n.*	生物多样性
	121	**companions**	*n.*	伙伴
	122	**replacements = alternatives**	*n.*	替代物（比如化妆品实验用动物作替代物而不用人做实验）
	123	**habitat**	*n.*	栖息地
	124	**endangered species**		濒危动物
	125	**hide**	*n.*	兽皮（兽毛是 fur）
Environment	126	**sustainable development**		可持续发展
	127	**exploit natural resources**		开采自然资源
	128	**the ecosystem（请大家记住许多 eco-开头的单词都和生态有关）**		生态系统
	129	**disposable**	*adj.*	一次性的(比如 disposable chopsticks)

V

（续表）

话题	排序	词汇	词性	含义
Environment	130	**conserve**	*vt.*	节约，环境类题可以代替 save
	131	**deteriorate** **aggravate**	*vt.*	如果某种现象自身恶化，就用 deteriorate 如果某种事物导致别的现象恶化，就用 aggravate sth. 或者用被动形式
	132	**discharge**	*vt.*	排放（污染物）
	133	**contamination**	*n.*	污染（这个词很大，即使写作中也不要用的次数过多）
	134	**consume = deplete**	*vt.*	消耗（资源）
	135	**eco-friendly**	*adj.*	有益于环保的
	136	**scarcity**	*n.*	短缺

136 个最高频词我们都看了一遍，如果这些词您真的能做到在考场里非常熟练、自然地把它们用出来，一定会发现您的议论文用词难度已经不低了，如需深入研究它们的实战应用还可以参看本书的姐妹篇《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》。雅思作文并不要求全篇都是大词，用词准确度是第一位的，即使是剑桥提供的满分范文真正算得上难的词汇一篇里也就是 6 ~8 个左右。

如果您写作的目标分数是 6.5 或者 7 分，并且考试之前还有一些准备时间，建议可以看 Pat 总结出的 288 个高分词汇。根据教学实践，即使是打算考高分的考生，下面的词汇也不需要全部记忆，只要把其中你认为自己比较常用的词汇标记出来记忆就好了。还是那个道理：只有在考场里我们能够想到去用的词汇，才是真正有效的词汇。

IELTS 写作 288 个高分词汇

说明：⇩

❶ 不要让词汇表限制你思考素材的思路，想素材时仍然用 Day 2 讲的思考素材的三种方法。

❷ 某个类别的词汇也可能用在其他类别，比如 transform（变革，及物动词）被列在 technology 类里，但是也可以用在讨论 development 类的话题里。

❸ 注意词汇的用法，尤其是词性。

❹（or）表示括号里的词可以替代括号前面的词，“/”符号表示前一个词和后一个词都可以用。剑 8 的考官评语中对同义词代换提出了更高的要求，如果有时间有脑力，就应该

多积累一些同义词。需要写作 7 或者更高分的同学最好能认真掌握本书附录里的“211 工程”。

⑤ 中文解释在前，英语表达在后。

⑥ 词库不仅仅是单词的机械罗列，对于特殊词汇还以词组形式出现，有助于理解和记忆。

Education

培养	cultivate (*v.*) foster (*v.*) nurture (*v.*)
促进学生身心发展	promote the student's physical, mental (or intellectual) and emotional development
心理健康	psychological soundness (or well-being/ welfare)
上学	attend school (“上学”似乎根本不是个问题，但其实在 IELTS 写作里也有比 go to school 更精准的表达。如果要具体写去上某一所或者某类学校则可以给 school 加上 a 或者复数) 《剑 8》例句：Others, however, believe that boys and girls benefit more from attending mixed schools (男女合校).
只有男生或女生的学校	single-sex school
学习能力（先天）	aptitude (*n.*) talent (*n.*)
学习能力（后天）	skill (*n.*)
学校教育	schooling (*n.*)
家庭教育	upbringing (*n.*) / parenting (*n.*)
给学生以动力	give the students motivation to do sth. / motivate the students to do sth.
青少年	adolescents (*n.*) youngsters (*n.*) youths (*n.*)
传授知识	impart (or inculcate) knowledge

灌输高尚的道德观念	instill high moral values （注意这里 value 是复数，表示价值观，如《剑 8》例句：In order to be a good member of any society, the individual must respect and obey the rules of their community and share their values.）
给学生以灵感	give the students inspiration
教学法	teaching（or pedagogical）methodology
适应	adapt to sth. adjust oneself to sth. become accustomed to sth.
适应能力	adaptability（*n.*）
学生对老师所教知识的掌握	students' grasp（or command）of what has been taught
就业技能	employable（or marketable）skills
填鸭式教法教学生	force-feed the students
学生不应该只是被动接受知识的容器。	Students should not be treated as passive receptacles of predigested ideas.
死记硬背	learn things by rote
为了记忆而记忆	memorise for memorisation's own sake
责任感	a sense of obligation/duty/responsibility
记忆方程式、公式、定理、定律	memorise equations, formulas, theorems and laws
应用	apply（*vt.*）
盲从	follow sth. blindly follow sth. indiscriminately
限制创造力的发展	extinguish（or stifle/constrain）creativity
打击学生的积极性	dampen（or sap）the students' enthusiasm frustrate the students
产生不必要的压力	beget（or create）undue pressure
塑造某人的性格	mould one's character （mould 是英式拼写）
把学生分开教育	segregate students

同龄人	peers (*n.*) 《剑 8》例句：Once a child goes to school, they are entering a wilder community where teachers and peers will have just as much influence as their parents do at home.
来自其他同学的压力	peer pressure
逆境	adverse circumstances/ adversity (*n.*)
团队精神	team spirit
独立思考	think independently
在理解的基础上学习	learn things through understanding
鼓励学生用辩证的眼光看问题	encourage the students to think critically
学生的反馈	students' feedback students' input
学生评价老师的教学	students appraise/evaluate their teachers' performance
各门功课总称	curriculum (*n.*)
具体一门课的内容	syllabus (*n.*)
课外活动	extra-curricular activities
学校是社会的缩影。	A school is society in miniature.
不遵守纪律（名词）	indiscipline (*n.*) misbehaviour (*n.*) mischief (*n.*)
违反纪律的学生	disruptive students unruly students
理论知识	theoretical knowledge
通才	generalist (*n.*)
专才	specialist (*n.*)
全面发展的	well-rounded (*adj.*) versatile (*adj.*)
为社会健康发展作贡献	contribute to societal well-being (or welfare)

人文学科	humanities (*n.*)
社会科学	social sciences
艺术	arts (*n.*)
文科总称	liberal studies/ arts (*n.*)
理科	sciences (*n.*)
工科	engineering (*n.*)
学科（通称）	discipline (*n.*)
基础科学	basic sciences
应用科学	applied sciences
小（中、大）学教育	primary-level (or secondary-level/ tertiary-level) education
职业教育	vocational education (or training)

Technology

尖端的技术	cutting-edge technology
信息爆炸	information explosion (or overload)
信息时代	the information age (or era)
互联网的广泛使用	the proliferation of the Internet/the extensive use of the Internet/the widespread use of the Internet
科技创新及发展	technological innovations (or inventions) and advances/ progressions
提高效率	augment (or enhance/ boost) efficiency
提高生产效率	augment (or enhance/ boost) productivity
减少人力的机器	labour-saving machinery
取代人力的机器	labour-replacing machinery
自动化	automation (*n.*) automated (*adj.*)
生产，制造	produce/manufacture (*vt.*) 《剑8》例句：Persuading manufacturers（制造商）and travelers to adopt this new technology would be a more effective strategy（策略）for improving air quality, especially in cities.

生物技术	biotechnology (*n.*)
克隆	clone (*v.*) cloning (*n.*)
远程通信	telecommunications (*n.*)
太空探索	space exploration / space probe
人的基因构成	one's genetic makeup one's DNA programming

Media

时事	current affairs
新闻界	the press
印刷媒体	the print media
电子媒体	the electronic media
报道新闻的机构	news outlets
	prevalent (*adj.*)
无处不在的	ubiquitous (*adj.*) pervasive (*adj.*)
充斥着……	be awash with be inundated with be saturated with sth.
审查	censor (*v.*)
删除	delete (*v.*) eliminate (*v.*) excise (*v.*)
过多的暴力与色情内容	excessive (or gratuitous) violent and pornographic contents
有误导性的	misleading (*adj.*) misrepresented (*adj.*) distorted (*adj.*)
诈骗性的	fraudulent (*adj.*)
虚假的	false (*adj.*) bogus (*adj.*)

报道非常详尽的细节	report sth. in graphic detail
媒体炒作	media hype
夸大事件	exaggerate things sensationalise things blow things out of all proportions
公正客观的	objective and balanced
揭露	expose (*v.*) reveal (*v.*)
侵犯隐私	violate (or intrude on/ infringe on) someone's privacy
毁坏某人的名誉	tarnish (or sully/ smear/ besmirch) one's reputation
狗仔队	paparazzi (*n.*) (paparazzi 是复数名词)
名人	celebrities (*pl.*) 单数是 a celebrity
丑闻	scandals (*n.*)
掩盖	cover up gloss over whitewash (*v.*)
不客观的	biased (*adj.*) skewed (*adj.*) unobjective (*adj.*)
如实的描述	factual accounts
可信的	reliable (*adj.*) trustworthy (*adj.*) dependable (*adj.*)
及时的	up-to-date up-to-the-minute
信息量大的	informative (*adj.*)
娱乐性强的	entertaining (*adj.*)
有新闻价值的	newsworthy (*adj.*)
道德准则	code of ethics code of conduct

Government

当局	authorities (*n.*)
老百姓	citizens (*n.*) the citizenry
规范，管理	regulate (*v.*) monitor (*v.*) oversee (*v.*)
实施	implement (*v.*)
立法	legislate (*v.*) make laws
严禁	strictly prohibit ban altogether
严格的法律	stringent laws (or legislation)
监督	scrutiny (*n.*) scrutinise (*v.*) monitor (*v.*)
为……拨款	allocate money to sth. be a patron of invest in fund (*v.*) dedicate money to sth.
预算	budget (*n.*)
税收	tax revenue
政府开支	the government spending/expenditure on sth. 《剑8》实例：the changes in annual（每年的）government spending
削减	curtail (*v.*)
增添	augment (*v.*)
当务之急	priority (*n.*)
把……当成当务之急	give priority to sth.
责任	duty (*n.*) responsibility (*n.*) obligation (*n.*)

军备竞赛	arms race (*n.*)
自卫	self-defence (*n.*)
国土安全	national security homeland security
缺乏远见的政策	short-sighted policy
扩张	expansion (*n.*) aggression (*n.*)
谋求霸权	seek (or pursue) hegemony
恶性循环	a vicious circle
地区不稳定因素	destabilising factors
规章制度	rules and regulations
太空竞赛	space race
武器	arms (*n.*) weapons (*n.*) armaments (*n.*)
下岗工人	laid-off workers downsized workers
失业	unemployment (*n.*) joblessness (*n.*)
基础设施	infrastructure (*n.*)
公共交通系统	public transport system (这是英式写法)
电网	power grid
民主的	democratic
民主	democracy
石油天然气管线	pipelines
给排水系统	water supply and drainage system
民主与开明的政府	a democratic and progressive government

Language

一种可以通用的语言	a lingua franca a universal language a global language

英语的广泛应用	the proliferation of English
英语的统治地位	the dominant role (or the ascendancy/ the hegemony) of English
方言	dialect (*n.*) vernacular (*n.*) the indigenous language
小语种将会消亡	lesser-known languages will become extinct (or obsolete)
小语种的消亡	the extinction (or demise) of lesser-known languages

Culture

文化遗产包括有形的和无形的两种，有形的如历史遗迹；无形的如风俗、仪式、传统道德、观念等。

Cultural heritage can be divided into two groups: tangible cultural heritage, such as historic sites, and intangible cultural heritage, such as customs, rites, rituals and mores.

保护	preserve (*v.*) / protect (*v.*)
祖先	forefathers (*n.*) ancestors (*n.*)
后代	descendants (*n.*) posterity (*n.*)
少数民族	ethnic minorities
民族团结	the harmony between ethnic groups (or races)
文化融合	cultural integration and synthesis
相互影响	interaction (*n.*) 动词词组是 interact with 《剑 8》例句：The way many people interact with each other has changed because of technology.
文化多元性	cultural diversity / cultural heterogeneity (第二个表达非常正式，只作替换时用)
丰富	enrich (*v.*)
狭隘的观念	insular (or provincial/ parochial) mentality

贬低	deprecate (*v.*) denigrate (*v.*) minimise the importance of disparage (*v.*) trivialise (*v.*) discredit (*v.*)
……不是一成不变的	sth. is not set/carved in stone

Development

生活节奏加速	The tempo/ pace of life is accelerating
持续的疲劳	fatigue (*n.*)
导致人与人之间疏远	create alienation between people
过于功利的	materialistic (*adj.*) mercenary (*adj.*) money-worshipping (*adj.*)
追求最大限度利润	pursue maximum profit
(公共的) 交通运输方式	modes of transport / means of transport (请注意transport作名词时是英式拼写，对应的名词美式拼写则是被国内同学所更熟悉的transportation)
交通工具	vehicle (*n.*)
私家车	private vehicle
汽油	petrol (BrE) / gasoline (AmE)
交通堵塞	traffic jams traffic congestion gridlock (*n.*) 《剑 8》例句：Traffic congestion will not be solved by changing the type of private vehicle people can use.
撞车	car wrecks car accidents

行人	pedestrians (*n.*)
交通肇事者	traffic accident perpetrators
违章横穿马路	jaywalk (*v.*)
监控摄像头	surveillance camera
阻碍	impede (*v.*) hinder (*v.*) hamper (*v.*) obstruct (*v.*) inhibit (*v.*)
扶贫	poverty alleviation
就业机会	job opportunity employment opportunity
贫穷的	needy (*adj.*) poverty-stricken impoverished (*adj.*) deprived (*adj.*) destitute (*adj.*) indigent (*adj.*)
富裕的	affluent (*adj.*) wealthy (*adj.*) well-off
可支配收入（IELTS 作文中的常用概念，即家庭收入每月扣除税务与债务之后剩下的可用于日常生活开支的部分）	disposable income 《剑 8》例句：In addition, people now have more leisure time and disposable incomes. The combination of these two with advertising campaigns（广告宣传活动）from travel companies leads to an increase in the number of people travelling.
有特殊审美价值的老房子	old buildings of special aesthetic value
有特殊历史意义的老房子	buildings of historic significance
民居	vernacular dwellings
让城市更美观	enhance the cityscape

破旧的（房子）	decrepit（*adj.*） rundown（*adj.*） rickety（*adj.*） dilapidated（*adj.*）
拆除	tear down/ knock down/ demolish/ rase（a building）
高楼	high-rise buildings
摩天大楼	skyscrapers（*n.*）
城市化	urbanisation（*n.*）
城乡差距	the disparity between the city and the countryside
城市的	urban（*adj.*）
乡村的	rural（*adj.*）
搬迁	relocate（*v.*）
建造	build / construct 《剑 8》例句：Long-term traffic and pollution reductions would depend on educating the public to use public transport more, and on governments using public money to construct and run efficient systems.
在家上班	telecommute（*v.*）
休闲	leisure（*n.*） recreation（*n.*）
精神上的享受	amusement and enjoyment
娱乐	entertainment（*n.*） diversion（*n.*）
宽松的管理	laissez-faire management
运营成本	operating costs overhead costs
雇用	recruit（*v.*）
会导致效率降低的	counterproductive（*adj.*）
劳动力资源	labour pool （labour 是英式写法）

健康	health / fitness（很多国内同学一直以为名词 fitness 是表示“苗条”的意思，其实剑桥官方对它给出的定义是：the condition of being physically strong and healthy，在雅思写作中名词 fitness 经常就用来泛指良好的身体状态）
抑郁症	depression (*n.*)
失眠	sleeplessness (*n.*) sleep-deprivation insomnia (*n.*)
人口爆炸	population explosion population boom
控制人口	family planning birth control
爱慕虚荣的	pretentious (*adj.*) ostentatious (*adj.*)
缺少运动的生活方式	sedentary lifestyle
营养过剩	overnourishment (*n.*)

Globalisation

合作	co-operate with / collaborate with 《剑 8》例句：This experience should teach them how to co-operate with each other and how to contribute to the life of their community.
（一个国家或地区的）文化特性	(national or regional) cultural identity
全球文化同一化过程（即地区文化特性的消失）	global cultural homogenisation
文化同一性	cultural homogeneity cultural uniformity
全球化是一把双刃剑。	Globalisation is a two-edged sword.
地球村	the global village
文化同化	cultural assimilation
侵蚀亚洲文化	erode the Asian culture

Women

两性平等	gender equality
性别歧视	gender discrimination sexism (*n.*)
异性	the opposite sex 《剑 8》例句：Girls and boys learn to live and work together from an early age and are consequently not emotionally underdeveloped in their relations with the opposite sex.
偏见	prejudice (*n.*)
一个开明的社会	a progressive/ enlightened society
被家务事拖累	be tied down by household chores
生育孩子	child bearing
抚养孩子	child rearing
母性本能	maternal instinct
家务事	housework (*n.*) household chores

Families

老年人	elderly people senior citizens
家庭成员间的情感纽带	family bonds family ties
归属感	a sense of belonging
对……的依恋	an attachment to sth. an affinity for sth.
社区或社会上由同类人组成的群体	community (*n.*) 《剑 8》例句：In order to be a good member of any society, the individual must respect and obey the rules of their community and share their values.

单亲家庭	single-parent households
虐待	mistreat (*v.*) abuse (*v.*)
家庭暴力	domestic violence
毒品上瘾	addiction to drugs be addicted to drugs

Tourism

旅游景点	tourist attractions tourist spots places of interest
开阔眼界	push back (or expand) one's vision (or horizons) (horizons 必须是复数)
游客可以与当地人互动。	Tourists can interact with the locals.
促进文化交流	promote cultural communication
吸引	draw (or attract/ appeal to/ be a magnet for sb.)
亲身体验	first-hand experience
多种感官体验的（如听觉，触觉等）	multi-sensory (*adj.*)
冲突	conflict (与 with 搭配使用)
争端	discord (*n.*) dissension (*n.*)
把游客和当地人隔离	seclude (or isolate) the tourist from the locals
商业化	commercialise (*v.*) commodify (*v.*)
间接体验（比如通过电视或者互联网）	second-hand experience/vicarious experience
文化遗产	cultural heritage
互联网不会让旅游业过时	the Internet will not render tourism obsolete

Environment

生态平衡	ecological balance ecological equilibrium
可持续发展	sustainable development
环保主义者	environmentalists (*n.*) conservationists (*n.*)
对环境无害的	environmentally-friendly (*adj.*)
节约使用	conserve (*v.*)
保护	preserve (*v.*)
再利用	reuse (*v.*) recycle (*v.*)
各国必须携手解决环境问题	countries on this planet must join forces/ make a concerted effort/ unite to combat (or tackle/ resolve/ address) environmental problems
增强公众关于……的意识	raise (or elevate) the public awareness of sth.
短缺	shortage (*n.*) scarcity (*n.*) dearth (*n.*) lack (*n.*)
让资源承受很大压力	put a strain on the resources / stretch resources to the limit (固定短语)
破坏自然资源	wreak havoc on natural resources
砍伐森林	deforestation (*n.*)
过度放牧	over-grazing (*n.*)
农业	agriculture (*n.*)
农业用地	agricultural land / farmland 《剑8》实例：the reasons why agricultural land becomes less productive

污染	pollute (*v.*) contaminate (*v.*)
有毒的	poisonous (*adj.*) toxic (*adj.*)
增加农产品产量	boost crop yield
可再生资源	renewable resources
不可再生资源	non-renewable resources (包括：金属 metals、矿产 minerals、石油 petroleum、天然气 natural gas、煤 coal 等。后三种可以总称为 fossil fuels)
消耗（某种资源）	consume (*v.*) deplete (*v.*)
用尽（某种资源）	use up exhaust (*v.*)
严厉的措施	harsh actions/measures (*n.*)
生态系统	ecosystem (*n.*) ecological system
某一地区所有生物总称	the wildlife in a region the biota (=flora+fauna) of a region
生物的多样性	biodiversity (*n.*)
污水	effluent (*n.*) sewage (*n.*)
排放	discharge (*n.*)
汽车尾气	car emissions (请注意在地道英文中 emission 是可以加复数的)
电动汽车	electric car 《剑 8》例句：The technology is already available to produce electric cars that would be both quieter and cleaner to use.
混合动力交通工具	hybrid vehicle
温室效应	greenhouse effect global warming

严重的	severe (*adj.*) grave (*adj.*) grievous (*adj.*)
白色污染产生的垃圾	non-biodegradable garbage wastes that cannot decompose or break down inorganic trash
谴责而不是纵容	condemn rather than condone sth.
臭氧层	ozone layer
肥沃的土壤	fertile soil
贫瘠的土壤	infertile soil
耕地	arable land farmland (*n.*)

Crime

触犯法律	break (or violate/ flout/ disobey) the law
犯罪	commit a crime
罪行	offences (*n.*) (这是英式拼写) crimes (*n.*) criminal acts
罪犯	criminal (*n.*) offender (*n.*) culprit (*n.*) perpetrator (*n.*)
从犯	accomplice (*n.*) accessory (*n.*) (后者指帮助犯罪但未直接参与的人)
憎恨社会	resent society hold a grudge against society
囚犯	inmate (*n.*) convicts (*n.*)

受害者	victim (*n.*)
心理创伤	trauma (*n.*)
牢房	cell (*n.*)
监禁	imprison (or incarcerate) someone
被绳之以法	be brought to justice
宽容的	lenient (*adj.*)
改造罪犯	reform criminals rehabilitate criminals
执法部门	law enforcement agencies
重罪	heinous crime flagitious crime felony (*n.*)
轻罪	petty crime misdemeanour (这是英式拼写)
初犯的人	first-time offender
惯犯	hardened criminals repeat criminals
再次犯罪	revert to crime
守法的公民	law-abiding citizens
遵守法律	abide by the law comply with the law
无视	disregard (*v.*)
给某人造成心理创伤	traumatise someone
抓捕	track down hunt down capture (*v.*)
犯罪倾向	criminal tendency

Animals

动物权益保护主义者	animal rights activists (请注意这个词组里的 right 后面要加 s)

V

医学研究	medical research
残忍的	cruel（*adj.*） merciless（*adj.*） inhuman（*adj.*） （请注意它的语气比 inhumane“不够人道的”更强） callous（*adj.*） brutal（*adj.*）
活体解剖	vivisection（*n.*）
麻醉	anaesthetic（*n.*） （这是英式拼写）
减轻动物的痛苦	relieve/alleviate/ ease animals' pain
宠物是主人的伙伴	pets are their masters' companions
给主人心理安慰	afford their masters consolation and comfort
偷猎	poach（*v.*） poaching（*n.*）
某一种事物是没有替代物的	there are no replacements/ substitutes/ alternatives for sth. （如果是单数则 replacements、substitutes 和 alternatives 要去掉 s）

以上就是 288 个高分词汇。

可以肯定地说，如果真的可以记熟上述词汇，雅思写作的用词方面你已经可以算一个专家了。当然，还是要强调：① 不需要每个词都记，只记你认为自己容易想到的词；② 只要记一个词就必须记熟练，如果似是而非、不熟练不准确的记忆在考场上只能导致扣分而不是拿分。

IELTS 作文常用同义词浓缩版

写作除了词汇的数量，还有一个更高的境界就是用词的新颖度。根据 Pat 长期帮助学生修改作文的体会，下面是国内同学们最容易用词出现“撞车”的中文意思，比如“人类”永远都写 human beings，“当代”永远都用 nowadays，“有害的”永远写 harmful，相当枯燥。下面的词汇每组掌握一两个就行，不必全背。需要写作 7 分的同学可以直接研读本书附录里的“211 工程”。

人类	the human race/humanity (*n.*) /man (*n.*) /humankind (*n.*) /Homo sapiens
在当代	At present/Currently/in contemporary society/in present-day society/in this day and age（这是英文中的一个固定短语） 剑 8 例句：The cost of travelling, even though it is at present increasing due to an economic slow-down globally, is still relatively affordable to many people.
解决	tackle (*v.*) /address (*v.*) /resolve (*v.*) /combat (*v.*) 剑 8 例句：To tackle the problem of pollution, cleaner fuels need to be developed.
破坏	destroy (*v.*) /impair (*v.*)（后面跟 health 或者人体的某种机能）/undermine (*v.*)（后面跟抽象名词）/jeopardise (*v.*)（后面跟抽象名词，如 one's future, one's chance of success, social stability 等）/devastate (*v.*)（最后一个语气最强）
影响	impact (*n.*) /repercussions (*n.*) /ramifications (*n.*) /implications (*n.*)
危险	peril (*n.*) /hazard (*n.*) /danger (*n.*) 其中 hazard 这个词在地道英文中经常与职业或者健康话题有关，比如最近明星离婚风波不断，我们就可以很感慨地评价道：Divorce seems to be an occupational hazard（职业风险）for movie stars.
明显的	manifest (*adj.*) /apparent (*adj.*) /evident (*adj.*) /obvious (*adj.*)
从事（及物动词）	carry out /conduct (*v.*) /perform (*v.*) /go about
积极的，好的	beneficial (*adj.*) /advantageous (*adj.*)
消极的，坏的	baneful (*adj.*) /detrimental (*adj.*)
好处和坏处	advantages and disadvantages/strengths and weaknesses/the upside and the downside/pros and cons（有点口语化，但在小 essays 中还能用）/boons and banes
无处不在的	prevalent (*adj.*) /pervasive (*adj.*)
大量的	a host of/a multitude of/a vast number of（后面跟可数名词复数）/a great deal of/a vast amount of（后面跟不可数名词单数）
需要	require/necessitate/call for

V

增进	enhance（*v.*）/boost（代替 improve） 《剑 8》例句：This affordability is further enhanced by the use of credit cards and loans in order to fund travel, especially for holiday purposes.
贫穷的	impoverished（*adj.*）/needy（*adj.*）/deprived（*adj.*）（代替 poor）
保护（某种资源）	preserve（*v.*）（代替 protect）
富裕的	affluent（*adj.*）/wealthy（代替 rich）
污染	contamination（*n.*）（正式英语中有时代替 pollution，这个词的语气相当严峻，比如核辐射造成的污染地道英文里就是 radioactive contamination）
采取措施	take measures/take steps/take action/take actions（单复数均可）

IELTS 写作中最容易失手的词汇总结（高分内容）

下面的表格，是我长期批改中国考生作文发现的最常见的用词错误，请大家一定注意避免：

易错词	错误详解
benefit	这个词在国内同学的作文里几乎已经到了“每用必错”的程度，这里必须讲一下：benefit from 前面的主语一般是人或者机构，意为“从……中获益”，如《剑 8》例句：Others, however, believe that boys and girls benefit more from attending mixed schools. 但如果要表示某事物“对……有益”，则可以把 benefit 作为及物动词，后面跟宾语（人或者机构），但请注意这时 benefit 后面就不要再加 from 了，比如：The system will mainly benefit residents in rural communities. 或者用 be beneficial to...，它也是“对……有益”的意思
lack	这个貌似简单的小词却错得更多。作动词的时候 lack 是及物动词，后面绝不能跟介词（它的分词 lacking 则有一些特殊用法，但是建议大家考试的时候就不要用 lacking 的形式了，否则更容易乱）。另一个对 lack 正确的用法是它还可以用作名词，而这时 lack 后面的介词则必须跟 of，请不要跟别的介词（这里还是 lacking 会特殊一些，但也不必掌握了）

（续表）

易错词	错误原因
affect	这个表示“影响……”的动词，经常看到同学把它拼错
modern	这个词真的不该错，可惜我见过一些要考 6.5 分的同学也把它错拼成了 morden，类似的容易拼错的还有 environment 和 government
research	“研究”这个词是不可数名词，不要加复数
knowledge	不可数名词，不能加复数
data	同上
information	同上
equipment	同上，如《剑 8》实例：the stages and equipment in the cement-making process
progress	“进步”这个词同样不可数
garbage	“垃圾”也是不可数的，如果用错了就真的成了垃圾了
extinct	“已经灭绝的”这个单词的词性是形容词，却有很多考生把它误用为动词，实在令人费解。但下面这两个写法都是正确的：become extinct 和 go extinct，这个词的名词形式是 extinction
economy	这个也是写作中的“高危”词汇。请注意由这个词派生出的另外三种形式意思都不一样：economy 是“经济”，economics 是“经济学”，economic 则是形容词“与经济有关的”，而 economical 则是指某个事物“省钱的”
staff	听起来难以置信，但如此平庸的一个词如果不小心也可以变得很“火星”。请一定注意它其实是员工的总称而并不是指单个的员工。换句话说，这个词不能加复数-s。单个的员工在写作里可以用 an employee 或者 a staff member 表示
discriminate	这个词作“歧视”的意思时只能作不及物动词，但 Pat 却经常看到国内的朋友们直接写 discriminate sb.。这其实是错误的英文，必须加上介词 against 写成 discriminate against sb. 才对。例如：Under the law, it is illegal to discriminate against minorities and women.
technique	它在地道英文里的正确含义其实是“技能”或者做某事的“方法”，与 technology（科技）意思不同，而且 technique 是可数名词而 technology 一般是作不可数名词
be concerned about / be concerned with	请注意这两个词组意思其实并不一样：be concerned about 是“关注……”的意思，be concerned with 则是“关于……”的意思

V

（续表）

易错词	错误原因
rise / raise / arise	这三个词一定要分清楚。raise 是及物动词，指的是提高别的东西或者抚养孩子；rise 是不及物动词，指的是自身升高；arise 也是不及物动词，意思是某个现象出现，雅思作文里和 emerge 的意思非常接近
outweigh	注意它的词性是动词，意思是“超过”，拼写词尾没有 t，经常在修改学生习作的时候很晕地发现大家把它和 overweight（超重的）弄混
while	这个词的常见错误是把它当成句首副词用，写成While ,… ×的形式。这样写的同学们明显是把它跟 However，……给弄混了。请注意：while 的后面一定紧跟的是英文词汇，而永远不能紧跟一个逗号
in a word	很多同学喜欢把它放在结尾段开头当成“总而言之”的意思，可惜它在正确英文里后面只能跟一个单词，不能跟一个句子，而且也比较口语化，在地道英文写作里是很少使用的，类似的不宜用在雅思论文里的词组还有 in a nutshell，它其实是一个相当口语化的表达
nowadays	一定要注意这个词的拼写最后有一个字母 s，它的词性是副词而不是形容词，它也并没有 nowaday 这个错误的形容词形式
relative	很遗憾，这个词连我教过的很多英语专业的孩子们也会用错。大家误以为它是“与……相关的”的意思，其实它的正确意思是“相对的”，比如新闻报道里常用的 the relative advantage of something 或者 the relative peace in this country，还有剑 7 里的 the relative importance of natural talent 的例子。这个词的副词 relatively（相对地）也很常用，比如剑桥中的例句：So this relatively short working life may be some justification for the very high pay. 至于“与……相关的”，其实正确的形容词应该是 related，地道英文里还经常用短语 related to 或者合成词 noun-related，但请注意 related 则极少使用副词形式
staff	这个词的拼写很简单，但也是作文中的地雷之一。请一定牢记它是个集合名词，指职员的总称而不是指单个员工，所以它的后面永远不要加-s。还有个词形接近的词 stuff（东西）经常被一些稚嫩的“烤鸭”乐此不疲地使用，但可惜这个词是相当不正式的口语词汇，在 IELTS 口语里倒是很常用，但却不允许在 IELTS 写作里现身

（续表）

易错词	错误原因
preferable	国内同学的作文里这个词堪称是“屡看屡错”。由于它本身就含有“更具优势的、更值得拥有的”意思，所以在地道英文里这个词前面就不可以再加 more 了，如《剑 8》例句： It is up to the parents or the children to decide which model is preferable.
arguably	这个经典易错词在 IELTS 作文中算是比较“贵族”的，英语水平比较“平民”的考生甚至可能都从没见过这个副词。但问题在于它又必然让人联想到 argue（争论）那个很“大众”的动词，所以很多朋友就想当然地把它当成“容易引起争议地”意思来使用了。恰恰相反，arguably 在地道英语里的意思其实是“合理地”、“站得住脚地”。请您仔细体会下面的《剑 8》例句：More leisure time and disposable incomes with advertising campaigns from travel companies arguably lead to an increase in the number of people travelling. 碰巧，英国著名的 Economist 杂志也认为“Apple's iPad 2 is arguably the most attractive tablet（平板电脑）on the market.” ☺

考官惯用伎俩揭秘（1）：学会使用抽象词（高分内容）

雅思写作中有 16 个单词，表达的概念都比较抽象，在剑桥系列范文中经常出现，而大陆考生却明显较少使用。一旦搞定并在考试中正确使用，会产生令考官惊艳的效果。

单词	词性	含义	剑桥范文中的例句
wellbeing	*n.*	泛指一种良好的状态	Job satisfaction is indeed very important to the **well-being** of that person.
reality	*n.*	现实，它的反义词为 ideal（*n. & adj.*，理想状态）。这个抽象词的形容词形式 realistic 及反义词 unrealistic 在雅思作文中也都很常用	It is not **unrealistic** to promote more job satisfaction in any job.

V

（续表）

单词	词性	含义	剑桥范文中的例句
affordability	*n.*	让普通人能够负担得起的定价，这个词的形容词形式 affordable 也是在写作中替换 cheap 的好选择	《剑 8》例句：（a）This **affordability** is further enhanced by the use of credit cards and loans in order to fund travel, especially for holiday purposes. （b）Long-distance train and coach services should be made attractive and **affordable** alternatives to driving our own car for long journeys.
fulfil（英式拼写，美式拼写则为 fulfill）	*vt.*	实现，完成（经常搭配 potential, goals 或者 dreams）。它的名词形式 fulfilment 在学术写作中也相当常用	A sense of **fulfilment** is also encouraged if a worker feels the job is worth doing.
reflect	*vt.*	反映，体现	Some feelings about one's job must **reflect** how an individual feels about his or her life as a whole.
reward	*n.* & *vt.*	给予回报，它的形容词形式 rewarding（有回报的）在写作和口语考试中都极为常用	There is a sense of progression and purpose that **rewards** a worker.
justify	*vt.*	让……合理 / 证实……的合理性	It often seems that the amount of money they are able to earn in a short time cannot possibly be **justified** by the amount of work they do.

（续表）

单词	词性	含义	剑桥范文中的例句
circumstance	*n.*	处境，状况	Others, however, argue that the **circumstances** of an individual crime, and the motivation for committing it, should always be taken into account when deciding on the punishment.
relatively	*adv.*	相对地，比较地（请注意这个词后面是跟形容词的原形，而一定不要跟比较级，很多同学都会用错）	The majority of entertainers hold their top positions for a **relatively** short period of time.
insecurity	*n.*	不安全感，不安定感（雅思写作中经常用于与 job / employment 有关的话题）	Some jobs are repetitive, and labor relations may be poor and lead to **insecurity** rather than job satisfaction.
misery	*n.*	这个抽象词在地道英文里的所指相当广泛，几乎可以指从 unemployment 到 poverty 到 starvation 的一切让人很心酸的事	the **misery** of unemployment / the **misery** of poverty
equilibrium	*n.*	这个单词的真实意思其实很像 balance（平衡），只是更加虚伪而已	In regions where the environmental **equilibrium** is in danger, some types of extreme climatic（气候的）changes are likely to occur.
chronic	*adj.*	指某种坏事“持续存在的”，这个抽象形容词在雅思作文中用于描述长期存在的坏现象很常用	In these countries, there has been a **chronic** shortage of teachers in schools.
mechanism	*n.*	这个词在写政府类话题时常用，指某种“机制”	The government should set up **mechanisms** to ensure that the tax revenue（税收）can be used properly.

（续表）

单词	词性	含义	剑桥范文中的例句
strategy	*n.*	它的意思是“策略”，也常用于Government类话题，可以与policy一词交替使用来获得更多变的用词效果	《剑8》例句：Persuading manufacturers and travelers to adopt this new technology would be a more effective strategy for improving air quality, especially in cities.
incidence	*n.*	这个抽象名词的意思与rate接近，但它一般是指某种坏事的发生率	There is an increasing **incidence** of bullying（欺负同学）in schools, which has made both teachers and parents very concerned.
virtual	*adj.*	虚拟的，这个词在写与互联网有关的话题时很常用	Parents must ensure that their children learn to enjoy other kinds of activities and not simply sit at home, learning to live in a **virtual** world.
exposure	*n.*	这个名词的本意是“曝光”，但在剑桥范文中它经常用于媒体类话题，表示“接触（某类媒体）”的意思，相当地道，比如请仔细体会右边例句里这个词的用法	The player is usually the “hero” of the game and too much **exposure** to such games can encourage children to be self-centred and insensitive to others.

抽象词汇是英文的精彩亮点之一，多花些时间总结常用的抽象词汇，并且把它们用熟练，用准确，确实是一件值得咱们做的事儿。

7分进，6分禁

在今天的最后，Pat还想提醒一下写作需要考7分的那部分朋友们：高分作文（7分或以上）对词汇的另外两个关键要求是用准谓语动词和用词的新颖度。如果您觉得自己目前的用词缺乏特色，本书附录H中的加分动词和附录I中的“211重点同义词替换工程”能明显提高您的换词能力，并为今后的海外学习打下坚实的用词多样化基础。但不需要考7的同学不必掌握这部分内容。

每日一练 *Question of the Day*

翻译练习

1 请用 136 个必备词汇中的 Education 类词汇翻译句子：

学校不仅应该给学生提供学习的乐趣，而且应该培养学生的责任感。

2 请用必备词汇中 Media 类词汇翻译句子：

媒体对某些社会事件的报道可能是有误导性的。

3 请用 Development 类词汇翻译句子：

城市快节奏的生活方式让人们变得更现实而且彼此疏远。

4 请用 Tourism 类词汇翻译句子：

一方面，旅游业可以丰富人们的经历并且开阔人们的眼界。另一方面，它可能会在游客和当地居民之间产生冲突。

5 请用 Government 类词汇翻译句子：

政府有责任使用税收来满足公民的需求，比如解决环境问题。

6 请用 Language 类词汇翻译句子；

英语在全世界的扩散导致很多小语种灭亡。

7 请用 Culture 类词汇翻译句子；

我们祖先创造的历史悠久的文化遗产应该被保护。

8 请用 Globalisation 类词汇翻译句子；

美国文化正在严重侵蚀其他很多国家的文化，这种现象要求其他国家学会如何把这种外来文化和自己的文化有机结合起来。

替换练习

1 请用 Animal 类词汇替换下面句子中的词汇：

Animal experiments should be stopped because they are cruel to animals — our best friends on earth.

2 请用 Technology 类词汇替换下面句子中的词汇：

New technology and inventions are changing our lives very fast.

3 请用 Technology 类词汇替换下面句子中的词汇：

In a truly good society, family violence should be seen as harm to women's rights.

选题填空

1 Some teachers think giving students _____ (innovation/motivation) to learn is even more important than giving them knowledge.

2 Most governments in the world depend heavily on their tax _____ (revenue/ obligation) to function properly.

3 Globalisation is seriously threatening the cultural _____ (heritage/ coverage) of many third-world countries.

4 Our world is being profoundly _____ (alleviated/ transformed) by technological inventions.

5 Whether this project will be funded by the government should be decided by the _____ (authorities/ ancestors).

6 The _____ (proliferation/ conflict) of pollution throughout the world is indeed a very worrying issue.

7 These communities have invested large amounts of money in improving the local _____ (species/ facilities).

改错练习

下面三个句子里各有一处用词错误，请找出：

1 The environmental problems are being seriously deteriorated; therefore we should take immediate steps to deal with them.

2 Some teenagers crime after they watch violent Hollywood movies.

3 Students should be encouraged to contribute to develop their communities.

同义词替换练习

influence = need =

improve = dangers =

solve = good =

bad = clear =

练习答案 Answer Key

翻译练习

1 Schools should not only afford students the pleasure of learning but also cultivate students' sense of responsibility.

2 The press coverage of some events may be misleading.

3 The fast-paced urban lifestyle has made individuals more materialistic and increasingly alienated from each other.

4 On the one hand, tourism can enrich people's experience and broaden their horizons. On the other hand, it may create some conflicts between tourists and local residents.

5 The government has an obligation to use the tax revenue to meet citizens' needs, such as tackling environmental problems.

6 The worldwide proliferation of English is leading to the extinction of many lesser-known languages.

7 The time-honoured cultural heritage created by our ancestors should be preserved.

8 The American culture is seriously eroding the culture in many other countries, which requires other nations to learn how to synthesise this foreign culture with their own.

替换练习

1 Animal experimentation should be banned because it is inhumane to the animals — our best companions on earth.

2 Technological innovations are transforming our lives at a staggering rate.

3 In a truly enlightened society, domestic violence should be regarded as violation of gender equality.

选题填空

1 选 motivation 动力

② 选 revenue　收入

③ 选 heritage　文化遗产

④ 选 transformed　改变

⑤ 选 authorities　当局

⑥ 选 proliferation　扩散

⑦ 选 facilities　设施

改错练习

① 环境类必备词汇 deteriorate 是不及物动词，应该改为 aggravated 才能用被动形式。

② crime 是名词，动词应改为 commit a crime。

③ contribute to 当中的 to 是介词，所以后面的 develop 应该改为名词 the development of。

同义词代换练习

influence = impact (or repercussions/ implications)

need = call for (or necessitate/ require)

improve = enhance

dangers = risks (or hazards)

solve = combat (or tackle/ address)

good = positive (or beneficial/ advantageous)

bad = harmful (or baneful/ detrimental)

clear = obvious (or apparent/ manifest)

Mission Statement

—5种核心句子成分

—3种句子

—7种必须避免的错误

—考官擅用的特殊句式

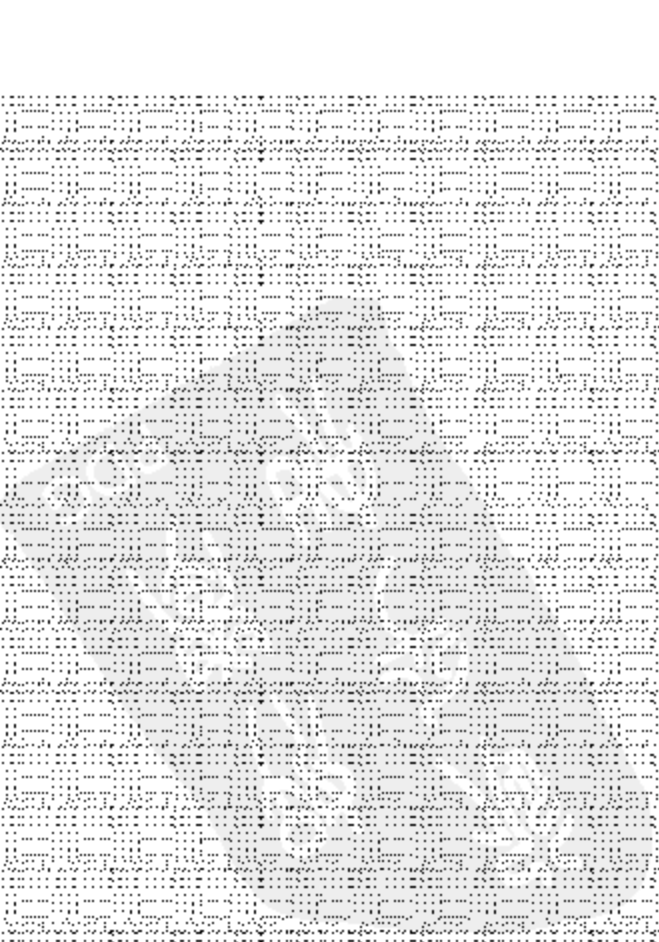
Day 4

真正实用的IELTS作文语法

A Grammatical Suspense Movie

The most fundamental rules tend to be very simple and can be expressed in a language that is comprehensible to all of us.

— ***Pat***



曾经有学生问我："老师，我的语法很烂，高考英语只考了 80 分（满分 150），考雅思还有希望吗?"

什么叫英语语法? 英语语法就是英语写作和说话的章法。它应该是一种很简明实用的框架，如果章法太多了，就不再是章法，而是束缚。

很多人把语法跟长句难句划等号，但是请大家翻翻剑 4 ~ 剑 8 后面由考官（examiner）提供的 9 分范文，你看到了多少所谓的"长难句"呢?

请看官方提供的一篇 7. 5 分范文中的一段话：

"On the other hand, there are various aspects against these arguments. Moreover, it is people's choice to make a decision to buy goods. Advertising may be not a cause of customers' buying habits. Individuals have their own spending habits. If they have got enough disposable income, then the right to make a decision is given to them. No one actually can judge whether the goods sold are the real needs of the society or not..."

这些难道都是长难句么? 写雅思作文，即使目标是 7 分，作文里有 1/3 的简单句也完全正常。剩下的 2/3，有一部分是 and/or/but 连接的并列句。最后真正剩下的复杂句也就一半左右，而且大多数的复杂句写比较基础的复杂句就可以了。

如果你不是非要拿满分，那么雅思作文从实战角度需要用的语法其实只要掌握 5 种成分、3 种句子、7 种需要避免的错误和 12 种特殊句式。

好，请一节一节把本章看完，今天一天，我们来彻底搞定长期困扰中国考生的写作语法。

正确理解 5 种句子成分

英文里句子的组成成分细分起来主要有 7 种：主语、谓语、宾语（还有一种特例叫表语）、定语、状语、补语和同位语。其中，补语和同位语难度比较大，英文基础不太好的同学重点了解前 5 种就够了。

句子成分，真正的关键是要知道什么样的词才能作这种成分，否则就会出现错误。这恰恰是被很多同学忽略的环节。

下面例句中有些是剑桥考官的满分范文中的句子。

主 语

主语是句子要说明的人或事物，可以由名词、代词、动名词（*v.* + ing）、动词不定式（to + *v.*）、what 从句、that 从句、how 从句等组成。

尤其提醒注意：动词原形不能作主语。

请阅读下面的句子，特别注意主语由何种成分组成。

Some towns, cities, regions（区域）and countries seem to have better education than others.

Increasing the price of petrol is the best way to solve growing traffic and pollution problems.（剑 8 例句）

To be a valuable member of any community is not like learning a simple skill.（剑 8 例句）

Fifty years ago in the UK, getting good grades and scoring high on tests were important but not critical（至关重要的）to life chances.

It is important to keep calm and carry on while working under pressure.（主语后置）

It is certainly true that scientists are gaining a clearer understanding of the outer space, thanks to many years of research and better data.（主语后置）

这句话是主语后置，把 that 从句放到了句子后半部分，可以避免句子头重脚轻。

类似的还有剑 8 中这句话里的主语后置用法：

It is the responsibility of every member of a society to take responsibility for helping the younger generation to become active and able members of that society.

此句也很明显地使用了主语后置，避免了头重脚轻。

谓 语

谓语说明主语的动作、状态或特征。在英语中，谓语永远只能由动词构成。

请阅读下面的句子，特别注意谓语由何种成分组成。

At school, children will experience working and living with people from a whole variety of backgrounds from the wider society.（剑 8 例句）

Today many local and national newspapers carry advertisements and information about holidays.

Spending time with other children and sharing experiences can make children more

sociable（喜欢社交的）.

宾　语

宾语表示动作行为的对象，跟在及物动词之后。能作宾语的有名词、代词、动名词、动词不定式、that 从句、what 从句、how 从句等。

有一种特殊的宾语，就是当动词是 be（am，is，are）动词时，be 动词后面的名词或者形容词也可以叫做表语。

请阅读下面的句子，特别注意宾语（或表语）由何种成分组成。

It allows more equality（平等）among pupils.（剑 8 例句）

Some adults use a computer for other purposes, such as getting information or emailing friends.

A good writer does not just concentrate on the words, phrases and grammar that he/she uses, but his/her thoughts as well.

The world inside the school walls is different from the world outside those walls.（本句中的 different 为表语）

The main concern is the type of computer activities that attract children.（本句中的 the type of activities 也是表语）

Persuading manufacturers and travellers to adopt this new technology would be a more effective strategy for improving air quality.（剑 8 例句，句中的蓝色部分也是表语）

定　语

修饰名词的成分叫定语。最常用的定语就是形容词，还有一种用句子修饰名词的定语，就是定语从句了。

请阅读下面的句子，特别注意定语由何种成分组成。

Electric cars would be both quieter and cleaner to use.（剑 8 例句）

Employees need to feel that they are doing valued and valuable work.

In addition, the government should fund the parental（家长的）support.

They are more important to our well-being and our future than the stars who earn their fortunes so quickly.（定语从句）

状　语

状语可修饰动词、形容词或者全句，可以由副词、介词短语、分词短语或者动词不定式构成。有一种难度比较高但是特别拿分的语法现象叫做状语提前，在今天的后半段我们会学到。

请阅读下面的句子，特别注意状语由何种成分组成。

Educating children to understand the need to obey rules and respect others is widely thought to be the responsibility of parents.（剑 8 例句）

The majority of stars do not hold their top positions long.

They are generally more confident than children who stay at home with their parents.

基础薄弱的读者朋友们充分了解这 5 种句子成分就够了，如果还有兴趣，可以在考完试等签证的那段时间再恶补一下语法。

补语（只适合大牛）

所谓补语，在 IELTS 作文里主要是宾补，即下面的这个结构：

v. + *n.* + *n.* / *adj.* 中的 *n.* / *adj.* 部分。

雅思口语中用到的补语结构特别多，但在雅思作文中，宾补结构则较为有限，一般只用来补充说明以下动词后的宾语：

find / make / render

请阅读下面的例句：

Many people find their rewards（回报）unfair, especially when comparing these salaries with those of top surgeons（外科医生）or research scientists.

The recent graduates found the job market frustrating because of the economic recession（经济衰退）.

Some individuals are concerned the Internet will make / render international tourism obsolete（过时的）.（请注意 render 后面加的宾补多为负面含义，如 useless/powerless 等）

而且有时候补语还可以转化成为被动形式，例如下面这个剑 8 例句：

Long-distance train and coach services should be made attractive and affordable alternatives（替代物）to driving our own car for long journeys.（请注意这个句子中 alternative 后的 to 是介词，所以它后面跟随的 drive 使用了动名词形式）

同位语（也只适合——“牛牛”们）

同位语这个名字听起来很玄，所以我们直接看例句吧：

Social sciences, the sciences that deal with human life, came into being（形成）in Europe in the early nineteenth century.

所以同位语说白了就是一个名词的后面跟一个短语，解释说明这个名词，在雅思作文中体现的是一种要求并不太高的下定义能力。

再比如这个剑桥范文中的句子：

Job satisfaction, a very important part of an employee's sense of wellbeing, can be promoted in most jobs.

两个逗号之间的部分就是同位语了。

分清3种句子

雅思作文的句子永远就是3种：简单句、并列句和复杂句。

简单句

简单句就是只含主谓宾成分。而当谓语是不及物动词（只能单独用，不可以后接宾语的动词）的时候，简单句就是“主语+谓语”了。

多数英文简单句的长度不超过7个单词，表达的信息虽然简单，但是很明确，这是它的优点。写主体段的第一句话（topic sentence）和后面的分论点时常常用到简单句。英文书面语中的简单句不宜过多，但希望大家也不要“废掉”简单句，其实很多时候简单句也有它的优势：鲜明。

例句： Employees get job satisfaction in a number of ways.

The value of experiments is not limited to sciences.

并列句

并列句就是“主谓宾+主谓宾”，中间用 and/or/but 3个词当中的一个串起来。

Today most work is done by teams of people and all of them have different strengths and weaknesses.

Schools are the main formal institutions of society but their structures are designed only for self-development.

下面三句是剑桥考官给出的范文中的满分并列句。

例句： Poor student behaviour seems to be an increasingly widespread problem and I think that modern lifestyles are responsible for this.

How these things interact（互相影响）is still unknown today and they remain largely unpredictable（大部分无法预见的）in a person's life.

Some jobs are repetitive and boring, and labour relations may be poor and lead to insecurity rather than job satisfaction. .

复杂句

复杂句还是“主谓宾+主谓宾”，但是它和并列句的区别在于句子开头或者中间的连词不是用 and/or/but，而是更复杂的连词。

复杂句的写法我们会在 Day 5 和 Day 6 中专门分析，这里只要求各位记住：写好最基础的复杂句（即一个主谓宾再加一个主谓宾构成的复杂句，其中没有连词的那个主谓宾叫主句，用一个连词引出的那个主谓宾叫从句）才是雅思作文必备的能力。当我们把这种最基础的复杂句真正练习熟练之后，会发现更难的复杂句随手就写出来了。但如果非要一步登天，一上来就追求两三个从句的句子，只会错误连篇，而且在写复杂句时易产生严重的挫败感。

下面的例句来自考官范文：

This does not mean that people without these conditions cannot be happy.（主句+that 引导的宾语从句）

While some people link（联系）happiness to wealth and material success, others think it lies in emotions and loving personal relationships.（while 引导的从句与后面的主句进行对比）

Even when people believe they are resisting change themselves, they cannot stop the world around them from changing.（when 引导的状语从句表示伴随状态）

请注意，这些都是满分范文的句子。当然用词比多数同学的好。但这样的句子难到真的算是长难句么？

Day 5 和 Day 6 我们还会重点学习复杂句的写法。

语法七宗罪

Brad Pitt 和 Morgan Freeman 主演的悬念电影 *Seven*（《七宗罪》）曾在美国连续 10 周占据票房排行榜首位。下面我们来学习语法中的“七宗罪”。

一篇文章里面即使有了精彩的词汇和句型，如果存在大量的基础语法错误，仍然会让考官阅读你的文章时感到很困惑，甚至可能会让他/她感到自己在阅读一个连小学都没毕业的半文盲写出来的、用词却很高深的畸形文章。这种语法的基本功和用词的难度之间不搭调的情况存在于很多同学的文章里。根据 Pat 的长期总结，其实中国考生常犯的语法错误只有 7 大类。如果可以有效避免这 7 类错误，就完全可以把自己文章里面的语法错误减少到 3 个以内，而这样少的错误是并不会对你的分数产生明显影响的。

请快速找出下面句子里的语法错误：

第 1 宗罪

例题：

Employee can get more benefits from telecommuting（远程上班）than employer.

说明： employee 和 employer 两个单词被“裸用”了。

※ 可数名词永远不能单独使用。

什么叫单独使用呢？英语里面任何一个可数名词，必须在前面加上限定词，比如 the/an/a/this/that/my/your 这些词，否则后面就必须加复数。

正确形式： employee 和 employer 的前面加上 the 或者后面加上 s。

第 2 宗罪

例题 1：

Work at home using modern technology can greatly enhance（增进，提高）our efficiency.

说明： work 存在错误。

※ 英文里动词不能作主语。

正确形式： work 改为动名词 working。

例题 2：

Children who are raise in impoverished（贫穷的）families can generally deal with problems more effectively in their adult years.

说明： raise（抚养）应该用被动形式。

※ 被动的动词一定别忘了加-ed 或者-d。

正确形式： raise 改为 raised。

例题 3：

The problems that are created by environmental contamination（污染）is very hard to resolve.

说明： 主谓不一致，主语的主干是 problems 复数，而谓语是单数。

※ 主语很长，就一定要检查谓语的单复数。

正确形式： is 改成 are。

例题 4：

Many students are like studying home economics.

说明： like 是动词，前面没有必要再加动词 are。

※ 只有情态动词可以加动词原形。

正确形式： 把 are 去掉。

例题 5：

In present-day society, cultures were becoming very similar.

说明： 时态前后矛盾。

※ 议论文里极少会用过去时。

正确形式： were 改成 are。

第 3 宗罪

例题：

Intelligent students should not be treated different by their teachers.

说明： different 修饰动词，应该用副词形式。

※ 修饰名词用形容词，修饰形容词或者动词用副词。

正确形式： different 改成副词 differently。

第 4 宗罪

例题 1：

Countries should pay attention on the disadvantages globalisation may create.

说明： pay attention 介词搭配 to。

※ 另外，请牢记下面的两个介词搭配：reason for…，solution to…

正确形式： pay attention to。

例题 2：

The Internet has instead of teachers in many classrooms.

说明： instead of 不可以当动词用，只能作副词/介词短语。

※ 动词“替代”是 replace 或者 supplant。

正确形式： 用 replaced 或者 supplanted 代替 instead of。

第 5 宗罪

例题：

Some parents do not obey traffic rules himself.

说明： 代词指代复数名词有误，应该是 themselves。

※ 代词距离名词比较远时就要看它的单复数。

正确形式： himself 改成 themselves。

第 6 宗罪

例题：

Some people think the Internet only has positive impact, other people think it also has negative influence on our lives.

说明： 很明显，这句话不符合咱们对简单句、并列句或者复杂句任何一种句子的定义。

※ 两套主谓宾在句首和句中都没有连接词，肯定是病句。

正确形式： 句中加上 while 表示对比，形成复杂句。

第 7 宗罪

例题：

There are a great many children think the main purpose of education should be to afford them pleasure and enjoyment.

说明： there be 句型后面的名词再加动词时不要用原形。

正确形式： 把 think 后面加上-ing。

类似的还有剑 8 例句：

There is a great deal of farmland becoming degraded in the world today.

考官惯用伎俩揭秘（2）：让你的句式像考官范文一样多变（高分内容）

谁都知道写作文句式单调不是好事，但却很少有人能参透到底怎样才能让句子丰富多样。传说中的句式多样化一直高深莫测，让考生们相当郁闷。

如果你的写作单项目标是 6.5 或者 7 分的话，请把下面这些剑桥范文变化句式的不宣之秘熟练掌握并且积极使用。对于只需要考 6 分的同学，如果今天还不是很累，也不妨很快地看看以便有个印象。考官们，不好意思，是 Pat 出卖了你们“压箱底”的宝贝……

A 句首状语提前

雅思写作里状语提前是一种相当拿分的句式，遗憾的是很多同学却没有意识到：

所谓**状语提前**就是把一个由副词、介词、现在分词或者动词不定式形成的小短语放在句首。这种句式最大的好处就是在一堆长句子里突然出现一个短语，让句子间产生一种长短结合的节奏感。

剑桥考官范文中的状语提前可以用“海量”一词来形容，请大家认真体会下面的剑桥例句中放在句首的状语所产生的效果：

☆ In order to be a good member of any society, the individual must respect and obey the rules of their community and share their values.（剑 8 例句）

☆ To do this, we need to improve the choice of public transport services available to travellers.（剑 8 例句）

☆ Overall, Europe suffered more from farmland degradation than the other regions, and the main cause was deforestation.（剑 8 例句）

☆ At school, children will experience working and living with people from a whole variety of backgrounds from the wider society.（剑 8 例句）

☆ In some countries, the average weight of people is increasing and their levels of health and fitness are decreasing.（剑 8 例句）

☆ Because it is more likely（更有可能的）now that both parents work, there is little opportunity for children to stay in their own home up to that age. Instead, they will probably go to a nursery school（幼儿园，与 nursing home 意思不同）when they are much younger.

☆ Unfortunately, professionals from other fields who make a much greater contribution to human society, are paid so much less that it is hard to disagree with the statement.

☆ In spite of this, the obvious benefits of computer skills for young children cannot be denied.

☆ In addition to the financial benefits, some jobs bring intellectually rewards（智力上的回报）.（In addition to... 在地道的英式英语中也经常用 Apart from... 来代替）

☆ There are not many job opportunities available. Accordingly, the competition for jobs is increasingly fierce.

☆ Oddly enough（奇怪的是，类似也可以写 Strangely enough）, most people seem to enjoy saying which ones are bad, and then say some are slightly better.

☆ Surely, few people would seek to preserve such traditions as living in caves.

☆ Interestingly, a reasonable amount of pressure seems to make the majority of employees more productive.

☆ The consumption of food and clothing came down after 1980. Similarly, fuel prices fell quite considerably.

☆ Obviously, education systems are based on the belief that all children can effectively be taught to acquire different skills.

☆ Specifically, some laws prohibit（禁止） acts of this kind.

☆ In terms of（就……而言） technology, their adult world will be changing constantly.

☆ Just like the movie stars, they live extravagant（奢华的） lifestyles with huge houses and cars.

☆ Like self-awareness（自我意识）, this is also difficult to achieve, but I think these are the two factors that may be the most important for achieving happiness.

☆ In many ways, the history of civilisation is the history of technology.

☆ In some cases, an employee is working in a job that suits neither their skills nor their personality.

☆ As a result of media attention, sports professionals in my country have become stars and celebrities（名人）.

☆ To become successful, more skills and dedication（奉献） are required.（动词不定式前置）

☆ Struggling in poverty, people in these countries believe international aid is essential and should be continued.（分词放在句首）

☆ Without the natural talent, continuous training would be neither attractive nor productive.（介词短语前置）

☆ Without suggesting that all technology is necessarily good, I think it is by no means（固定短语：绝对不是） pointless（没有意义的） to try to keep traditions alive with technology.

类似的在地道英文中常见的状语前置词还有 Traditionally, / Historically, / Essentially,（本质上讲,）/In essence, 等。

B 句中插入短语

同样的道理，在雅思作文中，句子中间也经常可以引入一个小短语，让长句子显得更加灵活。请看下面的例句：

☆ This will affect the job market, which, after all, is a key target in any economic plan.

☆ Feelings about one's job must reflect how an individual feels about his or her life, and

because of this, job satisfaction is indeed very important.

☆ Sport stars and pop stars, for example, are soon replaced by the next younger, more energetic generation.

C 句尾用短语结束

剑桥范文中有时也会在一句话的结尾安插一个小短语，给过长的句子增添些许“亲和力”。例如：

☆ Persuading manufacturers and travellers to adopt this new technology would be a more effective strategy for improving air quality, especially in cities. (剑 8 例句)

☆ Traffic and pollution from vehicles have become huge problems, both in cities and on motorways. (剑 8 例句)

☆ A person needs to feel that they are doing valued and valuable work, so positive feedback from superiors is very important in this respect (请注意 respect 在这里不是“尊敬”的意思，而是指“某方面”，也可以用 in this regard 来表达).

☆ Some jobs are repetitive and boring, and labour relations may be poor, which leads to resentment (仇恨) and insecurity (不安全感) rather than to job satisfaction.

☆ A sense of fulfilment (成就感) is also encouraged if a worker feels the job is worth doing because it contributes to society or the economy as a whole.

☆ A child will learn to interact with different people and some children learn to communicate very early because of this.

D 善用以-ly 结尾的副词

副词在英语中可以用来修饰形容词、动词甚至全句。由于其用法的高度灵活性，剑桥考官们频频调用副词来丰富自己的句式，尤其是大量以-ly 结尾的副词，在连续使用时往往会产生强势排比论证的效果。请看下面的实例：

☆ This invariably (无一例外地) leads to increases in the number of people travelling locally. (剑 8 例句)

☆ The cost of travelling, even though it is at present increasing due to an economic slowdown globally, is still relatively (相对来说) affordable to many people. (剑 8 例句)

☆ International sporting events affect nations socially, economically and politically. (请体会通过三个-ly 结尾的副词形成的强势效果)

☆ It is important to stay fit physically (体力地), mentally (脑力地) and emotionally (情绪

上地）through daily exercise.

☆ Similarly（类似地），boys in single-sex schools are more likely to take cookery classes and to study languages，which are often thought of as traditional subjects for girls. （剑 8 例句）

☆ It often seems that the amount of money they are able to earn in a short time cannot possibly be justified（站得住脚的）by the amount of work they do.

☆ The gap between their earnings and those of people who work less selfishly for the good of society has been widening.

☆ Teachers continually（持续地）complain about this problem and measures should be taken to combat（解决）the situation.

☆ A product's success cannot be solely（仅仅）attributed to its advertising.

☆ Interestingly，technology can positively contribute to the keeping alive of traditional skills and ways of life.

☆ Ideally，all the weapons of mass destruction should be eliminated（消灭，消除）. But in reality，the elimination of such weapons would cause serious national security concerns.

※ 在雅思作文中涉及讨论某问题的解决方案的时候经常会写“从理论上讲……但事实上……”，对应的地道英文表达有：In theory，/ Theoretically，/ Hypothetically，... But in practice，/ But in actuality，/ But realistically，...

E 倒装句

这种语法现象很多同学都学过，但却往往忘记在雅思作文里使用。不过考官们可从来没忘记：

☆ Only in this way can this problem be effectively solved.

☆ We can see that not only are there very large differences between these economies，but that these gaps are widening.

☆ Strange as it may seem，parents' attention sometimes hinders（阻碍）students' academic development.

☆ Equally important to success in learning a foreign language is constant attention to details.

☆ Be it Clint Eastwood，David Beckham or David Cameron（英国现任首相），one individual cannot have done all alone what seems to have been achieved by himself.（这里的 Be it... 是一种很特殊的倒装形式，即使是指人也用 it，意思是：不管是……，在英式英语中时常可见）

F 强调句

用 It is... that... 或者 It is... who... 这两种强调句式，类似于中文的“正是……导致了……”的意思。

请看例句：

☆ It is the interaction（相互影响）of the two that shapes a person's personality and dictates how that personality develops.

☆ However, it is only those who reach the very top of their profession who can get these huge salaries.（请注意这个例句里的 those who 中的这个 who 并不是强调句的标志词，后一个 who 才是。是不是听起来有点像绕口令，汗……）

但需要国内考生朋友们注意的是，有时含有 It is... that... 的句子并非是强调句，而是用 that 引导的定语从句来修饰而非强调前面的名词。例如：

It is something that an individual goes on learning throughout life.（剑8 例句，这句话就是使用 that 引导的定语从句来修饰 something，而不可以解释为“正是某物让个人用一生去学习”）

G 虚拟语气

使用虚拟语气是比较高的要求，但其实说白了就是用过去的时态表示现在或者将来的事情，表示语气弱化。在雅思作文中提建议的时候，虚拟语气相当常用。

下面都是虚拟语气的应用实例：

☆ If sufficient sky trains and underground train systems were built and effectively maintained in our major cities, then traffic on the roads would be dramatically reduced.（剑 8 例句）

☆ Long-term traffic and pollution reductions would depend on educating the public to use public transport more, and on governments using public money to construct and run efficient systems.（剑 8 例句）

☆ Without the natural talent, continuous training would be neither attractive nor productive, and without the training, the child would not learn how to exploit and develop their talent.

☆ High quality nursery schools could be established（建立）that would support families more in terms of raising the next generation.

☆ If this were not true, then we would be able to predict the behaviour and character of a person from the moment they were born.（请注意在虚拟语气中，this 和 that 后面都用 were 而不是 was）

H 长短句结合

如果一篇文章里都是超级无敌长难句，将可能会让考官的心情变得十分沉重。而长短句交替出现所形成的跳跃的节奏感会让考官给你的试卷评分变成一种少数人才能享受的特权。

请看剑桥考官是如何为我们提供这种“视觉享受”的：

☆ Some educationalists think it is more effective to educate boys and girls in single-sex schools because they believe this environment reduces distractions and encourages pupils to concentrate on their studies. This is probably true to some extent. （剑 8 例句）

☆ There have to be fixed punishments for all crimes. However, criminal laws have to provide a minimum and a maximum for the punishment and the laws also have to foresee（预见）certain cases of exemptions（赦免）.

☆ Employees get job satisfaction in a number of ways. Firstly, a person needs to feel that they are doing valued and valuable work, so positive feedback from superiors is very important in this respect.

☆ Of course, not everyone enjoys their work. Hard economic realities mean that many people have little choice in the kind of job they can get. In some cases an employee is working in a job that suits neither their skills nor their personality.

句式有张有弛，才是真心英雄。

I 主被动交替

在国外大学里，一些有洁癖的“叫兽”们非常反对在学术文章中使用被动语态。但对于雅思作文这种比较短小的 essay 来说，被动语态仍然是实现句式多样化的好方法之一。

请看考官范文中的被动形式例句：

☆ Educating children to understand the need to obey rules and respect others always begins in the home and is widely thought to be the responsibility of parents. They will certainly be the first to help children learn what is important in life, how they are expected to behave and what role they will play in their world. （剑 8 例句，短短两句话里就使用了多次主被动交替，手段很辣）

☆ Satisfaction is also increased by a sense of responsibility for and loyalty（忠诚）to a team.

☆ Such professionals should be much better appreciated and better paid.

☆ In conclusion, I agree that any child can be taught particular skills, but to be really good in

areas such as music, art or sport, then some natural talent is required.

当然，也要注意不宜过度使用被动语态。在雅思作文中被动形式只能是“小菜儿”，但“大餐”则仍然是主动语态。

J 改变词性

Cambridge 的范文作为 IELTS 范文中的极品，经常会使用同一个单词的不同形式来获得多样的效果。Pat 认真发掘后发现剑桥范文中的词形变换方法竟然达到了 3 种：

(1)

请认真比较：

变形前：

People are concerned（担心）because the traditional values are gradually disappearing from.

变形后：

People are concerned about the gradual disappearance of the traditional values.

说明：

动词与名词之间的相互转换

动词	名词
improve	improvement
intend to	intention
graduate	graduation
decide	decision
explore	exploration
discover	discovery
aspire to	aspiration
provide	provision

请看剑 8 p.167 考官范文中的名词、动词变换实例：

(a) If sufficient sky trains and underground train systems were built and effectively maintained in our major cities, then traffic on the roads would be dramatically reduced.

(b) Long-term traffic and pollution reductions would depend on educating the public to use public transport more, and on governments using public money to construct and run efficient systems.

不难想象，如果这两个紧挨着的句子重复使用 reduce 的动词形式将会变得味如嚼蜡。

(2)

请认真比较：

变形前：

Some individuals have no intention of fulfilling their responsibilities as parents.

变形后：

Some individuals have no intention of fulfilling their parental responsibilities.

V

说明：

-al 是英文里一个常见的词汇后缀。虽然有少数不是形容词的特例（比如 denial 是一个名词，而 professional 有时候也可以当成名词来使用），但大多数用-al 结尾的单词都是形容词。下面这几个词也是以-al 结尾的形容词，在雅思作文中相当常用：environmental，governmental，societal（比 social 正式，在书面语中很常用），biological 与 technological。

形容词与抽象名词间的相互转换（剑桥常用手法）

形容词	名词
mature	maturity
chaotic	chaos
generous	generosity
possible	possibility
happy	happiness
applicable	applicability
optimistic	optimism
stable	stability
disastrous	disaster

请看剑 8 中的形容词与抽象名词变换实例：

(a) The cost of travelling, even though it is at present increasing due to an economic slowdown globally, is still relatively affordable（形容词：不贵的）to many people.

(b) This affordability（抽象名词：能负担得起的价位）is further enhanced by the use of credit cards and loans in order to fund travel, especially for holiday purposes.

这两句话又是前后脚紧跟着的，如果非要“顶风作案”密集地连用两次 affordable，将会让用词略显呆傻。

(3)

请认真比较：

变形前：

Telecommuting（在家远程上班）can bring numerous benefits（*n.*）to both employees and employers.

变形后1：

Both employees and employers can benefit from telecommuting.

变形后2：

Telecommuting is beneficial to both employees and employers.

变形后3：

Both employees and employers can be beneficiaries（受益者）of telecommuting.

这一组则是在名词、动词、形容词和名词的派生词之间进行的游刃有余的转换。类似的也可以有 There is difference（*n.*）between… ⟶ be different（*adj.*）from ⟶ differ（*vi.*）from 这样的连续转换。

请再看剑8实例：

These causes affected different regions differently in the 1990s. 剑桥考官在如此之短的句子里竟然还坚持变换词性并且游刃有余，已经颇具 *Sleepless in Seattle* 中的那句经典对白：When you are attracted to someone, it means your subconscious is attracted to his subconscious, subconsciously. 的奥斯卡神韵了。

K of +抽象名词

这也是国内考生很不熟悉而剑桥考官却乐此不疲的一种结构。"（be）+of +抽象名词"的意思相当于其中的那个名词所对应的形容词，用来说明某种特征或属性。常跟的抽象名词有 importance / help / value / use / interest / significance / necessity / quality / impact 等等。比如：

☆ The relative importance of natural talent and training is a frequent topic of discussion.（其中的 of discussion 就表示 much-discussed 的意思）

☆ Of crucial importance is, in my view, how we define（定义）"responsible for bringing the children up".（注意这句话同时也用了倒装）

☆ Some technology, such as weapons of mass destruction（大规模杀伤性武器）are of negative impact.

L 通过比较制造出变化

剑桥范文中还经常通过比较不同事物来调动一些特殊句型，比如 too… to…（太……而不

能……)；The + 比较级，the + 比较级等。这些比较句型大家早就学过，但却“不屑”于在雅思作文中使用，而在这方面剑桥考官们则是绝对的实用主义者。

请看考官范文实例：

☆ For example, the population of some islands is too small to have normal schools. Rather than breaking up families by sending children to the mainland, education authorities（当局）have been able to use the Internet to deliver（输送）schooling.

☆ The more relaxed the learners, the better their language acquisition（语言习得）.（这个特殊句式的一大特色是可以省略掉句子里的谓语）

V

M 括号也疯狂

考官有时候甚至还会用括号来打破长难句造成的单调感，虽然已经略显得“流氓”，但其对于句式多样性的执着追求确实感人至深。

请看剑桥范文中的一个例句：

☆ By that I mean an ability to have a clear sense of what is important in our lives (the welfare of our families, the quality of our relationships, making other people happy, etc.) and what is not (a problem at work, getting annoyed about trivial things, etc.).

类似的在雅思作文中完全可以接受而国内考生却极少使用的标点还有冒号：与破折号—。

☆ With the rise in the price of petrol, one factor cannot be ignored: the increasing cost.

☆ There are larger numbers of means of transport — there are more cars, buses and trains in operation（在运营中）.（剑 8 例句）

N the + 形容词

在地道英语中还有一种常见的习惯用法，用the 加上一个形容词，泛指某一类人，比如 the rich, the wealthy, the poor, the needy, the elderly, the unemployed, the weak, the neglected（最后这个是指被忽视的群体）。例如：

☆ The government should dedicate itself to protecting the rights of the old the sick and the homeless.（剑 8 例句）

☆ One of the most effective ways to teach children about responsibilities is to encourage them to care for the poor and the needy.

剑桥考官用来实现句式多样性的“看家本领”全都为大家揭露在本节中了。需要写作高分的童鞋们请一定认真研读这些方法并多加练习。它们不仅对考雅思极为有用，而且对大家今后在海外的学习或工作中丰富自己的英语句式也会提供很大帮助，各位来了就知道了。☺

每日一练 Question of the Day

句子分析

请正确划分下面的句子成分：

1 The first step that should be taken is to improve the living conditions of all elderly people.

2 Increased investment in public transport would result in a more efficient transport system.

3 Consequently, teenagers' violent activities are effectively curbed.

4 Every year millions of animals die due to the inhumane experiments performed upon them.

判断练习

请判断下列句子是简单句、并列句还是复杂句。如果是复杂句，请用下划线划出从句部分：

1 Today the way we consider human development is heavily influenced by genetic technology.

2 Some people suggest the government take steps to combat juvenile delinquency（青少年犯罪）.

3 Schools afford education of the mind while communities provide education of the heart.

4 In theory parents should spend more time with their offspring but in reality few can spend more than three hours with their kids daily.

改错练习

请利用“语法的七宗罪”规则快速找出下面句子里的语法错误：

1 Conflicts may arise（出现）between tourist and local resident.

2 Grow up in a poor family makes some children feel they are not as capable as other children.

3 Some events are not report by the media in a dependable way.

4 The governments of all countries on this planet is beginning to realise the severity（严重性）of water shortage.

5 In general, computers help students learn things more effectively, computer games may lower their efficiency.

6 There are numerous countries in the world suffer from poverty.

7 Fast food is insteading of traditional Chinese food in many Chinese cities.

填空练习

请在下面的空格里填上正确的介词：

1 Students should pay attention _____ how much progress they make instead of how much time they spend on study.

2 The reason _____ the proliferation of pollution varies from country to country.

3 Scientists have presented many possible solutions _____ the severe population problem on earth.

4 Citizens think museums and art galleries are very important _____ them.

识别练习(高分内容)

请识别下列句子使用了何种特殊加分句式：

1 In terms of history, many Asian cities hold definite advantages over American metropolises（大都市）.

2 It is the air quality that keeps some foreign investors away from Hong Kong.

3 Only in very few regions（区域）do the residents have enough water for their daily needs.

4 Without electricity, many of the modern inventions would have been impossible.

练习答案 Answer Key

句子分析

1 〔The first step〕〔that should be taken〕〔is〕〔to improve the living conditions of all
主语　定语从句　谓语　表语（be 动词后宾语的特殊形式）
elderly people〕.

2 〔Increased〕〔investment in public transport〕〔would result in〕〔a more efficient〕
定语　主语　谓语　定语
〔transport system〕.
宾语

3 〔Consequently,〕〔teenagers' violent〕〔activities〕〔are〕〔effectively〕
状语　定语　主语　表被动谓语　状语
〔curbed〕.
表被动谓语

4 〔Every year〕〔millions of animals〕〔die〕〔due to the inhumane experiments
状语　主语　谓语　状语
performed upon them〕.

判断练习

1 Today the way we consider human development is heavily influenced by genetic technology. 复杂句，下划线部分为定语从句。

2 Some people suggest the government take steps to combat juvenile delinquency. 复杂句，下划线部分为宾语从句，that 被省略。

3 Schools afford education of the mind while communities provide education of the heart. 复杂句，下划线从句表示对比。

4 In theory parents should spend more time with their offspring but in reality few can spend more than three hours with their kids daily. 并列句，连接词为 but。

改错练习

1. tourist 和 resident 均为可数名词单独使用，前面应该加 the 或者后面加-s。
2. grow up 动词作主语，应该在 grow 之后加-ing。
3. report 被动形式应该加-ed。
4. 主语的主干名词是 governments 复数，谓语动词应改用 are。
5. 两套主谓宾却没有加连接词，应该在后面的从句前加表示让步的 although。
6. There be 句型加名词再加动词就不能用动词原形了，应该在 suffer 后面加上-ing。
7. instead of 不能作动词使用，应该改为 replacing。

填空练习

注意下面的介词搭配：

pay attention to

reason for

solutions to

important to

识别练习

1. In terms of history, many Asian cities hold definite advantages over American metropolises. 本句中 In terms of history 是典型的状语提前，是“在历史这方面”的意思。

2. It is the air quality that keeps some foreign investors away from Hong Kong. 本句使用了强调句，强调令一些投资者远离香港的原因。

3. Only in very few regions do the residents have enough water for their daily needs. 本句使用了倒装句强调缺水的严重性。

4. Without electricity, many of the modern inventions would have been impossible. 本句使用了虚拟语气，表示和事实相反的一种假设。

Mission Statement

—6种主从关系

—20个分级连接词

—五个词组、一种关系、
三门绝活儿

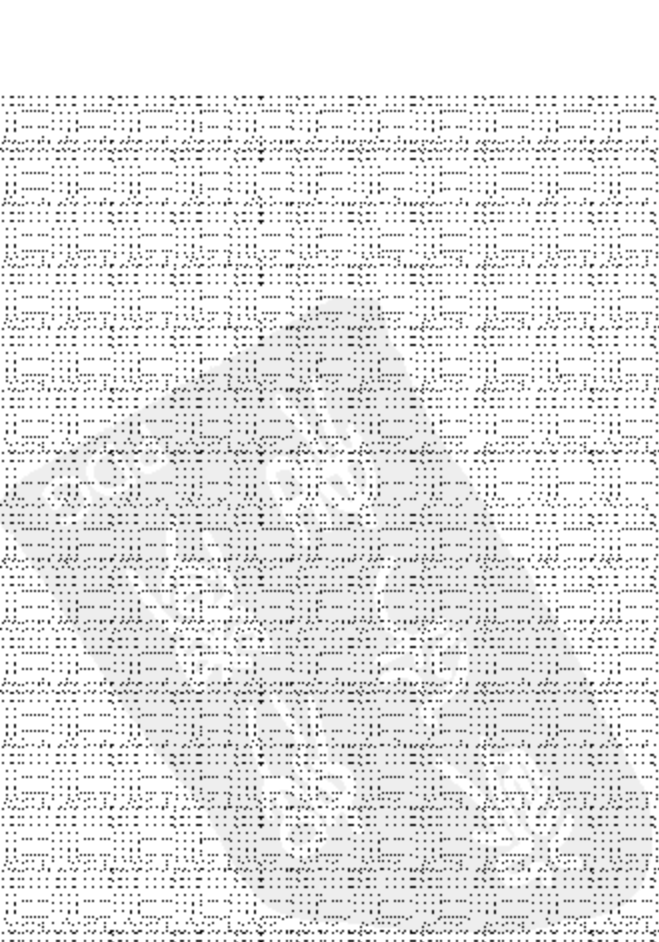
Day 5

写好复杂句的秘诀

The KISS Principle

We are living in a world of growing complexity and diversity. That is precisely why we crave more brevity and clarity.

— *Pat*



写复杂句似乎永远都是中国考生心中的痛，每写必错。老师教复杂句是为了让学生把作文写好，为什么学生们的作文却越写越让人看不懂，最后连学生自己也丧失自信了呢?

在地道英文中有个很有名的词叫“KISS”，四个字母都大写，等于“Keep it simple, stupid.”（简单就是美）。我自己长期批改学生的作文，感觉产生这样的结果原因其实只有一个：教师教的复杂句过于复杂，超出了学生能力能够接受的最大难度。

请大家翻翻剑桥系列后面由考官们（examiners）提供的9分范文，您发现了几句长难句呢？请大家好好看看剑桥4的第165页和169页；剑桥5的165页和169页；剑6的164页和168页；剑7的163和167页；剑8的163页和167页这些考官提供的满分范文仔细体会一下。有一个规律对雅思写作的句子很实用：即使是9分雅思作文，句子平均的长度一般也就是十几个单词。换句话说，平均句长也就是一个主句加上1~2个比较短的从句，而绝不是3~4个从句的超级难句。

因此，我们对雅思作文的要求，应该是“实用+准确”，而不应该是莫名其妙的高难度（being difficult just for difficulty's sake）。

Day 4中我们提到过：所谓的英文复杂句，本质上不过就是两个（或者两个以上）简单句（就是主谓宾）和连接词的叠加。其中没有连接词引导的那个主谓宾叫做主句，由一个连接词引导的主谓宾叫做从句。结构如下：

（连词）+主+谓+宾+（连词）+主+谓+宾

这就是英文复杂句的本质结构。当然，可以根据这个结构再嵌套出更复杂的复杂句，不过实战中掌握好这个基础结构才是最重要的。

一个复杂句最多只有一个主句，可以有一个或者多个从句，但是在雅思写作里，只带有1个主句和1~2个从句的复杂句就已经可以满足高分的要求。主谓宾大家一般都会写，那么我们理清复杂句头绪的关键，其实不就是连接词的正确使用吗？好，今天我们就专攻连接词，明天再讲怎么把主句和从句的主谓宾结构写精彩。

请看下面这篇由剑桥官方提供的满分范文，它的特点就是用简单的词汇，大量正确使用的连词和并不是很长的复杂句，达到了严密的逻辑和比较强的说服力：

题目

Nowadays we are producing more and more rubbish. Why do you think this is happening? What can governments do to reduce the amount of rubbish produced?

范文

It is true that in almost every country today each family produces a large amount of waste

every week. Most of the rubbish comes from the packaging of the things that we buy, such as processed food. However, even if we buy food without packaging, we still produce rubbish from the plastic bags that are used everywhere.

The first reason why we have so much packaging is we consume so much more every day than families did in the past. Also, convenience is very important in modern life; therefore, we buy packaged food that can be transported over long distances and store it until we need it, at first in the supermarket, then at home.

Further, the amount of waste produced is also a result of our habit of using something once and throw it away. We forget that even the cheapest plastic bag has used valuable resources and energy. Above all, we also forget that it is a source of pollution and difficult to deal with.

I think governments need to raise this awareness in the general public. Children should be educated about environmental issues while adults need to take action. Governments can encourage such action by collecting taxes on packaging, such as plastic bags and fining families and shops that do not try to recycle their waste.

在后面的 Day 8（下）中，我们还将见到更多的对高分范文的分析，结论也是一样的：连词很重要。

如果你真的是特不爱背单词的考生，那我就真的建议你好好背一背本章的连词吧。英文是世界上词汇量增加速度最快的语言。英文里的动词、名词和形容词的数量都已经在 10 万以上，但是英文里的连词却非常有限而且固定，学术写作里最常用的甚至只有十几个（如果大家认为太少了，请仔细阅读剑1 ~剑8 里的任何一篇 reading 文章，找找看有哪一个连词超出了今天我们要学习的学术写作常用连词的范围）。

再次强调：在作文中特别是在主体段的支持句中，提高使用连词的频率和准确度真的是提高雅思作文分数最快的方法之一。因为每一个正确使用的连词，本质其实是一种正确使用的逻辑关系。

雅思写作最实用的连接词，只有以下 6 种（前面划※的词是重点推荐连词。从实战角度每类记 1 ~2 个词就够了，不必都记）。

考官的句子为什么严密：主句与从句之间永远只有 6 种关系

画※的连词为重点推荐连词

因果关系（cause and effect）

❶ 标志词

类型	单词	解释	说明
原因	※ as	因为……	注意这两个词后面要跟从句而不能只跟一个名词，在雅思考试中 because 被大家用得太多了，as 是一个不错的替换选择
	since		
	※ due to	因为……	注意这两组词后面只能跟名词，而不能跟从句，due to 的使用频率更高
	owing to		
结果	hence	因此	用在句首和句中都可以
	thus		
	※ therefore		
	as a consequence	作为结果	用在句首比较多，用在句首时它们的后面通常加逗号与下文间隔开
	as a result		
	※ consequently		
	so that	因此	用在句中，不能用在句首
目的	thereby	以此达到……的目的	不能用在句首，而且在正式英语中后面加动名词（*v.* +ing）

❷ 因果关系的例句

例句： As this policy would also affect the cost of public transport, it would be very unpopular with everyone who needs to travel on the roads. （剑 8 例句）

长句译文： 由于这一政策也会影响乘坐公交的费用，它将难以被经常出行的人们所接受。

例句： It is important that children learn at an early age to use the equipment with confidence as they will need these skills throughout their studies and working lives.

长句译文： 孩子们从小就学习自信地使用这些设备很重要，因为在他们/她们今后的学习和工作中将一直需要这些技能。

例句： Sometimes it is difficult to define（下定义）positive development as there are always changes in the socio-economic relationships.

例句： In many countries children work because their families need the additional（额外的）income, no matter how small it is.

例句： Feelings about one's job must reflect（反映，体现）how an individual feels about his or her life as a whole, and because of this, job satisfaction is indeed important to the wellbeing of that person.（请注意 because 后面跟从句而 because of 后面则跟名词或名词短语）

长句译文： 个人关于自己工作的感受必须能体现他/她对生活的整体感受，而且正因为如此，工作满意度确实对个人的良好生活状态十分重要。

例句： In many countries, the birth rate is decreasing so that families are smaller with fewer children.

例句： It has included teaching the next generation how to be good members of society. Therefore, this cannot be the responsibility of the parents alone.（剑 8 例句）

例句： We forget that this is a source of pollution and difficult to dispose of; therefore, governments need to raise this awareness（意识）in the general public.

长句译文： 我们忘记了这也是一种污染源而且很难处理，因此政府需要提高普通公众的这种意识。（其中 dispose of 是一个动词短语：把……扔掉或处理掉的意思）

讲解： 请注意 therefore 用在两个从句之间时其前面通常使用分号。

例句： As a result of constant（持续不断的）media attention, sports professionals in my country have become stars and celebrities（名人）.

举例关系（exemplification）

❶ 标志词

单词	解释	说明
take... for example	以……为例	省略号里面只能填名词，不能填句子
※ for instance	比如……	=for example
such as	例如	后面跟名词，切记不能用在句首
This point is best illustrated with the example of...	这个观点可以用……的例子最有力地证明。	后面跟名词

（续表）

单词	解释	说明
This point can be confirmed by the example of...	这个观点可以被……的例子支持。	后面跟名词
consider... for example	以……为例	省略号里填入名词或者 that 从句都可以
... is a case in point.	……是一个恰当的例子	省略号里填名词

❷ 举例关系的例句

例句： To do this, we need to improve the choice of public transport services available to travellers. For example, if sufficient sky trains and underground train systems were built and effectively maintained in our major cities, then traffic on the roads would be dramatically reduced. （剑 8 例句）

长句译文： 为达到这个目标，我们需要改进出行者对于公交服务的可选择范围。例如，如果在大城市中能建造并且有效地运营轻轨和地铁系统，那么公路上的交通量就会显著减少。

讲解： sky train 是海外一些大中城市对轻轨系统的“昵称”，Vancouver 的轻轨就叫 Sky Train，而且全自动全程无人驾驶（unmanned）。很多 Vancouver 的小朋友都喜欢跑到 Sky Train 的车头坐着模仿驾驶员的样子，十分威风。

例句： It is generally believed that some people are born with certain talents, for instance, for sports or music, and others are not.

长句译文： 普遍公认，一些人天生就有一定的才能，比如对于运动和音乐的天赋，而另一些人没有。

例句： Everybody makes mistakes, sometimes very serious ones. For example, the residents of Pompeii（庞贝古城）refused to leave their comfortable homes, even when the earth began to rumble（轰鸣）.

例句： Most of this rubbish comes from the packaging（包装）from the things we buy, such as processed（经过加工的）food.

例句： A case in point is the fact that the nature of European society was, at one stage, that of city-state（城邦）. After that, it was a feudal（封建的）society. Then later it became an industrial society.

讲解：（A）关于雅思作文举例，请您牢记两点：①主语尽量用复数，这样的例子看起来更有代表性；②例子不要过长，一两句话就应该结束，否则你的文章会看起来像记叙文而不像议论文。

（B）另外，有些考生喜欢在作文里通过“编造”数据来凑字。Pat **反对**这种写法。坦白地说：由于知识面不够宽，社会经验也有限，很多同学的数据一眼就能看出是编出来的，阅卷无数的雅思考官们对这些“山寨版数据”更是心明眼亮。但如果您非不听劝告，那 Pat 仅作为一个哥们儿给您提供一个用来引出数据的句型吧（**真的以不用为宜**）：

A recent study conducted by the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences revealed that...（这个句型可用于引出社会问题数据，如果是教育问题数据则可以用 UNESCO，如果是犯罪问题数据则机构可以改为用 the Chinese Ministry of Justice，交通问题可以用 the Chinese Ministry of Transportation，建筑问题可以用 the Chinese Ministry of Construction，环境问题则可以用 HSUS and Greenpeace）。比如下面的例句：

例句： A recent study jointly conducted by HSUS and Greenpeace indicated that there were over one million mammals（哺乳动物）in lab cages（笼子）today. 用来说明人类现在虐待动物的情况有多么严重。

但 Pat 还是要再次强调：其实我们有因果、对比、假设、让步、因果、修饰以及举社会现象等等很多剑桥考官自己也常用的论证方法和连接词，所以**最好还是戒掉**伪造数据的瘾。

对比关系（comparison and contrast）

❶ 标志词

单词	说明
※ while...	用在句首或者句中，表示主句和从句的对比（句内对比）
whilst...	
※ whereas...	
※ by/in contrast，...	用在句首，表示它之前一个句子和它后面引导的句子之间的对比（句间对比）

❷ 对比关系的例句

例句： Some countries have single-sex education models, while in others both single sex and mixed schools co-exist.（剑 8 例句）

讲解： co-exist（*v.*）是“共存”的意思，在雅思写作中这个词经常用于文化类和发展类作文中。

例句： While some people link happiness to wealth and material success, others think it lies in emotions and loving personal relationships.

例句： Children can be educated about environmental issues at school while adults need to take action.

例句： Whereas some cities have spent huge sums of money on museums and stadiums, they have failed to look after their schools.

例句： In contrast, the suggested location, S2, is right in the town center.（考官范文）

讲解： 由这些剑桥例句我们已经可以非常清晰地看出：while 或者 whereas 是表示句内对比，而 in contrast 是表示两个句子之间的对比。

让步关系（concession）

❶ 标志词

单词	解释	说明
※ despite	尽管	后面跟名词或者代词
in spite of		
notwithstanding		
nonetheless	尽管如此	后面直接跟完整的句子
nevertheless		
※ even though	尽管	很多时候可以替换 although，后面跟从句，表示对已经存在的状况让步
※ even if	即使	后面跟从句，表示对还没有发生的状况的让步
albeit	尽管	一般用在句子中间，后面跟形容词或介词短语

（续表）

单词	解释	说明
as long as	只要	用在句子中间，不仅写作很常用，口语也常用，比如 *Backstreet Boys* 那句超有名的歌词 I don't care who you are, where you're from or what you did as long as you love me. ☺

❷ 让步关系的例句

例句： The cost of travelling, even though it is at present increasing due to an economic slow-down globally, is still relatively affordable to many people. （剑 8 例句）

长句译文： 旅行的费用尽管由于目前全球经济放缓而上升，对于多数人而言却仍然是可以承担得起的。

讲解： 请注意在今天刚开始的时候我们学到的 due to “由于” 在本句中表达出的因果关系以及对于以-ly 结尾的副词的积极运用。

例句： Even though it is unlikely that all workers do feel happy in their work, I think it is not unrealistic to promote more job satisfaction in any job.

长句译文： 尽管让所有员工都满意并不太可能，但我认为提高任何工作中的满意度都是现实的。

例句： Even if there is no strict school policy, teachers should not let their students have access to mobile phones during exams.

例句： The applicant accepted the offer, albeit with some hesitation （犹豫）.

例句： In spite of this, the obvious benefits of computer skills for young children cannot be denied. （考官范文）

假设关系（supposition）

❶ 标志词

单词	解释	说明
provided that...	如果……	后面的结果一般是我们希望看到的
If...		后面的结果也可以是我们不希望看到的
on condition that...	如果某条件可以被满足的话	这个词组更强调某事发生的条件

❷ 假设关系的例句

例句： If there are different kinds of happiness for different individuals, then the first step in achieving it is to have a degree of self-knowledge.

例句： The government will increase its support for public education, provided that such funds can be put to good use.

修饰关系（modification）

❶ 标志词：that，who，※which，why（它的前面常是 reason/reasons）

其实这种关系就是定语从句了。强调一下：which 从句在雅思作文里特别常用而且相当拿分，强烈建议大家多多使用。在雅思写作中最好把它跟 that 从句区分开：在 which 前面加一个逗号，表示 which 引导的从句修饰前面整个主句而不是只修饰前面一个名词。

❷ 修饰关系的例句

例句： The technology is already available to produce electric cars that would be both quieter and cleaner to use.（剑 8 例句）

讲解： 请注意本句中还使用了 IELTS 写作中相当常见的虚拟语气，较为客气地表示自己对将来某种可能性提出的假设。

例句： When someone feels he/she is improving or developing his/her skills through training opportunities, then there is a sense of purpose that rewards（回报）a worker.

例句： The trend is not restricted to rich students who have the money to travel, but is also evident among poorer students who choose to work.

讲解： 其中，not restricted to 是个很有用的句型，是“不仅限于……”的意思，evident 是“明显的”意思。

例句： They tend to be more independent, which is a very important factor in academic study and research.

讲解： 其中，independent 是“独立的”。请仔细体会 which 从句在雅思作文里和 that/who 的区别。

例句： I think there may be some reasons why entertainment stars earn high salaries but overall I agree that they are overpaid.

长句译文： 我认为娱乐明星挣取高工资是有一定原因的，但总体上来看，我同意他们/她们的工资过高了。

上面 6 类主句和从句之间的关系，已经足够我们连接出高分雅思作文的复杂句了。明天我们还要学习如何写出精彩的主谓宾结构（即主句或者从句）。

Pat 自己从小就喜欢研究星座运势，如果您正好是巨蟹座或者天蝎座的，天生比较谨慎，有了这些连接词您还不放心，没问题，下面的 20 个表达我按难度不同分成了 4 组，这些已经完全覆盖剑桥满分范文中曾经出现的全部连词了。其中有些我们已经在上文讲过，有些我们在后面的范文讲解里会见到。

IELTS 议论文主体段 20 个最高频逻辑衔接总结（高分内容）

轻量级表达

…; therefore…/…; thus…	因此……
…, which…	用来引导定语从句，修饰前面的主句
★ even though…, …	尽管……，……
★ since /as…	因为……，……
★ … instead of…	……而不是……

例句： The government should take action to promote international trade instead of just paying lip service to it.

译文： 政府应该采取行动去促进国际贸易，而不是仅仅说空话。

讲解： pay lip service 是“说空话”的意思（不要想歪了啊，可不是“付出嘴唇服务”）。

中量级表达

as a matter of fact	事实上，……
indeed	确实，……

while/whereas	……而……，表示主句与从句间的对比关系，如果是句子与句子之间的对比则用…By/In contrast,…
★ even if…	即使……，……
★ Accordingly,	雅思写作中放在句首比较多，“相应地”

例句： Citizens found some laws contradictory（相互矛盾的）. Accordingly, they requested that the government take measures to clarify（澄清）these laws.

重量级表达

★ otherwise	……否则……
★ … rather than…	而不是……
★ regardless of…	不管……，无论……
★ Similarly/Likewise,	雅思作文中经常用在句首，“类似地”，表示类比
More precisely,	更准确地说，……

例句： Some jobs are repetitive and boring, and labour relations may be poor and lead to insecurity rather than job satisfaction.

例句： Some people think that the true function of a university should be to give access to knowledge for its own sake, regardless of whether the course is useful to an employer.

骨灰级表达

…, thereby + *v.* + ing	句中连词，“以此达到……的目的”
I would be hard-pressed to imagine that	我很难想象……（后面跟自己观点的相反情况）
Specifically,	具体来说，……
★ in terms of…	就……而言，……（用来限制观点的适用范围）
Essentially, /In essence,	本质上讲，……

例句： Overall, I think this is less likely today, when academic qualifications are essential for getting a reasonable career.

例句： Essentially, what these people believe does not differ from the old view.

考官惯用伎俩揭秘（3）：五个词组、一种关系和三门绝活儿（高分内容）

A 五个不难却拿分的词组

雅思写作中有三个词组，一个是 in terms of（在……方面），另一个是 regardless of（不管……），还有一个是 for the sake of（为了改善……），是考官范文里使用特别频繁的加分词组，但是中国考生很少去主动使用，不能不说是极大的遗憾。

另外还有一对词组，一个是 on the one hand，另一个是 on the other hand，虽然我们每天都在使用，但往往是在错误地使用，甚至 Pat 见过的某些范文也在错误地使用这两个词组，不能不说是更大的遗憾。

我们先来说这一对词组。请大家仔细体会下面的例句：

On the one hand, moving large companies to the countryside may reduce the tax revenue（税收）of the city government. On the other hand, this measure can effectively relieve（减轻）the pressure on the city transportation system.

通过这两句话 Pat 想告诉各位读者什么呢？一定要明确：On the one hand, ... On the other hand, ... 之间是**对比关系，一定不要**把这一对词组后面跟的两个句子写成都是支持或者都是反对某一种观点。权威的朗文词典也明确告诉我们，这一对词组是用来“Used when comparing two different or opposite facts or ideas”，它们后面跟的应该是对比的观点才符合英文的习惯。这就是很多同学在主体段中常犯的一个经典错误。

关于这两个词组，朗文的这个例句也同样说明了这个问题：On the one hand, they work slowly. But on the other hand, they always finish the job.

剑 8 p. 173 的这句话与上文间也是极为明显的对比关系：On the other hand, some experts would argue that mixed schools prepare their pupils better for their future lives.

至于 in terms of（就……而言），雅思考官对这个词组真是情有独钟，比如这个考官范文中的例句：

These children are often spoilt, not in terms of love and attention because working parents do not have time for this, but in more material ways.

再看一个例句：

High-quality nursery schools could be established（建立）that would support families in

terms of raising the next generation.

in terms of 可以帮我们来**限定某一观点的适用范围**，因此特别能体现出思维的严密性，拜托各位一定多多关注，我们在 Day 8 中的范文分析中还会更多地见到它的例句。

说到 regardless of，它的中文意思和 no matter 差不多。但regardless of 的用法其实更加灵活，它的后面可以加名词、动名词或者从句，而 no matter 后面则只能加从句。

例如：

There is more to the skill than a learned technique（请注意它的正确含义是“技能”，与 technology 不同）and this extra talent cannot be taught, no matter how frequently a child practices.

They are allowed to have whatever they want, regardless of price, and to behave as they please（随心所欲）.

Others think the true function of a university should be to give access to knowledge for its own sake, regardless of whether the course is useful to employers.

说到for the sake of，有些同学误以为它完全等同于 because of，其实这是一种误解。朗文给了我们准确的解释：in order to help, improve or bring advantage to... 也就是说，其实它的意思更接近于英文的 for the purpose of helping/improving...

比如：

Today, many elderly people prefer to live in the countryside for the sake of their health.

这5 个词组，无论从使用频率还是使用效果都绝对经典，但是考生们却长期忽视。真的是到了我们该好好关注这 5 个词组的时候了。

对于高分考生，除了熟练掌握上面的5 个词组之外，下面这种要求比较高的逻辑关系也会让你的主体段看起来更加严谨。

B 下定义关系：

下定义是对你在主体段中提出的某个概念进行进一步的描述、细化或者限制它的适用范围。有能力这样写的考生无疑是可以用更强的逻辑思维能力打动考官的。但需要注意的是：考虑到 IELTS 作文的具体要求和考场里的时间限制，下定义的时候并没有必要吹毛求疵，只要符合常识就很好了。

下定义常用表达总结

A means...	A 意味着 ……
★ A refers to...	A 指的是 ……

（续表）

A suggests that…	A 显示出 ……（请注意这里的 suggest 不是建议的意思）
A constitutes…	A 构成……（在雅思作文中这个省略号里经常填入负面的内容，比如 crime / violation of the law 等）
A is best characterised by…	A 最重要的特征是……
A is，essentially，…	A 本质上是……
A reflect…	A 反映了……，这个句型之后的成份与它之前的成份也是说明关系

例如：

Happiness is，essentially，satisfaction of specific human desire.

Some adults do not have a clear idea of what constitute a crime. In fact，two elements are required for a crime to occur：a criminal act and a criminal intent.

So feelings about one's job must reflect how an individual feels about his or her life as a whole.

C 高分作文里还有三种挺神的绝活儿：

所谓“绝活儿”（ace up your sleeve），其实并不见得特别难，只是别人想到了而你可能没想到。

（a）让文章更有“范儿”的学术写作常用拉丁文词汇

这个技巧很多孩子们不知道，其实在国外大学里写议论文的时候有 4 个拉丁文词汇非常常用：

e. g.（for example）
i. e.（that is）
etc.（and so on）
status quo（the current or the existing state of affairs 现状）

在雅思作文里，如果能够正确地使用一两个拉丁文词汇，无疑可以强烈暗示考官该考生具有很高的学术写作素养（即使事实并非如此）。

请看剑 7 第 128 页的例句：

Some people feel that entertainers（e. g.，film stars，pop musicians or sports stars）are paid too much money.（请注意 e. g. 在国外学术写作的标准用法经常是后面再跟一个逗号）

剑 7 第 173 页范文里的句子也坚定地使用了拉丁文词汇：

Teachers, nurses, laboratory researchers etc. are never listed among the best-paid professionals.

（b）双重否定显功力

什么叫双重否定呢？就是把两个表示否定含义的词汇连用。其实英文有几种不同形式的双重否定，有的好，有的却不好。在雅思写作中 Pat 比较推荐大家用的，是下面这四种句型：

In Europe, it is not unusual for children to be bilingual. （剑 8 例句）
意思是：某现象较为常见

It is not unrealistic to promote more job satisfaction in any job. （剑桥例句）
意思是：去做某事是……现实的

These days, it is not uncommon that young people have a break from studying after graduating from high school. （剑桥例句）
意思是：……的现象比较常见

Not surprisingly, students who are under constant（持续不断的）stress in their studies may suffer from psychological problems or even commit crimes.
意思是：不出所料，……（其实这句话严格来说应该是“单重否定”，但因为它的意思很接近一些双重否定的句型，也一起列入这里供大家参考）

（c）剑桥范文也会耍赖（play dumb）

请设想一下这种情况：考场里你突然发现作文里有一个分论点自己怎么也想不出任何沾边儿的理由去论证，而身边的大牛却在奋笔疾书，而且还哗哗地把写作答题纸翻得很响，甚至竟然相当暴力地举手向考官要 extra answer sheet（额外的答题纸），这无疑将对你构成巨大的心理压力。

下面这三个雅思考官常用的“耍赖”方法可以立刻把你救出苦海，因为只要用这三种方法把前面一句改写一下就可以了（不过要强调的是：这三个词组只能作为实在没话可说时的“救命稻草”，绝不要过多地使用。滥用只会让文章显得空洞）。

下面都是满分作文“耍赖”实例：

Talent is what distinguishes a person who has been trained to play a sport or an instrument, from those who become good players. In other words, there is more to the skill than a learned technique.

Young adults may end up never returning to their studies or finding it difficult to readapt to an academic environment. By that I mean they may think that it is better to continue in a particular job.

Overall, I think the ability to keep clear perspective (视角) in life is a more essential factor in achieving happiness. By that I mean an ability to have a clear sense of what is important in our lives and what is not.

These children are often spoilt, not in terms of love and attention but in more material ways that is to say, they are allowed to have whatever they want and to behave as they please.

考官惯用伎俩揭秘（4）：请看管好你的平行结构

V

平行结构是书面英语中的常见规则，在雅思写作中尤其重要，因为它可以很好地体现出一个考生的写作素养。这个语法规则其实很多同学应该都听说过，但在实际写作实践中，特别是写较长的复杂句时，大家很容易忘记而导致扣分。

平行结构用最直观的语言解释就是名词对名词，形容词对形容词，动词不定式对动词不定式，分词对分词，从句对从句……比如，请仔细体会下面这些剑桥例句中的平行结构：

Satisfaction is also increased by a sense of responsibility for and loyalty to a team. (名词短语平行)

Even when children use a computer for other purposes, such as getting information or emailing friends, it is no substitute (替代物) for human interaction. (分词短语平行)

They will certainly be the first to help children learn what is important in life, how they are expected to behave and what role they will play in their wold. (剑 8 例句，从句平行)

Some essays are hard to understand, not because they are long but because they are obscure (含义模糊的). (从句平行)

剑桥考官在范文中对于平行原则遵守得相当严格，希望大家也能“积极自律”，在这个写作细节上也能向考官作文的高标准看齐。

每日一练 Question of the Day

填空练习

请在下面的空格里填上恰当的连词，使句子成为逻辑通顺的复杂句：

1 Today the media are often filled with violence and pornography. _____, many people argue that the government should take measure to censor（审查） the media.

2 The standard of living in many Asian countries has being raised markedly（显著的）. _____, in China today, nearly 80% of the urban population own a mobile phone.

3 The government should control the number of private cars in cities, _____ improving the air quality in the urban area.

4 These days, _____ many parents face heavy workload and serious pressure at work, they should try their best to ensure that their children can grow up healthily and they have a good parent-child relationship with their children.

5 The pollution problem in cities can be effectively solved _____ the government, the organisations and the citizens all make a concerted effort to combat it.

6 Some people believe individuals should save money for their lives after retirement _____ some others are more optimistic and think there is no need to plan for retirement.

7 Currently, CDs and video tapes are replacing the books in many libraries, _____ is disturbing to many readers.

翻译练习

1 那些认为政府有义务为艺术投资的人也有他们的理由。

2 这意味着广告不仅仅告诉我们信息，它们也会给人们带来乐趣。

3 家长在孩子的成长中起关键作用。比如，在家里没有安全感的孩子在学校里面也可能会缺少自信（confidence）。

4 犯罪率越来越高。因此，政府需要执行（enforce）更严厉的法律来遏制（curb）这种局面。

5 一些人认为所有医生和教师都应该到乡村工作一段时间，而另一些人认为他们应该有自己选择在哪里工作的自由。

6 尽管性别平等在大学校园里很重要，大学还是不应该在每个学科都接受同等数量的男生和女生。

配对练习

下面的表格左边都是复杂句的主句，右边都是复杂句的从句，请在中间填入下面 5 个连词的某一个将其连接成正确的复杂句。

序号	主句	连词	从句
1	Workers today still face serious physical and psychological stress at work,	?	working conditions for most people have been improved greatly.
2	Computers help teachers explain their ideas more clearly,		can effectively enhance students' efficiency in their study.
3	Many lesser-known languages are dying out		English is gaining in popularity in today's world.
4	Tourism has left numerous tourist spots serious polluted,		many local governments have enforced laws to control tourists' behavior.
5	Motorised flight has greatly enhanced travelers' efficiency,		turning this vast world into a small village.

A. while B. which C. thereby D. even though E. consequently

练习答案 Answer Key

填空练习

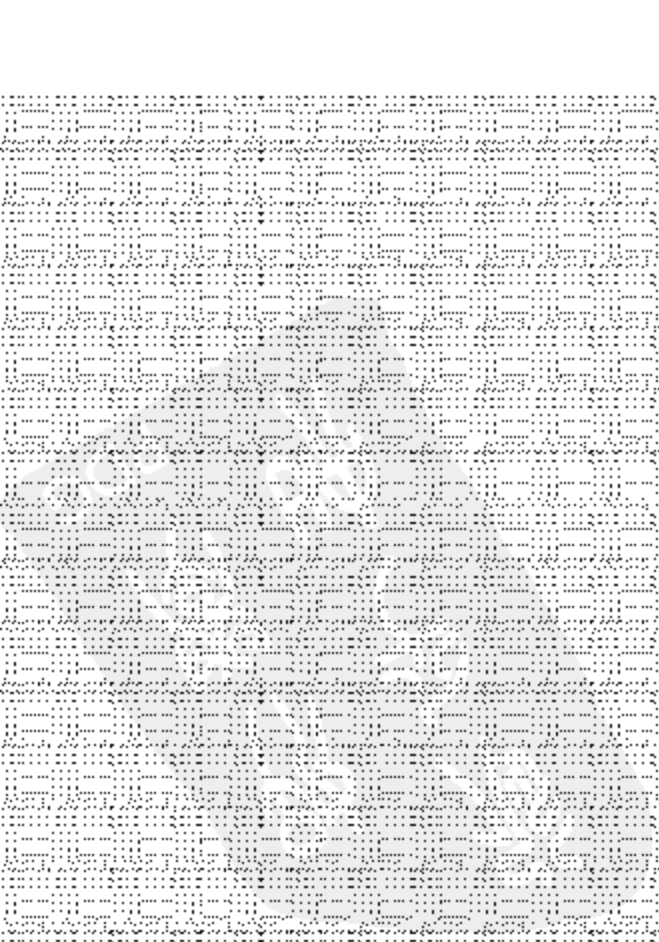
1. Consequently
2. For instance/For example
3. thereby
4. although/even though
5. provided that
6. while/whilst/whereas
7. which

翻译练习

1. Those who believe the government should invest in arts also have their reasons.
2. This means that advertising not only shows us information, but also affords people pleasure and enjoyment.
3. Parents play key roles in their children's growth. For instance, children who do not feel secure at home may lack confidence at school.
4. The crime rate is increasingly high; therefore, the government needs to enforce more stringent laws to curb this situation.
5. Some people think all doctors and teachers should work for a period of time in the rural area while some others believe doctors and teachers should have the freedom to choose where they work.
6. Even though gender equality is essential on campus, universities should not accept equal numbers of male and female students in every subject.

配对练习

1. D
2. B
3. A
4. E
5. C



Mission Statement

—36个论证基础句型

—63个论证高分句型

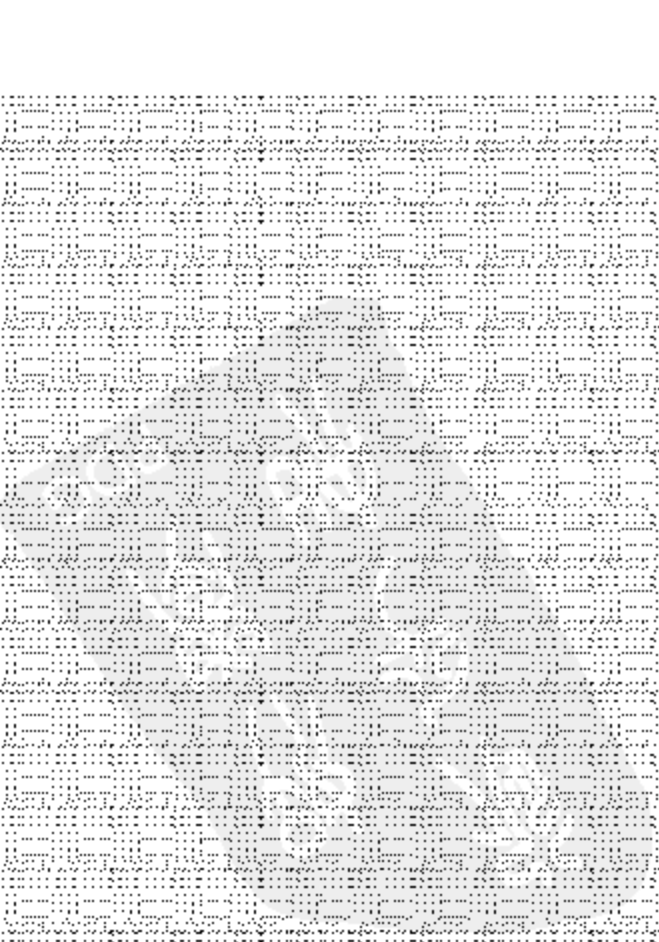
Day 6

36 和 63

Complex Sentences Made Easy

Buildings can be razed or remodeled. But bricks with which these buildings were built will nevertheless possess value as material.

— ***Pat***



上回书说到，雅思作文的复杂句要领，其实就是主谓宾（主句和从句）的叠加，再用正确的连接词串起来。连接词我们刚刚学过，在 Day 3 中我们也已经对雅思作文的核心词汇进行了深入地归纳。现在我们还需要的是地道的句式，来帮助我们把学过的词汇自然地引入到句子里。

至今我已经为中国考生写过 100 多篇雅思范文，而且批改过大量的学生作文，通过总结我发现：原来雅思作文在主体段写理由的时候，真正常用的句式就是 36 个基础句型，63 个高分句型加上核心动词搭配（需要写作单项 7 分的同学请配合本书的附录 H 学习本章）。"无它，但手熟尔！"

现在我们就把这些地道的句型一网打尽，彻底征服桀骜不驯的复杂句。

IELTS 写作 36 个基础句型

说明：

※ 这些基础句型希望大家结合例句都看一遍，它们确实很简单但在主体段论证的时候真的很常用；

※ 对于时间紧或者基础比较薄弱的考生，近义句型只要掌握一个即可；

※ 请特别注意例句中是如何准确地使用我们在 Day 5 所学的 **Linkers**。

前进类（用来论证 advantage 好的方面）

1 >> benefit from 从……当中获益

⇩ **例句** Others, however, believe that boys and girls benefit more from attending mixed schools. （剑 8 例句）

详解：［注意］这个句型与 is beneficial to... （对……有益）的主语和宾语位置是正好相反的，而且地道英文中有时还可以把它们放在文章的不同位置交替使用，以实现句式多样化。

［近义句型］be the main beneficiary （受益者）of... 是某现象或某事物的主要受益者

2 >> invest in 对……投资

⇩ 例句 The government should invest a large proportion（比例）of its budget in helping the needy（the +形容词构成的固定短语：穷人），despite the economic recession（经济衰退）.

详解：［反义句型］withdraw/suspend the funding of... 中止对……的投资

［近义表达］subsidise / sponsor / allocate money to / fund sth.

例句：This affordability is further enhanced by the use of credit cards and loans in order to fund travel, especially for holiday purposes.（剑 8 例句）

3 >> promote the development of... 促进……的发展

V

⇩ 例句 Even though the city has invested millions of pounds in museums and art galleries（美术馆，画廊），it has done little to promote the development of education and medical care.

详解：［近义句型］facilitate the development of.../ is a main contributor to...

4 >> boost efficiency / productivity 提高效率/生产率

⇩ 例句 The main question about high-tech education is whether it actually boosts the efficiency and the effectiveness of learning.

详解：［近义句型］enhance efficiency / productivity

5 >> play a pivotal role in 在……中起关键作用

⇩ 例句 Vitamins and minerals（矿物质）play a pivotal role in keeping our body healthy; therefore, children and adults alike should eat more vegetables that are rich in various vitamins and minerals.

详解：［近义句型］play a crucial / essential role in...

例句：They will certainly be the first to help children learn what is important in life, how they are expected to behave and what role they will play in their world.（剑 8 例句）

6 >> enrich one's social/ academic/ professional experience 丰富……的社会的/学术的/职业的经历

⇩ 例句 Working for a period before going to university can greatly enrich students' social experience and make them more capable in university.

详解：［近义句型］expand one's outlook / vision 开阔某人的视野（真的不建议大家再频繁使用 broaden one's horizons 那个早已被用滥的句型了）

［反义句型］limit / restrict one's vision 限制某人的视野

7 >> keep society safe and stable 保持社会稳定

⇩ 例句 Harmony keeps society safe and stable while conflict disturbs social order. （扰乱社会秩序）

详解：［近义句型］maintain social stability

8 >> have a duty/ obligation to do... 有责任做……

⇩ 例句 In most European countries, parents have a legal（法律的） obligation to ensure that their children receive proper education.

详解：［近义句型］be obligated to do sth. / be accountable for

［反义句型］be exempt from doing sth. 被免除某种责任，比如 paying taxes

9 >> relax their bodies and ease their minds 让人放松身心

⇩ 例句 Children not only need opportunities to acquire（获取） knowledge, they need time to relax their bodies and ease their minds as well.

详解：［近义句型］afford（提供给）sb. entertainment and pleasure

［比较］recreational activities/ leisure activities 休闲活动；leisure time 休闲时间

例句：People now have more leisure time and disposable incomes（可支配的收入）. The combination of these two with advertising campaigns from travel companies leads to an increase in the number of people travelling, in this case for holiday purposes.（剑 8 例句）

10 >> be based on... 基于……

⇩ 例句 Discipline（纪律）should be based on a positive, loving parent — child relationship instead of on force and punishment.

详解：［反义句型］lay the foundation for... / lay the groundwork for... 为……打好基础

11 >> generate employment opportunities 创造就业机会

⇩ 例句 International tourism can generate employment opportunities. On the other hand, it may damage the cultural heritage of a nation.

详解：［近义句型］stimulate the job market

［反义句型］reduce employment opportunities

12 >> be less time-consuming and more economical 省钱又省时间的

⇩ 例句 Contrary to the popular belief, advertising makes our shopping experience neither less time-consuming nor more economical.

详解：［近义句型］be more efficient and cost-effective

be affordable alternatives to sth. 是某事物较为廉价的替代物

例句：Long-distance train and coach services should be made attractive and affordable alternatives to driving our own car for long journeys.（剑 8 例句）

13 >> relieve one's academic / financial / psychological burden 减轻某人的学业/经济/心理负担

⇩ 例句 Part-time jobs help students to relieve their parents' financial burdens. Nevertheless, working on a part-time basis may create psychological burdens for the students themselves.

详解：［类似用法］relieve poverty / pain / traffic congestion 减轻贫困 / 痛苦 /交通堵塞

14 >> fulfill one's potential 发挥人的潜力

⇩ 例句 Employees may feel they cannot fulfill their professional（职业的）potential when their work is not valued by their employers（剑 7 例句）.

详解：［反义句型］restrict one's potential 限制某人发挥潜力

［近义句型］achieve one's potential

例句：Learning to understand and share the value system of a whole society cannot be achieved just in the home.（剑 8 例句）

15 >> remove the barrier for 为（发展、交流等）消除障碍

⇩ 例句 Machine translation has removed the barrier for communication between people who do not share the same language.

详解：［反义句型］be a hindrance to / be a hurdle to / be an impediment to / be an obstacle to 对……构成阻碍

16 >> promote the cultural communication and interaction between... and... 促进……和……之间的文化交流与互动

⇩ 例句 A universal language effectively promotes the cultural communication and interaction between nations that are different culturally.

详解：［近义句型］contribute towards the mutual understanding between... and... 促进相互了解

例句：This experience should teach them how to co-operate with each other and how to contribute towards the mutual understanding in their community.（剑 8 例句）

17 >> curb the proliferation of 控制（犯罪、污染、媒体的有害内容等）的扩散

⇩ 例句 The government should take immediate（及时的）measures to curb the proliferation of pollution, regardless of the costs it may involve.

详解：［近义句型］ban / prohibit / eliminate sth.

18 >> raise people's awareness of 提高人们的某种意识

⇩ 例句 The media can raise the public awareness of the alarming（令人警觉的）rise in youth crime.

详解：［近义句型］disseminate/diffuse knowledge about... 传播某方面的知识
educate the public to... 教育公众去做某事

例句：Long-term traffic and pollution reductions would depend on educating the public to use public transport more, and on governments using public money to construct and run efficient systems.（剑 8 例句）

19 >> has the inherent advantage of 有某方面的内在优势

⇩ 例句 Teaching students in groups has the inherent advantage of enabling schools to use their equipment and facilities more efficiently.

详解：［近义句型］be superior to... 比……更有优势的
［反义句型］be inferior to... 不如……的，never manage to reach a comparable level（剑桥范文中的句型：不能相提并论）

倒退类（用来论证 disadvantage 负面的方面）

1 >> live in poverty/ misery/ frustration/ anxiety 生活在贫穷/困苦/沮丧/焦虑中

⇩ 例句 Living in misery, the citizens in these impoverished（贫穷的）countries claim that industrial nations have the obligation to supply financial aid, which can lift them out of poverty.

详解：［近义句型］lead a impoverished / miserable/frustrated life

2 >> drive up the crime rate 导致犯罪率上升

⇩ 例句 The widespread gun scenes and pornography in films may make young viewers more violent. As a consequence, these scenes tend to drive up youngsters' crime rate.

详解：［近义句型］fuel the surge in crime（请注意这里 fuel 作动词）
［反义句型］lower the crime rate

3 >> the competition is increasingly stiff 竞争越来越激烈

⇩ **例句** The economic competition between countries is increasingly stiff, which has made the governments more protective（保护的）of their domestic（国内的）market.

详解：同样的意思也可以改用 competition 的形容词形式 be increasingly competitive 来表达，达到句式多样化

4 >> To avoid..., people should... 为了避免……，人们应该……

⇩ **例句** To avoid the extinction（灭绝）of these species（物种），we should stop disturbing the ecological balance（破坏生态平衡）on our planet.

详解：［近义句型］People should... so as to prevent... 为了避免……，人们应该……

5 >> widen the gap between A and B 加大 A 与 B 之间的差距

⇩ **例句** At present, the technology available to individuals is actually widening the gap between the wealthy and the needy rather than narrowing it（请注意 narrow 这里是作动词）.

详解：［近义句型］aggravate the gap between A and B
［反义句型］narrow / bridge the gap between（请注意 bridge 在这里是作动词）

6 >> stem from（某种坏现象）起源于……

⇩ **例句** Generally speaking, children's bad behaviour stems from imitating their parents'.

详解：［近义句型］A can be attributed to B A 的产生可以归结到 B 这个原因上

7 >> pose a threat to... 对……构成威胁

例句 The weapons（武器）that a country possesses（拥有）do not just pose a threat to other countries. They pose a very real threat to their owner as well.

详解：［近义词汇］jeopardise sth.

例句：By failing the exams the students may jeopardise their whole future.（剑8例句）

8 >> stifle creativity/imagination 扼杀创造力/想象力

例句 The traditional approach（做某事的方法）to education in some Asian countries seriously stifles students' creativity and imagination.

详解：［反义句型］foster / stimulate creativity 培养/激发创造力

9 >> find... monotonous and unmotivating 发现某事物很单调而且无法给人动力

例句 Young students tend to find traditional schooling monotonous and unmotivating.

详解：［近义句型］find... neither attractive nor productive（剑7句型）

［反义句型］find... highly stimulating 发现某事物很能激发兴趣

10 >> diminish individuals' leisure time 减少人们的休闲时间

例句 The accelerating（加速的）pace of life seriously diminishes individuals' leisure time and may even cause mental illnesses.

详解：［对比］drive away individuals' loneliness（某种娱乐）驱散人们的寂寞

11 >> There is a definite link between A and B A和B之间有密切联系

例句 There is a definite link between the rising rate of obesity（肥胖症）and the increasing consumption（消费）of fast food.

详解：［反义句型］There is no correlation between A and B A 和 B 之间不存在任何关联

12 >> spin out of control 失去控制

⇩ **例句** The Irish debt crisis（2011 年的爱尔兰债务危机）is spinning out of control and spilling over to（传播到）other European countries.

详解：［反义句型］keep... under tight control 对……严加控制

13 >> cause tension and conflicts between... and... 在……和……之间产生紧张和冲突

⇩ **例句** Cultural differences between the tourists and the local residents（居民）may cause tension and conflicts between them.

详解：［反义句型］ease tensions between A and B

例句：International sporting events are essential in easing international tensions.

14 >> be overly dependent on 对某事过度依赖

⇩ **例句** Technology has made individuals overly dependent on it, which has led to more sedentary（长时间不运动的）lifestyle and less face-to-face communication.

详解：［反义句型］be independent of... 不依赖于某事（请注意这个反义句型中的介词是 of）

15 >> have a detrimental influence upon 对……有负面的影响

⇩ **例句** Apparently（显而易见地），long-distance flights have a detrimental influence upon the environment, even though they are by far the most efficient way of traveling.

详解：［说明］可以用这个句型来代替被使用过多的 be harmful to

［近义句型］undermine sth. / put... at risk /be damaging to

16 >> the population is booming 人口在激增

例句 Whereas the population has been booming in many Asian countries, the birth rate in some European countries remains consistently（持续地）low.

详解：［反义句型］curb the population explosion 控制人口爆炸

17 >> is markedly incompatible with 与……明显不协调

例句 The design of modern buildings often turns out to be markedly incompatible with historical surroundings in terms of the materials, form and colors.

详解：［近义句型］be incongruous with

［反义句型］be consistent with / co-exist

例句：Some countries have single-sex education models, while in others both single sex and mixed schools co-exist（共存）.（剑 8 例句）

V

下面这部分句型比上面的 36 个难度要大，在主体段里也都十分常用。考虑到各位考前时间很紧张，建议先重点记忆划★★的句型，剩下的如果考前还有时间再背。在例句里我集中使用了 Day 3 中所列出的 136 个必备词汇，来帮助大家加深印象。

前进类（用来论证 advantage 好的方面）

1 >> profit from 从……当中获益（请注意在正式的英式写作中这个词组不一定和金钱有关，而是可以用来指获得任何形式的益处）

例句 People the world over have profited from the co-operation across national borders（边界）, in terms of both efficiency and flexibility（the range of choices）.

详解：［近义句型］sth. is in the best interest of someone

2 >> A is an indispensable / integral part of B A 是 B 不可缺少的

一部分

⇩ 例句 The Internet has become an indispensable part of modern life as it profoundly（深刻地）influences the way we live, work, co-operate and compete.

详解：［近义句型］There is no substitute（替代物）for...

［反义句型］is insignificant/is negligible 是无足轻重的

★★3 >> is the cornerstone of... 是……的基石

⇩ 例句 In most modern countries, the family unit is still the cornerstone of society.

详解：［近义句型］is the bedrock of... / is fundamental to...

★★4 >> enable sb. to do sth. 让某人可以去做……

⇩ 例句 Computerisation and digitisation（数码化）enable factories to cut their production costs substantially（大幅度地）.

详解：［近义句型］equip sb. with the ability to do sth.

5 >> get accustomed to sth. 适应……

⇩ 例句 Due to the different cultural backgrounds, some international businesspeople have a hard time getting accustomed to the local way of marketing.

详解：［近义句型］get used to / adapt to / adjust to

6 >> sb. can utilise sth. 可以使用…… = can use

⇩ 例句 The current（现在的，目前的）problem for the government is how best to utilise the resources it has now rather than how to increase its resources.（剑 7 例句）

详解：［近义句型］make use of sth. / exploit sth.

［反义句型］squander（money / time / opportunities / chances）浪费某事物

7 >> strike a balance between A and B 在 A 和 B 之间保持一种平衡

⇩ 例句 Due to the increasing stress and the rising demand for their time at work, most married adults need learn to strike a balance between their work and their family. (剑 7 例句)

详解：［近义句型］maintain a balance between... and...
［反义句型］lose/upset/disturb the balance between... and...

8 >> assume / shoulder the responsibility for... 承担起……的责任

⇩ 例句 Educators should assume the responsibility for ensuring that their students do not go astray（误入歧途）academically, psychologically or socially.

详解：［反义句型］shirk responsibility / duty 逃避责任
［说明］go astray 是教育话题的常用句型，类似的句型还有 be misguided（受到误导）

★★9 >> sth. has been consolidating its status as the... 某事物在不断加固它作为……的地位

⇩ 例句 English has been consolidating its status as the dominant（占统治地位的）language in the world, which has left many languages endangered.

详解：［反义句型］lose its status as the... 失去作为……的地位
promote sb's status as...
例句：The association works to promote the status of retired people as useful members of the community. (剑 8 例句)

10 >> draw on 借鉴（别人的经验，知识等）

⇩ 例句 Those who have spent some time traveling to other places have a broader view of life and better personal resources to draw on. (剑桥例句)

详解：［反义词汇］overlook 忽视

11 >> get a clear perspective of 对……产生更清晰的认识

⇩ 例句 That is the best way for students to get a clear perspective of what they are hoping to do with their lives and why（剑桥例句）.

详解：［反义句型］be ignorant about... 关于……很无知

★★12 >> afford people a sense of belonging / a sense of fulfilment（BrE）/ a sense of achievement/ a sense of security / job satisfaction 给人们提供归属感/成就感/安全感/ 工作满意度

⇩ 例句 The sense of belonging to a team or a working community also contributes to job satisfaction because colleagues help each other to enjoy their working lives.（剑桥例句）

详解：［近义句型］reward people emotionally 给人们情感上的回报

［反义句型］make people feel disoriented / frustrated 让人失去方向感/另人沮丧

13 >> acquire knowledge / skills 获取知识/ 技能

⇩ 例句 The role of a school is not just to provide students with opportunities to acquire knowledge, but also to give students chances to learn about values（价值观）and to make reasoned choices.

详解：［说明］很多考生喜欢在作文里使用 learn knowledge 这个写法，其实在地道英文里 learn 后面是不可以接 knowledge 这个词的，而应该改用动词 acquire，类似的与教育有关的地道英文表达还有 hone one's ability to do sth.（锻炼某人做某事的能力），mould one's character（塑造某人的个性）等

14 >> put... into practice 把……投入实践

⇩ 例句 Putting new ideas into practice is more difficult than having them.

详解：［近义句型］put... to the test 让……经受考验

be practical / be viable / be feasible 具有可操作性的，具有可行性的

例句：What is sure is that this increase is likely to continue until travelling at current（目前的）rates is no longer economically viable.（剑 8 例句）

15 >> strengthen family ties 增进亲情

⇩ 例句 Instead of strengthening family ties, modern technology seems to have prevented people from keeping in touch with their family far away from them by keeping them constantly（持续地）busy.

详解：［近义句型］reinforce family ties/ reinforce family bonds

16 >> be interrelated and interdependent 相互联系，相互依赖的

⇩ 例句 Nations are increasingly interrelated and interdependent in this age of economic and cultural globalisation, which means no matter how far away it may be geographically, no country is really isolated（孤立的）.（剑桥例句）

详解：［反义句型］be alienated from... / be separated from... 被与……疏远

V

倒退类（用来论证 disadvantage 负面的方面）

1 >> ... is accompanied by... 某种好的现象伴随着某种坏的现象

⇩ 例句 The staggering（惊人的）advancement of technology is accompanied by severe pollution of the ecosystem.

详解：［近义句型］... is attended by...
［对比］is prior to... 先于……发生

2 >> sth. is unwarranted/ unjustified 某种做法很不合理

⇩ 例句 The amount of money super stars can earn in a short time cannot possibly be justified by the amount of work they do.（剑桥例句）

详解：［反义句型］sth. is justified / justifiable 某种做法是站得住脚的

3 >> be afflicted with 遭受……

⇩ 例句 A host of（大量的）African countries are being afflicted with chronic（长期的）poverty and lasting war.

详解：［反义句型］be free from 免于遭受

［近义句型］suffer from / be plagued with ，

例句：Europe suffered more from farmland degradation than the other regions, and the main cause was deforestation.（剑 8 例句）

★★4 >> deprive someone of sth. 剥夺某人的（自由、权力或者某种生活方式）

⇩ **例句** Modern cities deprive city-dwellers（城市居民）of fresh air and the comfortable pace of life.

详解：［近义句型］violate one's rights / infringe on one's rights 侵犯某人的权利

★★5 >> sth. impels sb. to... 促使某人去……

⇩ **例句** It is the increasing peer pressure（同辈间的压力）that impels many youngsters to start smoking or drinking at an early age.

详解：［注意］上面例句中对强调句 It is... that... 的使用

［近义句型］prompt sb. to...

★★6 >> A has rendered B +形容词或者名词 A 让 B 变成某种（让人担心的状态）

⇩ **例句** The upgrade in the IT industry has rendered millions of old computers obsolete（过时的）.（剑桥例句）

详解：［注意］在地道英文中这个句型后部跟的形容词一般是比较负面的意思，如 render sth. useless / unprotected（受不到任何保护的）/ pointless（没有意义的）

7 >> sth. is the root cause of... 某事是……的根源

⇩ **例句** The population explosion is the root cause of water scarcity（短缺）.

详解：［反义句型］On the surface, ... is caused by... 表面上，某事是由……导致的

★★8 >> be confronted with sth. 面对（某种负面的事物）

⇩ 例句 We will be confronted with this question at some point, no matter how unpleasant it can be.

详解：［说明］在地道英文中经常用它来代替 face 这个同学们最爱用的词，比如在去年年底一些国外媒体就写到：Tiger Woods is now confronted with trouble created by himself — all the news about his multiple affairs（婚外情）.

9 >> be inundated with sth. 充斥着……

⇩ 例句 International trade has rendered many markets in developing countries inundated with foreign products that they do not really need.

详解：［近义句型］be saturated with sth.

［反义句型］lack sth. / be deficient in sth. 缺乏……

10 >> If..., sth. will ensue. 如果……，（某种不好的结果）将产生

⇩ 例句 If parents neglect（忽视）their offspring, lack of discipline（纪律）and respect will ensue.

详解：［近义句型］If..., sth. will arise（注意这里不是 rise）.

11 >> distract sb. from... 分散某人的注意力

⇩ 例句 There are educational video games that, instead of distracting students from their classes, actually make students more academically-motivated.

详解：［反义句型］make sb. concentrate on...

例句：Some educationalists think it is more effective to educate boys and girls in single-sex schools because they believe this environment reduces distractions and make pupils concentrate on their studies.（剑 8 例句）

12 >> be addicted to sth. / be preoccupied with sth. 对……上瘾

⇩ 例句 At the extreme（在极端情况下），children may even become addicted to computers as much as some of them become dependent on drugs.

★★13 >> **copy sth. mechanically / apply sth. indiscriminately** 对……机械照搬

⇩ 例句 It is highly disturbing（困扰人的）that many architects today are copying traditional architectural styles mechanically in their building designs.

详解：［反义句型］apply sth. creatively（有创造性地使用……）

14 >> **increase the government expenditure** 增加政府支出

⇩ 例句 The massive layoffs（大规模的裁员）will markedly（显著地）increase the government expenditure in training the citizens who have lost their jobs and yet do not have the skills required by the new jobs.（剑 7 例句）

⇩ 例句 Expenditure on resources increased before decreasing. In contrast, the cost of equipment saw an opposite trend.（剑 8 例句）

详解：［近义句型］increase the government spending
［反义句型］reduce the government expenditure
［相关句型］optimise the distribution of government financial resources 优化政府财政资源配置

★★15 >> **run contrary to（principles / faith / theories / evidence）** 与（原则/信仰/理论/证据等）背道而驰

⇩ 例句 Their suggestion runs contrary to the overwhelming evidence that technology boosts human efficiency.（剑 7 例句）

详解：［近义词组］is the exact opposite of
［反义词组］is consistent with 与……相一致

16 >> **erode the national identity / national pride** 侵蚀一个国家的文

化特性/民族自豪感

⇩ 例句 The indiscriminate worship（盲目崇拜）of the traditional culture is seriously eroding the national identity of the young country.

详解：［反义句型］preserve the national identity / boost national pride

17 >> at the expense of... 以……为代价

⇩ 例句 The infrastructure（基础设施）should not be upgraded at the expense of taxpayers' wellbeing.（剑桥例句）

详解：［近义句型］at the cost of.../ compromise（妥协）... / sacrifice（牺牲）...
［比较］put a strain on sth. 严重消耗某种资源

V

18 >> It is wrong to equate... with... 把……等同于……是错误的

⇩ 例句 It is wrong to equate happiness with making more money and living in a spacious house.（剑桥例句）

详解：［近义句型］It is erroneous to regard... as... 把……视为……是错误的

中间类

7

1 >> support / oppose... on the grounds that... 以……为理由去支持或者反对某事

⇩ 例句 Some people continue to oppose animal experiments on the grounds that they are inhumane（不人道的）.

详解：［近义句型］support / oppose... on the basis of...

★★2 >> abide by the rules / law / regulations 遵守（规则/法律/规定等）

⇩ 例句 To prevent children from going astray, parents should help their children to learn to respect others and to abide by the rules.（剑桥例句）

详解：［反义句型］break / violate the rules

［近义句型］comply with / conform to the rules

例句：There are serious penalties（惩罚）for failures to comply with the regulations.（剑8例句）

3 >> A prevail over（or outweigh / outbalance）B　A大于B

⇩ **例句** The advantages of stiffer（更严厉的）punishment for driving offenders prevail over its disadvantages.

详解：［反义句型］pale in comparison with... 地道英文中极为常用的一个短语，意思是“与……相比微不足道”

★★4 >> A create（or bring about / generate/ cause / breed/ engender/ spawn / induce）B　A产生B这个结果

⇩ **例句** Technological innovations（创新）have brought about fundamental changes to various political, economic and cultural arenas（领域）.（剑桥例句）

详解：［说明］其中create所跟的宾语选择较广；bring about一般指大规模地产生某种结果；generate在IELTS作文中后面经常会跟government revenue（政府收入）或employment opportunities（就业机会）；cause，breed与engender的后面跟负面结果较为常见，比如cause pain/anxiety，breed conflict（冲突），engender controversy（争论）等；spawn后面一般跟新生事物，比如inventions或者innovations（创新）；而induce则一般加抽象的心理结果，比如stress或者discomfort（身体不适）等

5 >> A is a key determinant of B　A是B的决定因素

⇩ **例句** In an individual's career, tenacity（毅力）is a key determinant of success.

详解：［说明］类似的意思也可以用动词形式A determines B表达，来实现句型多样化

6 >> are，by nature，+ 形容词　天生就……

⇩ 例句 Children are, by nature, underdeveloped, morally, emotionally as well as physically.

详解：［说明］这个句型的好处是使用了句中短语，能让枯燥的长句子变得更有亲和力。
［近义句型］are naturally + 形容词

★★7 >> it is standard practice for someone to do sth. 某人通常会怎样做某事

⇩ 例句 At present, it is not standard practice for scientists to release（发布）their data or research models which may lead to research that is detrimental（有害的）to human beings.

详解：［近义句型］It is not uncommon for someone to do sth. 注意这是双重否定，意思即为“某人通常会做某事”

V

★★8 >> A is best characterised by... A 最重要的特质是……

⇩ 例句 Excellent journalists are best characterised by self-discipline（自制力），determination（决心）and insights（洞察力）.

详解：［近义句型］The most important distinguishing feature of... is...

9 >> Given the choice, ... 如果可以选择的话，……

⇩ 例句 Given the choice, most adults would find human friends preferable to pets.（剑桥例句）

详解：［注意］Given the choice 后面的主语一般是人或者机构，be preferable to... 是一个固定短语，比……更值得拥有的意思，preferable 的前面通常不必加 more

★★10 >> someone would be well-advised to do sth.（=should）某人应该做某事

⇩ 例句 Parents would be well-advised to spend more time with their offspring.

详解：［注意］这句话中的 offspring "后代" 一词的复数形式不变，仍为 offspring

11 >> ..., and there seems to be plenty of research findings to confirm this 看起来有足够的研究证明这个观点

⇩ **例句** Teaching students in groups helps them to grow into social, responsible individuals, and there seems to be plenty of research findings to confirm this. (剑桥例句)

详解：［近义句型］Research has provided hard (站得住脚的) evidence to confirm that... / From our own experience, we can find plenty of evidence to support the view that... (剑 7 句型)

［反义句型］There is little evidence to confirm that ...

12 >> in all likelihood 很可能

⇩ **例句** In all likelihood, these decisions would be made by government officials who tend to have wrong understanding of the problems.

详解：［说明］使用这个句型的好处是：

(1) 让论证看起来不至于过分地绝对，毕竟雅思议论文还不是科学研究报告，所以即使是剑 4 ~ 剑 8 中的考官范文里也经常出现 perhaps, possibly, probably, in some cases, tend to be (多半是) 等用来适当弱化语气的表达。例如：Large industrial sites for both service and production industries tend to be located outside city areas. (剑 8 例句)

(2) 在句首或者句中引入这个小短语之后让长句子显得更为灵活多样

［近义句型］be likely to... 很可能会……

例句：Similarly, boys in single-sex schools are more likely to take cookery classes and to study languages, which are often thought of as traditional subjects for girls. (剑 8 例句)

［反义句型］be unlikely to... 不太可能会……

例句：While it is undeniable that private car use is one of the main causes of the increase in traffic and pollution, higher fuel costs are unlikely to limit the number of drivers for long. (剑 8 例句)

★★13 >> This trend is not restricted to... 这个现象并不仅限于……

⇩ **例句** This trend is not restricted to wealthy students who have the money to do this, but is also evident (明显的) among poorer students.

详解：［反义句型］... is limited / confined to... 某现象仅限于……

★★14 >> **tend to...** 多半……（这是在雅思写作和口语里代替被使用过滥的 most of 的好句型）

⇩ **例句**
（1）Youngsters tend to be more impulsive（冲动的）and more likely to go astray（误入歧途）socially.
（2）These are electronic games that tend to be very intense and rather violent（剑桥例句）.

详解：［近义句型］are likely to... / are inclined to... / have the tendency to... / and... is no exception（也不是例外）
［反义副词］... rarely...

15 >> **hinge on** 取决于……

⇩ **例句**
Success of such efforts hinges on contribution from the authorities.（剑桥例句）

详解：［说明］这个词组在意思上接近 depend on / rely on，但在语气上更坚决，带有“舍我其谁”的排它性
［近义句型］depend on / rely on
例句：Long-term traffic and pollution reductions would depend on educating the public to use public transport more, and on governments using public money to construct and run efficient systems.（剑 8 例句）

★★16 >> **A reflect B** 体现，反映

⇩ **例句**
Feelings about one's job must reflect how an individual feels about his or her life as a whole.（剑桥例句）

详解：［近义句型］A is indicative of B
［反义句型］A is irrelevant to B　A 与 B 完全无关

★★17 >> **The proportion of... is very high.** ……的比例非常高。

⇩ **例句**
The proportion of their lives spent doing such jobs is very high.（剑桥例句）

详解：［说明］近似的意思在同一篇文章中也可以用 The majority of... 来替换，以实现句式多样化

18 >> in this respect / regard 在这方面

⇩ **例句** Positive feedback from superiors（主管）is very important in this respect.（剑桥例句）

详解：［说明］这个词组可以用来替换国内考生一直使用过多的 in this aspect

19 >> is a frequent topic of discussion 是一再引起辩论的话题

⇩ **例句** The comparative importance of natural talent and training is a frequent topic of discussion.（剑 7 例句）

详解：［近义句型］is a much – debated issue

解决类（用来论证 solution 解决方案）

★★1 >> give priority to sth. 把……放在优先位置

⇩ **例句** The government should give priority to the optimisation（优化）of its financial resources.

详解：［近义句型］Of crucial importance to someone is sth. 请注意这是一个倒装句型，可以用来提高文章的句式多样性

★★2 >> dedicate money / time / energy to... 把（金钱/时间/精力等）花在……上

⇩ **例句** The government should dedicate itself to protecting the rights of the old, the sick and the homeless.

详解：［近义句型］commit... to...

★★3 >> be vulnerable to 容易成为……的受害者

⇩ 例句 Without proper parental guidance, children would be vulnerable to the violent or pornographic content（内容）of those TV shows.

详解：［近义句型］be likely to fall prey to

［反义句型］be immune to... 免于遭受……的伤害

4 >> sth. should be condemned rather than condoned 某事应该被谴责而不是被宽恕

⇩ 例句 Indiscriminate（盲目的）copying of traditional architectural style today should be condemned rather than condoned.

详解：［反义句型］let... go unchecked 对（某种坏行为）放任不管

5 >> it is imperative/ essential that ...（或者 sth. is of paramount/ overriding importance）至关重要

⇩ 例句 To the newly-arrived immigrants, it is imperative that they adapt to the local culture promptly（及时的）.

详解：［反义句型］sth. is no longer a necessity. 某事已经不再必要

★★6 >> sth. requires... 需要……（今后作文里如果主语是人可以用 need，如果主语是事物就可以用这个句型表示“需要”）

⇩ 例句 Any child can be taught particular skills, but to be really good in areas such as music, art or sport, then some natural talent is required.（剑 7 例句）

详解：［近义句型］sth. necessitates/calls for...

★★7 >> distinguish between A and B 区分 A 和 B

⇩ 例句 Many youngsters lack the capacity（能力）to distinguish between right and wrong.

详解：［近义句型］differentiate A from B

★★8 >> take... into account 把……纳入考虑

⇩ **例句** The circumstances of an individual crime, and the motivation for committing it, should always be taken into account when deciding on the punishment.（剑桥例句）

详解：［近义句型］take... into consideration

［反义句型］overlook sth. 忽视某事

★★9 >> is an important element of... 是……的重要因素

⇩ **例句** Job satisfaction is an important element of individual wellbeing.（剑桥例句）

详解：［近义句型］play a valuable role in...

★★10 >> are not mutually exclusive（两者）并不相互排斥

⇩ **例句** Good training and natural talent are not mutually exclusive.（剑 8 例句）

详解：［反义句型］are incompatible with each other 相互排斥

此外，对于英语功底深厚的牛人来说，如果本章这么多的好句型仍然让您还有不满足感，Pat 建议您乘胜追击，学习一下本书附录 H 中的主体段核心动词搭配，那些 powerful verbs 将足以让任何一只大牛变得淡定。

每日一练 Question of the Day

翻译练习

请使用 Day 3 中学习的 136 个必备词汇和今天学的 36 个基本句型完成下面的翻译练习：

1 国际贸易不仅可以产生更多的就业机会，还可以给政府提供更多的税收。

2 开始大学学习前工作或者旅行一年可以有效地开阔年轻人的眼界。

3 显而易见，在当代社会里，很多人生活压力很大而且遭受严重心理问题的困扰。

4 政府有责任资助艺术以便让艺术家不必为了钱去牺牲（compromise）自己的创造力。

5 家长应该确保他们的后代有足够的时间放松身心。

6 很多城市居民遭受严重压力的困扰，因为工作单位的竞争很激烈。

7 家长的忽视对孩子的安全以及健康的身心发展都构成了严重威胁。

填空练习

请用今天学到的 63 个加分句型中的重点句型填写下面的空格：

1 It is obvious that computers _____ in high school classrooms these days.

2 Mobile phones _____ us to keep in touch with our friends and family members far away from us.

3 Preserving time-honoured traditions _____ the government and the local residents as well.

4 Many nations _____ serious poverty, war and natural disasters in today's world.

5 Telecommunications（通讯）technology has _____ our lives far more efficient and convenient than it used to be.

6 The human society _____ so many social problems that many are pessimistic（悲观的）about the 21st century.

7 Deforestation（砍伐森林）_____ the ecosystem and sustainable development.

选择填空

请选择恰当的句型填在下面的空格里：

1 Modern cities _____ (deprive/ have a duty to) residents of fresh air and a leisurely pace of life.

2 The serious population problem in many third-world countries _____ (can be attributed to/ invests in) government neglect.

3 Pollution _____ (profits from/ is the root cause of) the death of many elderly people in modern urban areas.

4 Many new immigrants have a hard time _____ (investing in/adapting to) the local way of life.

5 It is generally recognised (普遍公认) that governments should not advance technology _____ (at the expense of/ be inundated with) other fields such as arts and agriculture.

6 The demand that the government pay for healthcare and education is not completely _____ (confronted/ unwarranted). _____ (It is in the best interests of/ It is manifest that) the citizens also have a duty to save money for their lives after retirement.

练习答案 Answer Key

翻译练习

1 International trade not only creates more employment opportunities, but also affords the government more tax revenue.

2 Working or traveling for a year between finishing high school and starting university studies can effectively broaden young people's horizons.

3 It is obvious that in the present-day society many people lead a very stressful life and suffer from severe psychological problems.

4 The government has a duty to fund arts so that artists do not have to compromise their creativity for money.

5 Parents should make sure that their offspring have enough time to relax their bodies and ease their minds.

6 Many city residents suffer from severe stress because the competition in their workplace is very stiff.（注意“工作单位”不要生硬地译成 work units）

7 Parental neglect is a serious threat to children's safety and healthy physical and psychological growth.

填空练习

1 play a pivotal role
2 enable
3 is in the best interests of
4 are afflicted with
5 rendered
6 is confronted with
7 poses a threat to

选择填空

1 deprive
2 can be attributed to
3 is the root cause of
4 adapting to
5 at the expense of
6 unwarranted / It is manifest that

Mission Statement

—4段还是5段

—10秒确定文章结构 .

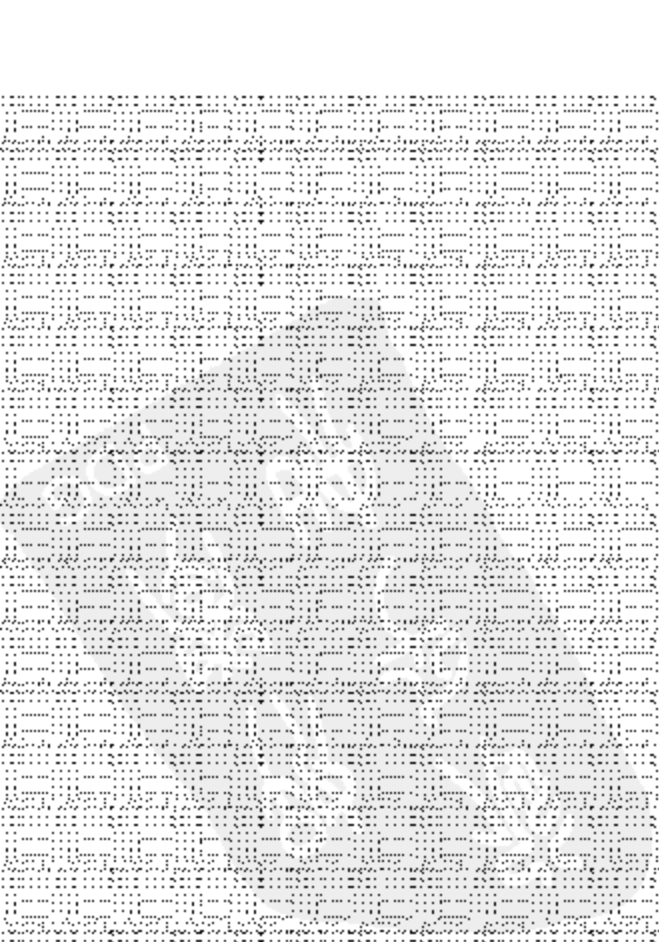
Day 7

经得起推敲的结构

The IELTS Writing Jigsaw

The structure dictates the pattern for the action that follows. On the other hand, individuals need leeway. Essay-writing is the constant struggling with this paradox.

—Pat



很多同学问我："西方人喜欢看四段式还是五段式?"

其实这个问题本身就存在问题。如果我问您："中国人喜欢看四段式还是五段式?"您是不是觉得这个问题很 BT 呢? 中国有 13 亿人口，评价一篇作文有的人倾向四段式，有的支持五段式，这完全只是个人偏好的问题，怎么能以偏概全地说所有的中国人全都喜欢哪种结构呢?

同样的道理，有些对西方文化并不很了解的人竟然把一个雅思作文写四段式还是五段式的问题上升到东西方文化差异的层次讨论，硬说西方人喜欢哪种结构，这完全是在瞒天过海忽悠学生。在当代美国和加拿大的中学里学生写作文强调的是 individuality（个性），只要文章内容充实、有说服力，老师并不会强制规定固定的模式，很多中学还专门有一门课就叫 creative writing。到了大学，教写作的老师也各自有自己欣赏的写法，都只是个人偏好，但绝没有人说不用自己的写法就是错的。在国外大学里，除非是正式的 term paper 或者 thesis，否则教授一般也不会规定学生必须用哪种立场或者必须写几段。特别是小的 essays，Pat 甚至见过全文只写了三段还拿到 A⁻ 的 essay。

但是，具体到 IELTS 写作考试，很多考官却明显更偏爱四段折中式，这种倾向在剑系的考官范文里体现得淋漓尽致。事实上，剑 4 ~ 剑 8 后面的所有考官范文全都采用了折中式写法（即正反两方都论证，但倾向于其中某一方），而且多数是四段式。

今天，我们就来把作文结构的纷扰看个明明白白，真真切切。

"四段式" VS. "五段式"

还是那句话："到底好不好，要看实战需要。"从考场实战的角度看，关于雅思作文结构 Pat 有如下信念：

- ★ 考试前考生熟练掌握的结构应该只是一两个，而不是一大堆，否则你将会发现，在 1 个小时内要写两篇文章的考试中，自己根本没有时间或者脑力去理清从那一大堆结构中自己到底该选择哪一个；
- ★ 考生必须非常明确在这一两种自己最熟悉的结构中每句话应起到的逻辑作用，只有这样，在残酷的实战中才能够写得快而准；
- ★ 议论文的结构应该是清晰而且有说服力的，而不是模糊乏力的。

关于结构，还有两个决定大方向的问题。

☆ 写四段式好还是五段式好?

☆ 写一边倒好还是折中式好?

早在 2006 年，Pat 就写过下面的小短文，当时被大陆很多知名网站转载了：

essays 到底写几段，或者应该采取何种态度，在国外大学里并没有绝对固定的要求。衡量好的英语文章结构只有两个标准：

☆ 能不能把问题讲清楚

☆ 对于 essays 的作者来说有没有实际可操作性

经过长期教学实践我认为，对于英语功底好的考生，四段式和五段式两种结构都可行，折中和一边倒两种态度也都可以把问题说清楚。但是对于英语基础一般的学生而言，四段折中式的文章是实战性更强的。这是因为：

A 四段式结构在考试时更容易写清晰，五段式在考生控制力较弱时容易出现段与段之间的关系混乱；

B 客观地说，对于多数考题而言折中式比一边倒好写。这首先是因为世界上极少有绝对黑或者绝对白的事情，而且很明显，正反两方面都写比只写正方或者只写反方更容易写够 250 个单词。长期的教学实践告诉我，写一边倒在实战中最容易出现的一个问题就是：对于水平一般的考生来说，在 40 分钟内只讨论一方，写到 250 个单词以上而且还要确保没有空话、废话往往是困难的，这是很多学生实践之后的共同感觉。

在剑桥出版的剑桥 5 当中，剑桥给出了 4 套 Academic 类（学术类）作文题范文，其中有两篇是作为“an example of a very good answer”来给出的（另外两篇是低分作文，作为反面教材）。一个明确的信息是：剑桥 5 这两篇考官写的高分范文用的都是折中式，而且写的都是四段式。

我们再看剑桥 5 里面两道 General Training 类议论文的范文，其中一篇范文写了 6 段，但是考官的评语明确说了这篇文章“The paragraphing is not always logical”（分段缺乏逻辑性）；G 类的第二篇范文是五段式，但是如果仔细分析一下，其实最后一段（第五段）只是说了两句空话，喊了两句口号，在充实的议论性文章里完全是没有必要写的。

结论：对于水平好的“大牛”，四段式和五段式都是合理的结构。但是对于水平一般的考生来说，议论文的四段折中式在考场上更容易写好。而且最重要的是，剑桥提供的考官满分范文多数都采用了四段折中式。

以上这段话还是我早在剑桥 5 刚登陆中国的时候写的，但我坚信它代表了未来雅思写作的发展方向，因为在雅思写作考试里：考场上的实用性永远是高于一切的因素。

果然，在后来出版的剑桥 6 当中，考官提供的第 164 页和第 168 页两篇满分议论文范文使用的都是四段折中式。在 2009 年出版的剑 7 中第 167 页的范文也不例外。而在 2011 年出版的剑 8 里，第 163 页与第 173 页的考官满分范文同样延续了四段折中式的剑桥风格。

剑桥考官为何雪藏一边倒

上回书已经交代过，剑4～剑8中所有考官的大作文范文**全都**采用了折中式，从概率上来说这是一个相当惊人的事件。除了考官的个人写作习惯之外，其中的原因我们还可以从剑7 p. 169中的这篇5分作文中明显地体现出来：

What knowledge and skills should universities provide has been argued for many years. Some people think that the true function of universities provides knowledge for their own purpose, but nowadays, more and more people point out that universities should provide graduates with the knowledge and skills according to the workplace.

The first reason why universities should provide this knowledge and skill is the students' needs. Obviously, most of the students go to university for the purpose of getting some knowledge and skills that could make them have the ability to get a job. If a university does not provide this knowledge and skills, the students might not get a job and they would be very disappointed. As a result, the university would lose its students.

Moreover, providing knowledge and skills needed in the workplace makes a university progress. The new skills and information always are initiated in the workplace, so focusing on the needs of the workplace the university could get sound strategies to do research and make it more modernization.

Lastly, providing this knowledge and skills could benefit our country which usually gives a financial support to universities. Having this knowledge and skills, students are more easy to get a job, and can make our country's economy strong.

In conclusion, it can be said that providing the knowledge and skills which the workplace needs is every university's basic function.

这篇剑7中的5分文章绝不是完美的，很多地方的表达不够地道，甚至还带有明显的错误。但是客观地说，这篇文章的遣词造句能力已经高于“入门级”的水平，而且这篇也是考生独立原创的文章，逻辑论证的力度还是有的。

那么到底是什么原因导致这个语言并不算很差的学生得到了5分这样惩罚性的成绩呢？

考官评语中的一句话引起了我的强烈关注：This answer is less than 250 words and it does not address all parts of the question.

Bingo！原来是本文的五段式一边倒思路，导致了这位用词造句能力还不错的考生在考场里竟然连250字的最低要求都无法达到！

认真研究了这位“非菜鸟”的5分作文之后，感受依然是：对于“大牛”，一边倒和折中

式都可以写出说服力。但如果平心而论，您的英语水平并不是很高的话，那么就还是写折中式更容易达到考官对作文论证深度的要求。

4 段式的结构究竟怎样安排？

那么具体应该怎样安排四段式作文的结构呢？（图谋挑战一边倒写法的“大牛”请翻至 p. 191）。

要弄清文章结构我们需要先对雅思议论文的出题方式进行归类。雅思大作文按照出题类型可以分成两类：

Report
Argumentation

Report 是题目当中不出现任何观点，只给一种现象，要求你分析这种现象的 causes 原因、solutions 解决方案、effects 影响等。Report 类考题当中经常会出现 What are...？这两个词。

Argumentation 是让考生辩论观点或者比较利弊的题目。

从近七年的统计来看，每年的 Report 题型都只占全年所有考题的 10～15%，所以还是应该重点掌握 Argumentation；对于 Report 如果考前确实有时间，了解一下就好了。

判断练习 请迅速判断下面 10 道题的类型：

① In some countries the average weight of people is increasing and their levels of health and fitness are decreasing. **What do you think are the causes of these problems and what measures should be taken to solve them?**（剑 8 test 4）

② Television was one of the most important technological developments in the 20th century. It changed people's lives. **To what extent did the advantages of this development outweigh its disadvantages?**

③ Some people think that parents should teach children how to be good members of society. Others, however, believe that school is the place to learn this. Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.（剑 8 test 1）

④ Some people think women should be allowed to join the army, the navy and the air force just like men. **Do you agree or disagree?**

⑤ We can get news from the media. But many people do not trust the journalists who report news. **What are the most important qualities a journalist should have?**

⑥ Many people work at home using modern technology today. Some people think only the workers benefit from this, not the employers. **What is your opinion?**

⑦ Some people think the advantages of the spread of English all over the world outweigh its disadvantages. **What do you think?**

⑧ Some people think that parents should teach children how to be good members of society. Others, however, believe that school is the place to learn this. **Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.** (剑 8 test 1)

⑨ People today can perform the everyday tasks such as shopping, banking or even business transactions, without meeting others face-to-face. **What effects will this phenomenon have on individuals and society as a whole?**

⑩ Creative artists should always be given the freedom to express their ideas. **What is your view?**

(正确答案：1、5、9 题为 Report，其他的都是 Argumentation)

英文写作中 Argumentation 的四段式结构可以概括为如下形式：

I	2 ~4 句
II	1 +6 句
III	1 +4 句
IV	3 句

Argumentation 的详细结构表

I 开头段	本段写背景和话题 第一句：介绍社会背景，这句话如果觉得累赘也完全允许不写。其实写一个简洁的开头段是挺好的选择，因为这样可以进一步突出主体段的论证部分。不要相信“考官打分只看开头和结尾，不看主体”这样不负责任的“忽悠”，我问过环球雅思的很多前任和现任考官，大家一致认为虽然开头、结尾也重要，但是主体段的论证仍然是最重要的判分依据。 第二句：交待这篇文章要辩论的是哪一个话题，请注意这句话必不可少。 第三句：用你自己的话转述一下原题的观点，这句话有时也可以省略。 第四句：陈述自己的态度，这一句甚至也可以选择省略，在 Day 8（下）我们将见到更多的实例。

（续表）

Argumentation 的详细结构表	
II 第二段陈述你倾向的那一方观点，写 1 +6 句	全文的第二段论述自己更倾向的一方观点 第一句：概括本段观点。 第二句：这种观点的第一个分论点（即本观点的理由 1）。 第三句：写一句话来解释、支持第一个分论点（即第一个分论点的支持句）。 第四句：这种观点的第二个分论点（即本观点的理由 2）。 第五句：写一句话来解释、支持第二个分论点（即第二个分论点的支持句）。 相应地写出第六句（第三个分论点）和第七句（第三个分论点的支持句）。
III 第三段写一个让步段，写 1 +4 句	全文的第三段写让步段，就是陈述自己不太倾向的那一方的观点 第一句：概括这种观点。 第二句：这种观点的一个理由（即分论点）。 第三句：写一句话来解释、支持这个分论点。 第四句：写一句话提出你不太倾向的这种观点存在什么不妥的地方（请注意写这句话最好是去反驳本段中第二句的内容，这样会使这句话看起来更具体，而如果直接去反驳本段的第一句则容易让这句话变得很空洞）。 第五句：写一句话来解释、支持第四句。
IV 结尾段，写 2 ~3 句话	结尾段总结 第一句：概括在让步段中自己不太倾向的那个观点，这句话也可以选择省略。 第二句：重申自己更倾向的那一方观点（这句话不能省略）。 最后一句：提出我们/政府/媒体/家长等应该如何做的建议，表明自己确实是关注辩论话题的。task 2 是主观性写作，允许甚至鼓励考生在文章结尾提出建议，这一点我们从 Day 8（下）的大量剑桥高分范文分析中将会看得非常清楚（但要注意 task 1 小作文由于是客观性写作，在结尾段一般不宜提建议，请见 Day 9）。

·特别提示·

作文结构只是一个整体框架，具体写作的时候是完全允许合理调整的。比如，如果某个分论点后面可以想出不止一句的支持句，那就完全可以多写几个支持句。作文中的分论点不要过多，否则会变得像流水账。但分论点后面的支持句是绝对不怕多的，如果时间够、想法够就可以多写几句。支持句不必追求深刻，符合生活常理就可以。看完 Day 8（下）的几篇高分范文分析之后，您会发现高分文章的支持句有时也幼稚得可笑，甚至有时意思是重复的，但是人家非常敢写。

Report 的详细结构表

I 开头段 写 2 ~4 句	本段写背景 第一句：介绍社会背景，这句话如果觉得累赘也可以选择省略。 第二句：交待你这篇文章要分析的是哪一个话题，这句话必写。 第三句：强调一下这个问题正在引起人们的关注，这句也可以省略。 第四句：说明这篇文章要分析这个现象的原因和解决方案，这句话有时也可以省略，在 Day 8（下）我们会通过范文分析来详细解释。
II 第二段 写 1 +6 句	分析现象的原因 第一句：说明本段要介绍的是现象的原因。 第二句：写这种现象的第一个原因。 第三句：写一句话来解释、支持这个原因。 第四句：写这种现象的第二个原因。 第五句：写一句话来解释、支持这个原因。 相应地写出第六句第三个原因和第七句第三个原因的支持句。
III 第三段 写 1 +6 句	分析现象的解决方案 第一句：说明本段要介绍的是现象的解决方案。 第二句：写这种现象的第一个解决方案。 第三句：写一句话来解释、支持这个方案。 第四句：写这种现象的第二个解决方案。 第五句：写一句话来解释、支持这个方案。 相应地写出第六句第三个方案和第七句第三个方案的支持句。
IV 结尾段 写 2 句话	结尾段总结 第一句：重申这个现象的原因有很多或者很复杂。 第二句：概括地写一下我们应该通过哪几种措施来解决。

·特别提示·

Pat 还是要提醒大家：分论点之后的支持句如果能想出不止一句，而且时间也够，那就不妨多写几句支持句。分论点不宜过多，但主体段中的支持句是不怕多的。具体请看 Day 8（下）对大量剑桥高分范文的分析。

Mixed 结构

在最近7年的雅思作文考试中，每年还会出现极少数（2~3次）的考题，既不算典型的Report，又不是严格的Argumentation。比如下面这道“四不像”考题：

Nowadays the way many people interact with each other has changed because of technology. In what ways has technology affected the types of relationships that people make? Has this been a positive or negative development? (剑8 Test 2)

很显然，本题结尾处的第一个问题询问这种现象的影响是什么，属于Report；而第二个问题则是辩论利弊，属于Argumentation。这样的混合式考题结构也可以采用四段式写法：即主体中用一段来分析Report部分要求我们分析的内容（比如本题中就是用一段分析effects），而另一段则讨论Argumentation部分要求辩论的利弊。相应的，这类文章的结尾段也是先总结Report那段所分析的影响，再对Argumentation那段中自己倾向的一方进行概括即可。您还可以在本书的姐妹篇《十天突破IELTS写作完整真题库与6-9分范文全解》中看到大量Mixed结构的真题范文。

明天，我们要探索作文模板这个“雷区”，看看到底有哪些人必用、可以不用或绝不要用作文模板，并且还要学习高分作文是如何突破模板来获得鲜明个性的。

V

每日一练 Question of the Day

请选用您自己喜欢的结构（一边倒或者折中式），结合Day 2中讲解的“裸奔法”，快速确定下面这道IELTS作文考题的全篇结构和每段的分论点。

Some people think women should be allowed to join the army, the navy and the air force just like men. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

练习答案 Answer Key

下面这两篇文章是针对这道题分别用四段式和五段式写出的，其中大多数加分词汇和句型都是咱们在Day 3学的136个必备词汇和Day 6学的63个句型里面的。请您仔细体会四段式

和五段式两种不同的结构在写作难度和思维深度方面的差异。

四段式

开头段（引出话题）

Whether ladies should be entitled（赋予权利） to serve in the military has been a topic of discussion.

主体段一（写自己倾向的一方观点，女性参军可能带来的可行性，比如历史上成功女兵的故事，女性权利得到尊重，以及计算机和数码技术的使用让女性可以方便地操作现代武器等三点）

It is evident that ladies joining the military may bring substantial benefits. History has consistently shown women were fully capable of performing（表现） well in the armed forces. For instance, the world-renowned female military figures like Joan of Arc and Mulan really put their male counterparts to shame with their outstanding performance in the army. Also, from an enlightened standpoint, female patriots should be granted the right to go to the front line when their motherland is involved in a war. Considering the sweeping progress in gender equality, there is really no sense in denying them the right to stand up for their home country when war breaks out. Lastly, in the information era, computerization and digitization in the military have made it much easier for women soldiers to operate modern weapons.

主体段二（写自己不太倾向一方的观点，女性参军可能带来的坏处，比如健康问题和军队的犯罪率）

Even so, allowing ladies to join the military carries certain risks. The most serious one is that this may further drive up the already high crime rate in some armies. The recent series of sex scandals in the US navy would serve as convincing proof of this risk. Further, the health hazards that serving in the military may pose to women are very real. For example, research has revealed that on average American women soldiers in Iraq are suffering from more serious and complicated physical and mental illnesses than the American servicemen in the same region.

结尾段（结论，尽管有坏处，但是女性应该被允许参军）

Overall, even though some servicewomen might be confronted with health risks or even criminal threats, ladies' rights to join the military should not be denied.

五段式

开头段（引出话题并说明自己持一边倒态度，本文选择了完全支持题中的观点，但本题如果选择完全反对也不难写）

Some assert that the status quo should be changed and ladies should be enabled to join the

armed forces. Speaking for myself, I fundamentally agree with their assertion — for three reasons.

主体段一（提出第一个分论点，历史事实告诉我们，女性参军可以表现得很出色，然后深入论证）

History has repeatedly shown that women are fully capable of performing well in the military. Historically, there were a host of valiant women soldiers whose achievements put their male counterparts to shame. One need only look at the world-renowned Joan of Arc and Mulan to see how exceptionally ladies could perform on the battlefield. In my observation, their determination, courage and dignity have been and are still being admired by male soldiers and civilians alike throughout the world today.

主体段二（提出第二个分论点，允许女性参军尊重女权，然后深入展开论证）

Further, from an enlightened standpoint, female patriots should be granted the equal right to go to the front line when their motherland is involved in a war. Admittedly, gender inequality was a highly controversial issue in the twentieth century. However, now nine years into the new millennium, women can learn and teach, work and supervise, vote and voted in most countries just like men. Given this sweeping progress in gender equality, there is really no sense in denying them the right to stand up for their home country when war breaks out.

主体段三（从生活常识角度深入论证在信息时代女兵能力不比男兵差）

Lastly, common sense and our experiences as humans inform us that servicewomen largely possess the capacity to operate modern weapons. Indeed, present-day weapons are best characterized by extensive automation and digitization. Granted, physically women are on average not as strong as men; nevertheless, it is an indisputable fact that most of them have the mental ability and the psychological soundness to operate the highly-automated arms that do not really require big biceps.

结尾段（作一边倒结论，支持女性参军）

In sum, keeping military services off-limits to women in the information age is unwarranted. And I am convinced that it is in the best interests of a nation if ladies are also granted equal rights in this arena.

通过这两篇不同结构文章的比较，我们不难看出：

① 折中式是正反两方面都讲，所以比一边倒更容易达到考官要求的字数；

② 雅思作文中哪个部分最难写？普遍公认的是主体段中展开论证的支持句部分。把两篇文章仔细对比之后您会发现：很明显，五段式主体段的论证部分要求功力更加深厚，培训教师能够写出来，但一般考生往往是难以达到的。

所以我们的结论仍然是：四段式和五段式都是能拿到高分的，但相比之下五段式对考生的英语写作功底要求更高一些。

Mission Statement

—快速设计出属于自己的模块

—体会在主体段的支持句中连接词的高频度使用

—怎样突破套路写出高分作文

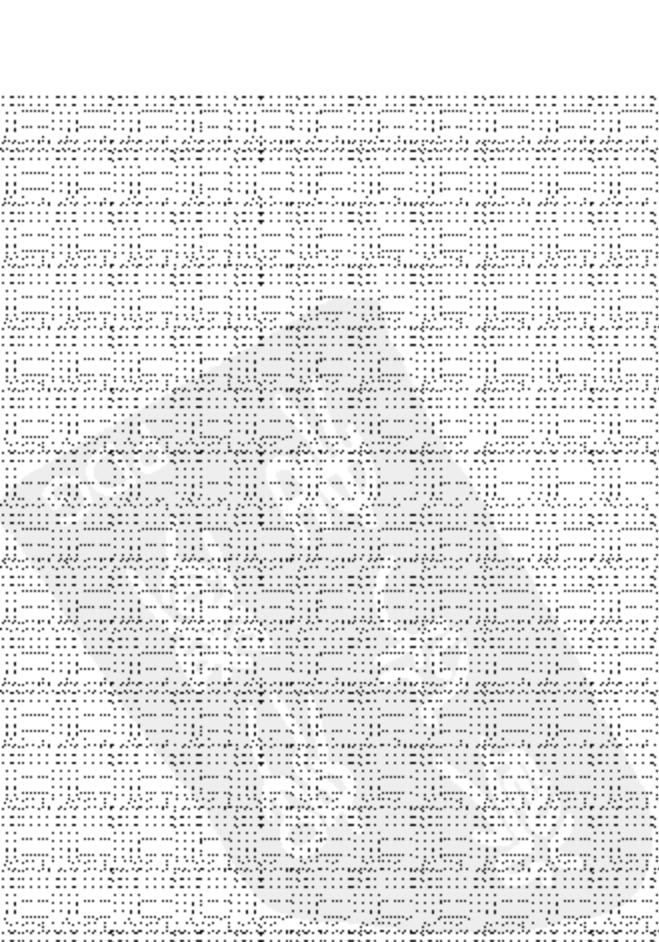
Day 8

突破模板写作文 与 剑桥范文解构版

The Undoing of the Templates & The Deconstruction of Combridge Sample Essays

Iconoclasts and mavericks are generally admired because they are true to themselves, whatever it costs.

— *Pat*



Day 8（上）

（上）A. 模板到底属于谁？

作文模板一直是备受争议的话题（It causes quite a stir.）。那么 IELTS 议论文到底要不要用模板呢?

我不是理论家（armchair theorist），从刚开始教 IELTS Writing 到现在，我一直都在进行第一线的实践。所以，我不喜欢跟自己的学生讲空话（I loathe the hackneyed IELTS training spiel.），宁愿相信考场中的实战效果（The ends justify the means.）。其实，对于要不要用模板的问题，有必要浪费那么多时间去说大道理进行讨论吗？你只要问问在马路边上晒太阳、完全不懂英语的阿婆们这个问题，她们肯定也能立刻告诉你："用别人写的哪里会有自己写的好呢！"用别人的模板写肯定不如自己原创的好，这根本就是浪费听众时间的话（gibberish），有讨论的时间还不如多练习几篇作文。

真正值得我们花时间去想清楚的是：如果不用模板那到底应该用什么呢?

某些培训教师就聪明在这里，他/她告诉你"模板很危险啊"，"用了肯定是低分啊"，然后就闭上嘴巴不说话了。这种近乎调戏的做法只能让完全没有原创能力的那一部分学生陷入更大的恐慌中，因为他们/她们还是不知道要怎么写作文，而原来想依靠模板的一点点希望也破灭了。中文有句话叫"不破不立"（英文里也有 Myths should be dispelled before truths are revealed.）。而这些人只说模板不好，自己却也拿不出好的方法，是"只破不立"（get their students thoroughly mystified）。

Pat 的答案非常明确：如果不打算用模板，那么就请下苦功夫提高您的写作实力。这两者都可行，而且后者更好，因为提高实力不仅是更安全、更万能的方法，而且可以为今后的出国学习打好基础。但在偷懒与勤奋之间是绝没有第三条路可走的！

我一直接触的是有血有肉的考生，不是考试机器。真实考生的需求差异其实是很大的，甚至在同一个培训班里考生的需求都会有很大的差别。学生的英文水平可以分成三类：

★ 有些学生只需要"帮助"。这部分人就是所谓的"大牛"（pros），例如在工作中长期使用英语的朋友或者英语成绩很出色的大学生，老师只要帮助他们/她们了解雅思写作的特点就可以了。对于这部分同学，我的建议是：不仅不需要背模板，而且连固定的写作套路都不用准备，但是大牛们应该在考试之前多研究真题（对 IELTS 写作目前在全球三大考区所使用的

每一道真题的详细分析请参阅《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》），并控制时间多练习作文，再对比研究高分的范文，而且附录 B，附录 H 和附录 I 也要深入体会。这样有十篇左右的文章下来，你就对雅思作文的要求非常熟悉了。

★ 还有些学生（semi-pros）需要“挽救”。他们/她们具有一定的英文基础，比如四级或者六级已经获得了可以接受的分数，但是对于英文写作却没有受过专门的指导，对 academic writing 有很多误解，老师需要挽救他们/她们回到正确的路上。这部分考生有一定的原创能力，但速度比较慢而且用词句的准确度不高。考虑到考场里 1 个小时两篇文章的写作速度要求和组织逻辑结构的实际挑战，这些学生最好能在考试之前多看一些高分范文，并且总结出一个真正适合自己写作水平的逻辑框架，然后在考前找出时间（其实 1 个小时左右就足够了）踏踏实实地坐下来，用自己的话认真地把这个逻辑框架用英文表达出来。如果有可能最好再请水平高的朋友改一改其中的词句。这样就可以确保使用的逻辑结构适合自己的水平，而且在考场里又能够把主要精力花在需要现场发挥的主体段论证部分上面。

★ 还有些考生，完全是业余选手（rookies/amateurs），正处在水深火热中，需要“拯救”（salvation）。这部分童鞋们基本从来就没有对英语发生过兴趣，一看见英文单词就困了，甚至有些完全是因为自己的父母要求才决定出国的。对他们/她们来说，需要的是短时间内的速成，如果学的内容太高深他们/她们很可能会中途放弃。这部分考生的难点是完全没有原创能力，即使要求他们/她们自己原创也会出现海量的语法和用词问题。

在 Day 8（下）部分，Pat 将为第一和第二类考生深入分析雅思考官们的满分范文是怎样写出来的，还包括剑桥给出的 7.5 分的范文和 8 分的范文。通过这些文章的实例，我会向大家证明：对于已经具备了一定原创能力的读者，只要您愿意多花时间，多思考，愿意自己经常动笔，多总结，即使备考时间再短，也是完全可以脱离模板写出优秀的原创雅思作文的。

而在今天（上）的 A、B、C 三个部分里，没有别的，只有模板，大量的模板。长期的教学实践告诉我，对于完全没有原创能力的第三类考生，用好的模板写出作文是比较“靠谱”（sensible）的方法，至少比让这些基础薄弱的苦孩子们到考场去原创雅思作文要“靠谱”。

★ 另外，其实用一个简单的测试，就可以基本判断出你是否有必要在考前准备模板来写作文：

请找一张白纸，用英文翻译出这句话：“教师应该鼓励学生独立思考。”

你的翻译只要英文正确就可以，不一定要 100% 和这个中文句子的意思一致。在本章的结尾，我会把我能想到的这句话所有的英文写法都列出来。如果你可以基本正确地写出这句话的

英文，那么建议你其实只要大致了解一下 Day 8（上）的内容就好了，重点要看后面两节，特别是 Day 8（下）。

可是如果你翻译的答案真的跟所有的参考答案一点边儿也沾不上，那我还是建议你应该花时间好好研究一下今天的 Day 8（上）部分，认真掌握模板的逻辑关系，并确保自己填写的内容符合这个逻辑关系。

Argumentation 辩论类系列模板

辩论类模板 A（完整版，供研究折中式文章结构使用）

开头段 4 句：介绍背景并引出话题。

① In the present age，... are playing significant roles in our lives（第一句填入背景，如果想介绍不好的现象这句也可以换成 In the present age，the issue of... is increasingly disturbing）. ② But in the meantime（同时），whether ...（这里写辩论话题）has sparked much debate. （引发了很多争议）. ③ Some people assert（认为）that ... while many others argue（认为）that ... ④ Personally，I am in favor of（支持）the former（前者）/ the latter（后者）view.

提示： a 第一句填写背景一定要扣题。如果想出的背景离题太远，那么宁可不写背景这句。剑桥 4 ~剑桥 8 后面的考官范文中有 4 篇是没有写背景的，但只要写了背景的就一定是很贴近原题。如果选择第一句不写背景，那么第二句的前半句“But in the meantime，”就一起省去。b 如果题目中并没有给出正反两方各自的观点，而只是给出了“一方认为……（Some people think...）”，那么也可以选择把开头段第三句的后半段“while many others argue that...”省略。c 相应地，如果题目中只给了一种观点，那么开头段第四句 former/ latter（前者/后者）的写法就可以换成自己对题中给出的这一种观点所持的态度（具体替换方法请参考下文“开头段第四句可能用到的句型②/③”）。

全文第二段写自己倾向的观点：3 个分论点并且各跟 1 ~2 句支持句。

① Convincing arguments can be made that....（这句话的意思是“可以提出有说服力的证据来证明……”，后面填入本段的观点）② To start with ...（写第一个理由）③ Therefore（因此），...（写一句话来支持或解释第二句）④ Moreover，...（第二个理由）⑤ Specifically（具体来说），...（支持或解释第四句）⑥ Lastly，...（第三个理由）⑦ In other words，...（换句话说，支持或解释第六句）。

提示： 第③、⑤、⑦句是支持句，尽量写成复杂句，用好 Day 5 中提供的连接词。

第三段写不倾向的一方，先支持两句再反驳两句。

① Admittedly（我承认），...（这句填你不太倾向的观点）② The reason for this is that ...（写一句理由）③ Obviously（显而易见），...（这句支持第二句）④ Even so，...（尽管如此……后面填一条这种观点的不足之处，也就是挑②的毛病）⑤ For instance ...（例如……举例支持第四句）。

提示：第③、⑤句是支持句，尽量写复杂句，用 Day 5 讲的连接词。

结尾段。

① In summary，I would concede that...（我承认……，概括让步段中的观点）② Despite that（尽管如此），...（填入你在让步段之前更倾向的那种观点）③ Overall（整体来看），I am convinced（我相信）that... should...（提出谁应该怎么做，本质上就是提一个建议）。

提示：结尾段如果希望更简洁一些，也可以压缩成两句：① In summary，I would concede that...，even though... ② Overall，I am convinced that... should...

下面这些模板的开头段都更为简洁，这样既可以进一步突出主体段的论证，又可以避免开头段绕圈子的效果，是 Pat 更加推荐的风格。

◎ 辩论类模板 B（B－G 均为浓缩版，更加简洁也更安全，适合实战使用。不使用模板的范文请参阅本书 Day 8（下）、附录 A、附录 B 和《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》）

开头段

① There has been much discussion revolving around the issue of whether... ② In this essay，I will compare and contrast two typical opinions regarding this issue.

主体段 1

① It is evidently reasonable for some to argue that... ② To start with，... ③ This is mainly due to the fact... ④ Moreover，it is widely accepted that... ⑤ Plenty of evidence has shown that...，which in turn proves that... ⑥ An even more significant factor that should be taken into account is... ⑦ After all，... — that is to say，...

主体段 2

① By contrast，some others may claim that... ② Apparently，... ③ For example，... ④ Nonetheless，it should not be overlooked that... ⑤ Few can deny...，by which I mean...

结尾段

① Having considered the respective merits of both views, I think... ② Also, I would suggest..., which I believe is soundly based on the above reasoning I have presented.

◎ 辩论类模板 C

开头段

① These days, public debate has been going on in my country over whether... ② This essay will discuss both sides in this debate.

主体段 1

① Some people tend to think that... ② As far as I am concerned, this view may be based on the consideration that... ③ It is reasonable due to the fact... ④ Another argument that can be used to support their belief is... ⑤ For instance, ... ⑥ Above all, ... ⑦ Obviously, ... ⑧ In other words, ...

主体段 2

① On the other side of the debate though, many individuals argue that... ② The main reason for their view is obviously... ③ It seems true...; therefore, ... ④ But I would say this does not sound very convincing since ... ⑤ It is generally arguable that..., which suggests that...

结尾段

① On the basis of the above factors, my conclusion is... ② More importantly, I am convinced that... would be well-advised to...

◎ 辩论类模板 D

开头段

① People are having a hard time reaching consensus on whether... ② Some think that... ③ I will analyse their thought in detail in the following text.

主体段 1

① The merits of their view are apparent. ② It is very likely that... ③ Otherwise, ... ④ Moreover, ... ⑤ Our own experience has revealed that...; thus, ... ⑥ Even more importantly, ... ⑦ This, in turn (相应地), shows that...

主体段 2

① Those who feel that... might argue... ② It seems...; therefore, ... ③ However, I have to emphasise the fact that it is commonly believed today... ④ As a consequence, ..., which means...

结尾段

① So my conclusion is, for the reasons I have given... ② And my suggestion concerning this matter would be... should...

◎ 辩论类模板 E

开头段

① People still have mixed views on whether... ② I will analyse this issue in this essay.

主体段 1

① Personally, I find it evident... ② As we know, ... ③ It is generally accepted today... ④ Consequently, ... ⑤ More importantly, ... ⑥ Specifically, ..., which also confirms the belief that... ⑦ A third point I would like to make in support of this finding is... ⑧ This is best illustrated with the example of... ⑨ Thus, it can hardly be denied that...

主体段 2

① Even so, I admit that it may be true... ② After all, ... ③ Even if..., ... ④ Despite that, ... ⑤ This is because...

结尾段

① In conclusion, I take the view that... ② And I firmly believe...

◎ 辩论类模板 F

开头段

Whether... is an issue that arouses controversy.

主体段 1

① It is understandable that some people think... ② The main reason for this is... ③ Surely, ... ④ Apart from that, ... ⑤ Statistics have shown that...; therefore, ... ⑥ In

addition, it can be argued that... ⑦ There is little doubt...

主体段 2

① But some other people would disagree. ② It may be true..., which means that... ③ However, it seems that... ④ Few can deny that...

结尾段

① For my part, after considering the arguments above, I feel that... ② All in all, it would be sensible to suggest that...

辩论类模板 G

开头段

① Today, heated debate has been going on about whether... ② I will explore two main arguments often heard in this controversy.

主体段 1

① There are reasons for some people to believe that... ② First of all, it seems that... ③ There is ample evidence suggesting that..., which means... ④ Moreover, ... ⑤ This can be best illustrated with the example of...; therefore, ... ⑥ Lastly, ... ⑦ By that I mean...

主体段 2

① On the other hand, it is worth pointing out there are also arguments supporting the opinion that... ② The main one may be... ③ It is evident that...; thus, ... ④ Despite this, an apparent problem with this opinion is... ⑤ Consequently, we should not overlook the fact...

结尾段

① To conclude, regarding this issue, my own view is... ② Also, I would argue that it seems highly advisable for... to...

辩论类模板 H

开头段

Concerning the issue of whether..., I tend to believe that ... — for the following reasons.

主体段 1

The primary factor we need to take into consideration is that... Apparently, ... As a

consequence, ..., which can be verified with the example of...

主体段 2

Besides, it seems to me that... In general, ... In other words, ... Therefore, ...

主体段 3

A third reason for my belief is that... It is widely recognised that..., which means...

主体段 4

I admit...; thus, ... Despite that, ..., for which we can find plenty of evidence from our own experience.

结尾段

In conclusion, I would argue that... Accordingly, it would be generally advisable for... to...

辩论类模板 I

开头段

Public concern has arisen about... I personally believe that... — for three reasons.

主体段 1

To start off with, ... Evidently, ... ; as a result, ... This point can be confirmed by the example of...

主体段 2

Also, it seems... In general, ... ; thus, ... In other words, ...

主体段 3

Additionally, it is commonly accepted that ... , which means ... Specifically, ...

主体段 4

Some people may argue that... I admit this is legitimate concern. However, ...

结尾段

Therefore, overall I would argue that... Consequently, it would be wise for... to..., which, I believe, is in the best interest of all the parties involved.

此外，由于开头段是考生最容易出现相似写法的地方，所以 Pat 在这里给大家多写了一些更简洁的开头，帮大家积极开阔思路。在领会每句话的作用之后，如果能够静下心来试着用自己的话写出开头段就更好了。

Few issues have aroused more bitter controversy than the one of whether...

The debate over whether... has been raging for quite some time in my country.

An issue that has given rise to much debate is whether...

The issue of whether... has been an on-going debate for quite some time in China.

Public debate about whether... has been growing in intensity.

The issue of whether... has caused quite a stir.

Whether... has been a highly debatable issue.

开头段同义词替换选择（请注意用词并不是越大越好，适合自己水平的就是最好的）

◎ 开头段第一句介绍背景还可能用到的不同写法：

在当代

In the present age = In this day and age = In present-day society = Today = At present = In current society = In the contemporary world = In contemporary society = Nowadays

众所周知

① It is generally（or widely /commonly /extensively /universally）believed that...

② It is generally（or widely /commonly /extensively /universally）accepted that...

③ It is generally arguable that...

④ We are all agreed that...

⑤ It is generally（or widely /commonly /extensively /universally）acknowledged that...

⑥ It is a well-known fact that...

⑦ It is popular/common belief that...

越来越重要……

plays an increasingly key（or crucial /essential /vitally important /significant /critical / indispensable）role in...

以惊人的速度向前发展……

is advancing at an amazing（or staggering /astonishing /meteoric /astounding /drastic /

rapid /accelerated /unprecedented) speed in present-day society

越来越流行

... is increasingly prevalent /popular in the contemporary world

彻底改变我们的生活

... has transformed = fundamentally changed = completely changed our lives

(负面背景)……的问题越来越严重

The problem of ... is becoming increasingly severe (or grave /serious /worrying / disturbing /worrisome)

开头段第二句引出话题还可能用到的备选句型:

① But in the meantime, whether ... has become a highly debatable issue.

② However, whether ... has sparked (or aroused /given rise to /created /caused / provoked /triggered) spirited (or heated) debate (or controversy) 是否……这个问题不同的人持不同看法。

③ But when it comes to (or with respect to /regarding /concerning /as for /when asked about) whether ..., people hold divergent (or contrasting /conflicting /contradictory / opposing /different) views.

④ Yet at the same time, people are divided over whether...

⑤ However, there is no consensus on whether... yet.

⑥ But meanwhile, whether ... is an issue open to debate.

⑦ However, in the meanwhile whether ... constitutes a controversial issue.

开头段第三句转述原题的观点还可能用到的写法:

① some people = some = some individuals

② think = believe = say = argue = maintain = contend = assert = insist = aver = claim

开头段第四句给出你自己的观点还可能用到的句型:

① 如果原题里给出两种观点要求你辩论

As far as I am concerned, I am in favor of the former (or latter) view.

As far as I am concerned = To (or In) my mind = From my own perspective

= Speaking for myself, I think ... =Personally, ... =In my view, ...

= As I see it...

In favour of =favour =support =incline towards =side with

View =opinion =point of view =notion

② 如果原题里只有一种观点，你是主要支持的态度

Personally, I agree with their view, but I would qualify it to some extent (or somewhat).

Personally, I think their view has considerable merit.

Speaking for myself, I agree with their proposition, with certain qualifications.

Personally, I sympathise with their view.

To my mind, the merits (or strengths /strong points) of their view outweigh (or prevail over /outbalance) the (or demerits /weaknesses /weak points).

I can agree with their view, but with reservations.

As I see it, there is more to it than that.

Speaking for myself, I am of mixed opinions about this issue.

③ 如果原题里只有一种观点，你是主要反对的态度

Personally, I think their view is only partly true.

Personally, I find this view ill-founded.

Personally, I think this view is specious at best.

Personally, I think this view overlooks important factors of this issue.

I think their view is overly simplistic.

I think their view is over generalised.

I find their view unconvincing (or unpersuasive /problematic /somewhat) untenable.

I think their view amounts to an oversimplification.

第二段同义词替换选择

第二段第一句还可能用到的词汇和句型：

Compelling arguments can be made that...

Undeniably, ...

Indisputably, ...

On the one hand, it is arguable that...

There is no denying that...

True, ...

It is true that...

It is evident that...

It is apparent that...

It is obvious that...

It is clear that...

It is manifest that...

Clearly, ...

There is no doubt that...

I find compelling the arguments that...

第二段还可能用到的表示首先、其次和最后的结构词：

首先 First

Firstly

In the first place

To begin with

To start with

For one thing

The first point with respect to this is that

其次 Second

Secondly

In the second place

Then

Moreover

Further

Furthermore

Besides

For another

最后 Lastly

Finally

Last but not least

More importantly

Above all

Additionally

第二段第三句开头还可能用到的词汇：

therefore　　thus

hence　　consequently

as a consequence　　as a result

第二段第五句开头还可能用到的词汇：

Specifically　　More precisely

More exactly

第二段第七句开头还可能用到的词汇：

In other words	… that is to say…
By that I mean	This is true in that…
This makes sense in that…	In fact
As a matter of fact	It seems that…

（请注意如果用 that is to say，那么需要把第六句和第七句之间的句号改成“—”号）

第三段同义词替换选择

第三段（让步段）第一句还可能用到的词汇和句型：

Admittedly（或者也可以写 It may be tempting to argue that… /Granted，… / On the other hand，colorable arguments can be made that …/ I admit that/ I concede that/ I would agree that/ I recognise that/ I would acknowledge that/ Surely，…/ To be sure，…）

第三段（让步段）第二句还可能用到的词汇和句型：

The reason is that…

This is because…

The main reason for this is that…

The fundamental reason for this is that…

This is due to the fact that…

This is reasonable to the extent that…

This is valid insofar as…

This argument has considerable merit in that…

第三段（让步段）第三句还可能用到的词汇和句型：

obviously	apparently
clearly	evidently
It is manifest that	

第三段（让步段）第四句还可能用到的词汇和句型：

Even so, Nevertheless

Nonetheless However

Still, Despite that,

But closer examination would reveal that...

But further analysis would make it clear that...

Having said this, however, ...

第三段（让步段）第五句还可能用到的词汇和句型：

For instance For example

One illustration of this is... A case in point is...

结尾段同义词替换选择

结尾段第一句开头还可能用到的词汇：

In summary/ To sum up/ In sum/ In the final analysis/ Based on all the arguments offered above/ On the basis of the above discussion/ Having considered all the arguments above, / Personally.../ Speaking for myself...

concede = admit = recognise = acknowledge = agree

结尾段第二句开头还可能用到的词汇：

Despite that Nevertheless

However Yet

But Nonetheless

Still Even so

结尾段第三句开头还可能用到的词汇：

On balance/ Overall/ Therefore/ accordingly/ As a result/ As a consequence/ Hence/

Thus/ For this reason/ To conclude/ In conclusion

I am convinced that =I believe =I would assert that =I would conclude that

（上）B. 怎样写 Report

昨天讲过，IELTS 议论文分两类：Argumentation 和 Report。Pat 详细统计了最近七年中的大作文题，其中近 90% 是辩论类，只有 10% 是分析类，所以从概率来说还是建议大家把主要时间用在准备辩论题上面。Report 类题目里面最常见的是分析 causes（原因）和 solutions（解决方案）的题。因此在这节里给大家讲两套 Report 类模板，是用来分析 causes 和 solutions 的。如果分析其他的内容，比如 effects（影响）或者 purposes（目的），大家只要把关键词替换一下就好了（完全不依靠模板的 Report 请看本书 Day 8（下）与《十天突破 IELTS 完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》）。

Report 分析类模板

Report 分析类模板 A（完整版，供研究逻辑结构使用）

开头段 4 句，介绍背景并引出话题。

In this age of change, the human society is progressing rapidly（快速发展）on various fronts（领域）. Yet at the same time, many problems have arisen（出现），a serious one of which is ...This issue has drawn widespread attention. In this essay, I will analyse some possible causes of this phenomenon（现象）and then propose some solutions.

第二段写原因，三个原因并各写一句支持句。

It is obvious that the causes of ... are diverse（多样的）. In the first place, ...For instance... In the second place, ...Specifically... Thirdly...It seems that...

第三段写解决方案，三个解决方案并各写一句支持句。

Accordingly, the solutions to this issue should also be varied. First, ... For example, ... Then, ... Indeed, ... Above all, ...Research has proved that...

结尾段

To conclude, several factors contribute to ... I am convinced that we should take measures including ..., ... and ... to solve this disturbing problem.

Report 分析类模板 B（精简版）

开头段

Currently, ...is causing great concern. In this essay, I intend to explore the ... and the ... of this issue.

主体段 1

It is obvious that the ... of ... are highly complex. Firstly, ... It is evident that... Secondly, ... One need only look at ... to see... Thirdly, ... Hence, ...

主体段 2

In light of the above factors, I am convinced that immediate action should be taken to combat this situation. Priority should be given to ... For instance... Besides, ... This is due to the consideration that... Most importantly, ... Clearly, ...

结尾段

In summary, the ... of ... are complicated; therefore, we should take a wide range of measures, including ..., ... and ... to address this problem before the damage caused by this trend becomes irreversible.

大家还可以用下面的同义词替换形成属于自己的模板。

Report 模板同义词替换选择

开头段第一句

① In this age of change = currently = at present = at the present time = In this day and age = In present-day society = In contemporary society = Today = Nowadays = in current society

② the human society = the human race = Homo Sapiens = human beings = humans = man = mankind = humanity = humankind

③ progress = advance = develop = forge ahead

④ rapidly = at an amazing rate = astonishingly = staggeringly = unprecedented = meteorically = drastically = dramatically = at an accelerated speed various = numerous = a wide range of = a wide variety of = a wide array of = a host of = a multitude of = a vast

number of = a myriad

⑤ fronts = arenas = realms = spheres = domains = areas = fields

开头段第二句

① Yet = However = But = Nevertheless = Nonetheless

② At the same time = Meanwhile = In the meantime

③ arisen = appeared = been brought about = been created = come

④ along = occurred = been generated = come = emerged

⑤ serious = grave = worrying = disturbing = prominent = manifest = conspicuous = attention-getting

开头段第三句

① issue = problem = phenomenon = situation

② drawn = aroused = triggered = sparked = given rise to = created = attracted = caused = provoked

③ widespread = intense = serious = a great deal of

④ attention = controversy = concern = worry = debate

开头段第四句

① analyse = determine = explore = ascertain = pinpoint = identify = examine = investigate = propose = put forward = put forth = suggest

② phenomenon = problem = situation = worrying issue = disturbing issue

主体段第一段开头

① It is obvious that = It is clear that = It is manifest that = It is evident that

② The causes of … are diverse = The causes of … are multiple = The causes of … are manifold = A wide array/ range of factors contribute to…

= There are various/ several contributing factors in… = Various factors contribute to…

主体段第二段开头

① accordingly = based on the above analysis = on the basis of the above reasoning =

given these factors = considering these causes = in light of these facts

② issue = problem = situation = phenomenon

③ varied = diverse = multiple = manifold = various = multifarious = integrated = comprehensive

◎ 结尾段第一句开头

① to conclude = to sum up = in sum = in summary = to summarise = in conclusion

② contribute to = lead to = result in = cause = engender = give rise to

◎ 结尾段第二句开头

① I am convinced that = I believe = I would assert that = I firmly believe measures = steps = action

② solve = combat = tackle = address = deal with = cope with

③ disturbing = worrying = acute = severe = worrisome = serious

下面这篇范文就使用了这套模板，其中的词汇基本上全是 Day 3 里提供的 136 个必备词汇里的。

范 文

What are the causes of water scarcity（短缺）? *What are your solutions*?

❶ 题目分析

非常典型的 Report，可以写四段，开头使用模板，主体段 1 写三个原因和三句支持句，主体段 2 写三个解决方案和三句支持句，结尾段两句话结束。原因和解决方案都可以用 Day 2 学的“裸奔法”（TM STREEC $）很快想出来，比如由 population 想到人口爆炸这个原因，由 environment 想到人们破坏环境，由 soul（精神）想到人们缺乏节约用水的意识等等。相应的在主体段第二段对应给出三个解决方案。使用的词汇多数都是给大家总结的 Day 3 里面的词汇。

开头段

① In this age of change, the human society is progressing rapidly on various fronts.
② Yet at the same time, many problems have arisen, a serious one of which is the

shortage of fresh water. ③ In this essay, I will analyse some possible causes of this phenomenon and the corresponding solutions.

主体段 1

① It is evident that the causes of the present water crisis are diverse. ② In the first place, the population explosion is the root cause of the crisis. ③ An illustration of this point would be that over the past half century, the world population has more than doubled and this growth rate shows no sign of slowing down; as a result, household and industrial use of water has been shooting up since the end of World War II. ④ In the second place, the widespread deterioration of the Earth's ecosystem constitutes a major cause of this situation. ⑤ Specifically, currently a vast number of factories are dumping their waste into rivers and lakes, which seriously undermines the world's ecosystem. ⑥ Finally, the overexploitation of water resources plays a pivotal role in water shortage. ⑦ Obviously, today only in very few countries do the citizens have the awareness of the importance of saving water and using water properly; as a consequence, a vast amount of fresh water is wasted on a daily basis.

主体段 2

① Accordingly, the solutions to this problem should be varied as well. ② To begin with, governments in all countries should give priority to the controlling of the staggering increase of the population. ③ For example, it is essential that other nations learn from China's success in curbing its population surge over the past two decades. ④ Then, the concept of sustainable development should be spread in the international community. ⑤ Indeed, any form of overexploiting natural resources must be forbidden while preservation of the ecosystem should be respected, honored and funded. ⑥ Last but not least, man must do his utmost to find alternative sources of fresh water. ⑦ For example, research has proved that we can transform seawater into drinking water with the help of modern technology.

结尾段

① In sum, several factors contribute to water scarcity. ② I am convinced that we should take effective steps, including birth control, promotion of sustainable development and research about new water resources, to alleviate this modern-day problem.

❷ 词汇表

单　词	词　性	词　义
fresh water		淡水
present	*adj.*	当今的
the root cause of…		……的根源
an illustration of this point is…		一个例证是
household	*n.*	家庭
shoot up		急剧上升
widespread	*adj.*	广泛的
deteriorate	*v.*	恶化
ecosystem	*n.*	生态系统
currently	*adv.*	现在
undermine	*v.*	破坏
overexploitation	*n.*	过度开采
pivotal	*adj.*	关键的
awareness	*n.*	意识
give priority to		把……放在优先位置
staggering	*adj.*	惊人的
essential	*adj.*	至关重要的
decade	*n.*	十年
sustainable development		可持续发展
international community		国际社会
preserve	*v.*	保护
man	*n.*	人类
do one's utmost	*v.*	尽最大努力
alternative	*n.*	替代物
transform	*v.*	改变

（上）C. *IELTS* 议论文考场实战 6 步
（专门推荐给正在为写不完作文而纠结的“小白”们）

在战场上，士兵有了充足的武器装备，还要有聪明的战术才能让自己的装备发挥出最大的效能。在雅思写作考场上，到底如何实现又快又好地完成作文的既定目标呢？下面的六步操作，是我为写作基础不太好的考生们制订的实战六步。大量考生的考试实践已经证明，这六步在考试时确实能帮助学生用很快的速度写出有说服力的考试作文，要求只有一个：熟练，熟练，再熟练。

Step 1

看懂 task 2 题目后，首先判断题目类型——是 Argumentation，还是 Report?

Step 2

快速确定结构。

Argumentation 四段式		Report 四段式	
I	2 ~4	I	2 ~4
II	1 +6	II	1 +6
III	1 +4	III	1 +6
IV	2 ~3	IV	2

Step 3

用 TM STREEC $ 法想出主体段的分论点。请注意，雅思作文追求的是素材（分论点）reasonable（合理）而不是 profound（深刻）。雅思是一种语言能力测试，考的是写作基本功，它和 GRE 考试的思维能力测试有本质区别，即使剑桥 4 ~8 的雅思考官满分范文也并不深刻，在今天的（下）部分我们还将会有实例说明。

Step 4

快速回忆并使用考前准备好的逻辑框架。但是不需要逐句照搬，必要时完全可以根据题目灵活修改。

Step 5

主体段里论证时集中使用前面学过的 Day 3 的 136 个必备词汇、Day 5 的六大类常用连接词和 Day 6 的 36 个基础句型。需要考高分的同学还可以充分调动 Day 3 的 288 个高分词汇、Day 4 的 12 种特殊句式、Day 6 的 63 个高分句型。注意支持句里尽量多使用一些常用连词（本质是更复杂的逻辑关系）。

Step 6

写句子时始终牢记 Day 4 强调要避免的“语法七宗罪”。本书讲述的内容大家熟练之后一般都可以在 40 分钟内提前完成议论文。task 2 和 task 1 都写完后再迅速地利用“语法七宗罪”快速检查语法错误。

Day 8（中）

更具挑战性的一边倒作文怎样写？（高分内容）

在 Day 7 中，我们已经详细地比较过一边倒和折中式写法的优劣，似乎折中式已经占尽优势：折中式更客观，而且对于多数考题来说正反两方面都论证会比只论证一方更容易写够字数，再有就是剑 4 ~ 剑 8 后面涂深颜色的考官范文无一例外地都是折中式。

但是，对于英文功底确实好的考生来说，完全支持或者完全反对的一边倒写法仍然是可以写得富有说服力并且很充实的。一边倒文章的最大特点就是“犀利”。Pat 今天专门为“大牛们”讲讲一边倒的写法（还是要强调：对于基础不是很好的同学而言，由于一边倒文章只涉及命题的一方，字数问题始终是困扰“俗人”写好一边倒的最大障碍。在考试时间极为紧张的状态下，语言水平一般的孩子是不是能搞定一边倒作文的字数而且还确保每句话的意思都不重复，那就得求上帝和佛祖同时保佑了）。

一边倒作文的文章结构		
段落	句数	结构
开头段	2~4句	（背景） +引出辩论话题 +（改写原题观点） +自己的态度， 其中，括号里的两句允许省略
主体段1	1+2~4句	第一句写分论点1（即支持或反对的理由1），后面2~4句都是本分论点的支持句
主体段2	1+2~4句	第一句是分论点2（即支持或反对的理由2），后面2~4句都是本分论点的支持句
主体段3	1+2~4句	第一句是分论点3（即支持或反对的理由3），后面2~4句都是本分论点的支持句
结尾段	2句	重申自己所持的态度+提出建议

下面这篇Pat自己创作的文章就是一边倒的实例（更多的一边倒范文请参考本书姐妹篇《十天突破IELTS写作完整真题库与6-9分范文全解》）：

题目： *Some people think women should be allowed to join the army, the navy and the air force just like men. Do you agree or disagree?*

范 文

Some individuals believe that the status quo should be changed and ladies should be entitled to join the armed forces. I fundamentally agree with their belief — for three reasons.

History has repeatedly shown that women are fully capable of performing well in the military. Historically, there were a host of valiant women soldiers whose achievements put their male counterparts to shame. One need only look at the classic examples of Joan of Arc and Mulan to see how ladies could excel on the battlefield. In my observation, their determination, courage and dignity, to this day, are still being admired by male soldiers and civilians alike throughout the civilised world.

Further, from an enlightened standpoint, female patriots should be granted the equal right to go to the front line when their motherland is involved in a war. Admittedly, gender inequality was a highly controversial issue in the twentieth century. However, now ten years into the new millennium, women can learn and teach, work and supervise, vote and get voted in most

countries just like men. In light of this sweeping progress in gender equality, there is really no sense in denying them the right to defend their home country when a war breaks out.

Lastly, common sense and our experiences as humans inform us that would-be servicewomen largely possess the capacity to operate modern weapons. Indeed, present-day weapons are best characterised by extensive automation. Granted, physically women are, on average, not as strong as men; nevertheless, it is an indisputable fact that most of them have the mental ability and the psychological well-being to operate the highly-automated arms that essentially do not require big biceps.

In sum, keeping military services out of bounds of women in the information age is unwarranted. And I have been convinced that it is in the best interest of a nation if ladies are also granted equal rights in this particular arena.

下面，Pat 还专门为有志于尝试一边倒写法的朋友们设计了一套模板，但还是想提醒各位：如果你确实觉得有困难，那就坚定使用折中式吧。毕竟，剑桥考官们在剑桥系列中的所有范文里也都是采用了折中式的写法。Don't blame yourself if you opt out. ☺

开头段

Today, there has been growing public concern（关注）about whether... Personally, I think... — for three reasons.

主体段 1

The principal（首要的）reason for my view is... It is evident（明显的）that...; therefore, ... In other words, ... For instance, ...

主体段 2

Another reason for my view is... Specifically, ... It is generally accepted in my country that...; thus, ... After all, ..., which means...

主体段 3

Additionally, ... It seems to me that... This is due to the fact... By that I mean...

结尾段

In sum, for these reasons, I tend to believe... And overall, it seems... should...

在这一小节的最后，Pat 用一篇自己写的五段式 Report 为大家再次展示一下作一个五段式作者的艰辛吧 :p

题目： *There are an increasing number of juvenile delinquents. What are the causes of this phenomenon*? 有越来越多的青少年罪犯。原因是什么?

范 文

The incidence of juvenile offenses is growing at an alarming rate; and the severity of these offenses has been consistently staggering to us adults. It is imperative that we pinpoint the causes of this phenomenon.

Many instances of juvenile delinquency have been attributed to the violent or pornographic content of some TV shows and video games. These days, we are confronted with a proliferation of blood and nudity on TV, the computer and the Internet. As a consequence, many youngsters, especially teenage boys, get addicted to such scenes. Lacking the capacity to distinguish between right and wrong, they develop criminal tendencies.

Another contributing factor is the rampant parental neglect and domestic violence. Today, there have been an ever-growing number of dysfunctional families. In general, the children raised in such families are far more likely to be afflicted with constant fear and anxiety. Eventually, they develop a hatred for other individuals and society as a whole.

Additionally, the increase of juvenile crime rate is symbiotically connected with the rise of adult crime rate in society. In other words, the more adult crimes, the higher the probability of youngsters falling prey to adult offenders. For instance, many youths are tempted by evil adults into committing crimes, whereas others who are victims of adult offenses may become criminals themselves to get their revenge on society.

In sum, a variety of factors contribute to the surge of juvenile delinquency. It is crucial that we take stringent measures to tackle these problems immediately and ensure that the future of our nations — that is, the youngsters, have a more promising future ahead of them.

Day 8（下）

突破模板写作文——一个解构主义者眼中的剑桥范文（高分内容）

刚从加拿大回国的时候，我不知道什么叫“模板”。自己组建过乐队，到希望小学做过义工，自认为是一个非常“不走寻常路”的人，模板并不是我自己写作常用的风格。如果大家想

了解我的“正常文风”，可以读一下本书前面的自序，或者也可以看一下《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与6-9 分范文全解》中的自序以及 Pat 对于 Education 和 Technology 等话题的论述。自己的生活经历告诉我：写作是听说读写四项当中 immigrants 通过自己不断的努力有可能超过 natives 的唯一一项。去年 2 月回温哥华的时候我给 UBC 的 Dan Pratt 教授赠送了一本我的《十天突破雅思写作》样书。他是 *Five Perspectives on Teaching in Adult and Higher Education* 这本教育学名著的作者，当他翻开那本书序言后的第一句话是“Good English！”。

开始在环球雅思当老师之后，学校安排我听前辈教师的课。我第一次听到原来写作文还有“模板”这个说法。前辈说模板的英文叫 model，我不太理解：所谓 model 应该是 very desirable（人见人爱）的，就像 Olivia Palermo 或者 Gwen Stefani 那样，怎么竟会是一堆没有生命力的单词呢?

我对模板的理解是：它正确的英文翻译应该叫 template，其实就是一个逻辑框架。对于基础比较弱或者在 40 分钟内有可能写不完大作文的考生，模板可以有效地帮助考生控制自己的文章逻辑，它指导你每一步该做什么，明显地提高写作速度。但是在一些同学中也有一种倾向，就是过于夸大模板的作用，让自己的模板充满彪悍的大词，只靠模板去拿分，而忽视常用句型、词汇和连接词（连接词本质是一种逻辑关系）的学习。这可就是真正的战略错误了。

作为一个写作教师，我觉得自己有义务为学生设计模板。客观地说，一部分雅思考生的基础确实很薄弱，如果老师不给他们设计模板，他们是无法按时完成整篇作文的，而且文章必将是“中国人看不懂，外国人不明白”的惨烈结果。但是，模板却不是通向作文成功唯一有效的路径。如果忽视词汇、句型和句法，只靠模板来拿分数，是靠不住的。请牢记：一篇文章里面最拿分的部分永远不会是你的模板，而是你自己填入的那些文字。

对于英文基础好而且不是很急于考试的读者，我其实很建议大家好好看看 Day 7 中我制作的 Argumentation 和 Report 每句话的详细结构表。当你清楚了作文里每句话的功能之后，完全可以自己来设计一个逻辑的框架，这并不需要太多的时间（却需要大量的脑力投入，想拿作文高分还不动脑子只是痴人说梦而已）。但整个过程将是令人兴奋而有趣的，也许这就是王小波笔下的“思维的乐趣”。

今天的下半场，我们会分析一系列高分雅思作文，看看水平好的考生是不是可以突破模板写出有说服力的作文。

剑桥给出的 7.5 分范文

题目： *Some people think the high sales of products reflect the power of advertising instead of the consumers' demand. To what extent do you agree or disagree?*

题目分析： 这道题目属于绝对要用折中式写法的题。如果说产品卖得好只是因为广告的作用，或者说产品卖得好只是因为消费者有需求，明显都是不符合当代社会现实的。那些坚持要写“一边倒”的同学可以写写这道题试一试，体会一下什么叫 frustration。广告当然有作用，因为有明星，有艺术性，而且广泛传播，会影响很多人（sway the public opinions）。而

另一方面，消费者还是有自己的决定权的，因为每个人可以支配的收入（disposable income 或者 discretionary income）不一样，偏好（preferences）也并不一样，“萝卜白菜，各有所爱”（这句话在美国叫 Different strokes for different folks 或者也可以说 Whatever floats your boat.）。消费者买东西时自己的 options 还是很多的，怎么会只受广告影响呢?

好，咱们一起来看看剑桥给的 7.5 分作文是什么样儿。瞧这范儿，我已经丧失尺度感了……

Nowadays, there are many advertisements on television or on the streets. （这当然是介绍背景）Some people think that the advertising boosts the sales of goods and it encourages people to buy things unnecessarily. （明显地改写原题观点，boost 在 Day 3 中学过）

This arguments may be true. （正方观点，this 的后面居然跟名词复数，7.5 分大牛也会犯这种入门级语法错误，明显是考试的高压所致）In my country, many advertising companies produce advertisements with famous and popular actors or singers. （分论点 1，说有明星打广告）People, especially youngsters, buy goods that their favourite singer advertise, although they do not really need the products. （支持句 1，跟分论点意思很接近。再次说明了：支持句就是把分论点展开说一两句，并不需要很深刻，只要合理就行，但应尽量写成复杂句，多用前面 Day 5 讲的重点连接词。that 从句的主语 singer 和动词 advertise 单复数不一致，再爆入门级语法错误，考场的残酷性可见一斑）Also, on the television screen, a product may look gorgeous and good quality（这当然是分论点 2 了，讲电视广告让产品看起来更值得买）. As a result of it, people often buy goods without enough consideration. Consumers may not actually need it but they buy goods impulsively（Day 3 中学过：冲动的）soon after they watch the advertising（分论点 2 后面跟了两句支持句，但是竟然意思完全一样，很“雷”。如果你在写作方面是 perfectionist 或者 compulsive 有洁癖，那这两句中就绝对应该删掉一句）. Furthermore, as many customers buy a particular product due to its advertising campaign, the other people may be affected by the trend, even if the product is not of the real needs of the society. （这是第 3 个分论点加支持句，as 是“因为”，后面跟从句，due to 也是“因为”，但是后面加名词，even if 是“即使”，这些都是 Day 5 学过的常用连词。再次说明典型的雅思作文高分句子一定是正确使用连词的句子，一定多看看 Day 5）

On the other hand, there are various aspects against these arguments. （反方观点，消费者的决定权准备登场了，我已经闻到了紫米粥的香味）Moreover（这个词用得很逊，仔细体会其实这里并不是递进关系，而应该用 Specifically “具体来说”），it is people's choice to make a decision to buy goods（正式提出反方观点，庆丰包子端上来了）. Advertising may be not a cause of customers' buying habits. Individuals have their own spending habits. If they have got enough disposable income, then the right to make a decision is given to them. No one actually can judge whether the goods sold are the real needs of the society or not. （连续写了几句支持句，但是仔细把它们看 N 遍，你会发现四句支持句竟然是完全一样的意思!）In addition, as there should be a limited amount of disposable income consumers are able to

spend, people try to allocate their budgets. They cannot be simply swayed by those advertisements. (本段的第2个分论点加支持句，说毕竟世界上还是穷人多，难道“草根”还就不活了?)

In conclusion, as customers have their own strong opinions and standard of good quality goods, it is better to leave them to make their own decision in buying goods. It is fairly difficult to say everyone is swayed by advertising and buy good impulsively. (结论这句仍然在重复地说话) However, in sensitive area of businesses such as toy industries, if (应该是it。考场是什么? 就是把7.5分的学生逼得把it写成if的地方!) may be necessary to ban advertising to those children as children have not got enough ability to control themselves or to Know what they need. (最后一句提了一个建议，提出应该严格控制针对儿童的广告，know竟然句中大写……)

结论： 貌似离经叛道的一篇7.5分作文，深入分析后你却会发现，其实还是中规中矩的。写作时基础好的同学完全可以不用模板或者突破模板，但是却不能没有逻辑的框架。在考场的时间限制下，完全随心所欲，像Time或者Newsweek里面essays的写法，对一般的考生确实是不现实的。这篇文章作为一篇雅思作文写得还是很不错的，虽然有比较多的小错误，但用了一些我们学过的高端常用词，比如boost，impulsive，disposable和非常多的连接词。更重要的是，整篇文章的论证过程是清晰的，支持句充实，有的分论点甚至有2~3句支持句。不过另一方面要强调的是，支持句可算不上深刻，甚至有时候意思重复。

有人说了：“不服不服！这个只是7.5分的作文，更高分的作文一定是打破一切套路，让我们的敬意如滔滔江水……”

Fair enough. 那我们就一起来看一篇9分的剑桥考官范文。

剑桥考官满分范文

题目： ***Some people think high-school graduates should travel or work for a period of time before they go to university. To what extent do you agree?***

题目分析： 这道题也应该是折中式好写，因为很明显：上大学前去旅行或者工作是有好处的，比如可以开阔眼界，并且让学生更好地适应今后的挑战（enable them to cope with future challenges more effectively)。但先去旅行或者工作也显然有坏处，比如可能有些学生会觉得工作有成就感（a sense of achievement或者a sense of fulfillment)，就不再回去上学了。所以，如果这道题非要写一边倒，说旅行或者工作只有坏处或者只有好处，确实不够客观(decidedly biased)。

手捧考官亲笔写的这篇四段折中式范文，我的心情相当激动。Let's take a closer look.

It is quite common these days for young people in many countries to have a break from studying after graduating from high school.（介绍背景，庸俗的 common 说明原来考官也是人）The trend is not restricted （这个也是 Day3 的 136 个加分词汇里的动词，限制）to rich students who have the money to travel, but is also evident （这个词在前面 63 个句型的两个例句中都用过：明显的）among poorer students who choose to work and become economically independent for a period of time.（开头段的第二句仍然在写背景，已经显得啰嗦了）

The reasons for this trend may involve the recognition that a young adult who passes directly from school to university is rather restricted in terms of general knowledge and experience of the world. By contrast, those who have spent some time earning a living or travelling to other places, have a broader view of life and better personal resources to draw on. They tend to be more independent, which is a very important factor in academic study and research, as well as giving them an advantage in terms of coping with the challenges of student life.

这一段是写旅行或者工作的好处。考官本段给出了两个分论点：①可以开阔眼界；②让学生更独立，适应今后大学生活的挑战。提请大家特别注意： 就是从本段第一行中间 that 开始到本段第五行的第一个词 on，这两句话完全是负负为正的关系：第一句说不去旅行或工作眼界窄，第二句说去旅行或者工作眼界宽，所以严格地说至少有一句肯定是废话。这里我不怕重复自己，再次向需要高分的考生们大声疾呼：雅思写作和 GRE 作文有本质的区别。GRE 作文是思维能力测试，在美国本国学生进入 graduate schools 也要考 GRE，它的作文高分标准是 profound（深刻）。而雅思作文是典型的语言能力测试，它的高分标准只是 reasonable（合理）。很多雅思考官范文，非常不客气地说，尽管词句很好， 比如使用了我们在前面的连词部分强调过的 in terms of 和 by contrast/ in contrast，63 个加分句型里学过的 tend to（多半……）和 draw on（借鉴），还用了 136 个加分词汇中的 recognition（意识）等等，但是逻辑真的并不高深， 只是他们/她们比你更“敢写”。所以请牢记：雅思作文，归根到底考的还是写作的基本功。

However, there are certainly dangers in taking time off at that important age. Young adults may end up never returning to their studies or finding it difficult to readapt to an academic environment. They may think that it is better to continue in a particular job, or to do something completely different from a university course. But overall, I think this is less likely today, when academic qualifications are essential for getting a reasonable career.

这一段当然是让步段，讲旅行或者工作后再进大学的坏处：比如一些人挣钱挣够了或者旅游玩 high 了，可能就不愿意再回大学读书了。特别需要注意的是：因为这一段本质上是一个让步段，讲的是作者不太倾向的一方，所以在本段最后作者笔锋一转，用But overall 提出了一句反驳：“总体来看，这并不太可能发生，因为学历这玩意儿现在毕竟太重要了。”这种在让步段内部先支持再反驳的写法，正是我们在 Day 7 作文详细结构表里推荐过的结构。

My view is that young people should be encouraged to broaden their horizons. That is the best way for them to get a clear perspective of what they are hoping to do with their lives and why. Students with such a perspective are usually the most effective and motivated ones and taking a year off may be the best way to gain this.

考官结尾也和我们在 Day 7 中展示的结构表一样，先重申自己倾向的一方：还是先旅行或者工作一段时间再进大学更有前途。最后也是提建议：先旅行或者工作一年就是好。本段也用了一些高分词，比如 perspective（视角）和 motivated（有动力的），但依然没有超出本书前面介绍过的必备词汇范围。

结论： 本文的复杂句写得很熟练，并且连词用得很准确。结构还是典型的四段折中式。论证不算深刻，甚至有两句支持句意思完全重复，最突出的仍然是剑桥考官对连词的精准使用这样的写作基本功。

接下来我们再看一篇考官写的 Report 题型范文。

剑桥考官满文范文

题目： ***There are more problems with students' behavior in many countries. What are the causes and what are your solutions?***

题目分析： 典型的 Report 题型。学生的行为出现问题，比如欺负小同学（bully younger students），逃课（skip school/ cut class），不遵守纪律（indiscipline）……原因会有很多，比如家庭的、社会的、媒体的、学校的，然后相应地给出解决方法。

Poor student behaviour seems to be an increasingly widespread problem and I think that modern lifestyles are probably responsible for this.

开头段是典型的引出“话题 + 概括原因”。其实蓝字部分也可以用到别的 Report 文章开头，考官也在玩儿套路。

In many countries, the birth rate is decreasing so that families are smaller with fewer children. These children are often spoilt, not in terms of love and attention because working parents do not have the time for this, but in more material ways. They are allowed to have whatever they want, regardless of price, and to behave as they please. This means that the children grow up without consideration for others and without any understanding of where their standard of living comes from.

本段写家庭方面的原因：家里孩子越来越少，所以小孩被溺爱，不关心别人。本段所有支持句写的都是生活常理。而且用了 Day 5 强调过的连接词 in terms of（在……方面）和 regardless of（不管……），逻辑简单直接，并不追求深刻。

When they get to school age they have not learnt any self control or discipline. They have less respect for their teachers and refuse to obey school rules in the way that their parents did.

这一段讲学校方面导致的原因，其实这段也可以和上一段合并在一段里，因为都是陈述原因的，现在拆成两段感觉有点刻意。

Teachers continually complain about this problem and measures should be taken to combat the situation. But I think the solution to the problem lies with the families, who need to be more aware of the future consequences of spoiling their children. If they could raise them to be considerate of others and to be social, responsible individuals, the whole community would benefit.

这一段讲的道理仍然很常识化，本段前两句简直已经堕落成了一个模板，后面提出解决方法主要是依靠家庭教育（parenting），还使用了虚拟语气。

Perhaps parenting classes are needed to help them to do this, and high quality nursery schools could be established that would support families more in terms of raising the next generation. The government should fund this kind of parental support, because this is no longer a problem for individual families, but for society as a whole.

结尾提出应该开一些家长的培训班，还有建立好的幼儿园，帮助家长教育孩子，而且政府也要参与。提建议时同样使用了虚拟语气。

结论： 句子写得很好，但是道理都是生活常识，再次证明了雅思高分作文是考查写作基本功的事实，对思路的要求是合理而并非深刻。文中的连接词在前面的内容里已经多次向大家强调过了。

剑桥提供的 8 分范文

题目： *In Britain, when some people get old they often go to live in a home with other old people where there are nurses to look after them. The government has to pay for his care. Who should be responsible for our old people? Give reasons for your answer.*

题目分析： 到底谁来养老人？这道题是 Report 题型，但是只问解决方案，不问原因。那每个主体段写一个解决方案，然后分析一下其利弊就好了。

One of the most challenging problems of today's society is the question about who should be responsible for our old people. It is not only a problem with money but also a question of the system that we want our society to have. In my essay, I would like to present four possible models.

这个开头段对 Day 4 和 Day 5 中的内容运用得十分精准。

Firstly, the company could be responsible for its retired employees. To do this, a special fund could be established. The advantage of this model is that if one believes in the capitalist system, it should be the cheapest solution. One possible problem is that the companies may

have competition disadvantage due to higher staff costs.

本段第一句提出分论点 1：公司养老人。后面分析其好处和坏处，各只写了一句。用了句式多样化手法中的虚拟语气。

A second solution is that the government has to take the responsibility for the old people's care. It can finance this with its tax incomes. Actually, this is the most democratic model since everybody gets as much money as he or she needs. Unfortunately, as the present situation in our country shows, this solution seems not to work very well. The government can no longer afford to support all the old peoples.

本段第一句提出分论点 2：政府养老人。后面分析好处和坏处，各写了一两句。有小的语法错误（peoples），但是有一些不错的复杂句，两次使用了句式多样化手法中的“状语提前”。

Another way of solving the problem is to give back the responsibility to the individual, which means that everybody has to save money during their working life for the live after their retirement. This seems to be not a very fair model because there will certainly be people who can't afford to save part of their salary; therefore, the government would have to care for them.

提出的第 3 个方法是自己养自己。但接着讲这个不太可行（让步），因为明显有些老人没钱养自己。段中有小的拼写错误（the life 被拼成了 the live，再次证明考场中斗争的白热化）。

A last solution is to go back to the old model of the "big family who cares for all their members". I do not think this is possible in our days society because the family structures have changed.

最后一个方法是家庭养老人，但提出家庭结构已经变了，不太容易实现。本段只有一句支持句，其实完全可以继续往下写一两句支持句。比如可以加上 *Nuclear families abound today and most seniors live far away from their children, which means it would be unrealistic for these elderly people to expect their children to take good care of them.*

To sum up, I have to admit that I cannot find a really good solution for this problem. All models have both advantages and disadvantages. Certainly we have to think about this topic much more in the future.

结尾段没有说哪种最好，只说还需要再想一想。但剑 4 ~ 剑 8 中的雅思考官满分范文中结尾段最后的一两句话都不是这么写的，而是在结尾的最后提出相关建议。注意本段介词搭配出现一个错误，solution for 应该为 solution to。

最后再为移民类的读者朋友们分析一篇 7 分的 G 类范文。

剑桥 G 类 7 分范文

题目： *Some people prefer to live in a house, while others feel that there are more advantages*

to living in an apartment. Are there more advantages than disadvantages of living in a house compared with living in an apartment?

题目分析：

In big business cities there are two options available for the type of accommodation: houses and apartments. Some people prefer to live in apartments and some like to live in houses.（开头段还是典型的介绍背景和改写原题观点）

In big business cities, where almost everyone is going out daily for work or study, apartments provide a much more comfortable and safe way of living.（从第一句我们就能明确把握本段要讲 apartments 的优势）The advantages include the fact that there is one key and lock they have to take care of, and also the sense of being a part of a big family. Usually a guard sits at the main gate, so children can play around in the compound with their next door friends. In addition, not much daily cleaning is required in apartments as no staircase has to be clean, which is a difficult task — all house wives know it very well. But a key advantage is that it is safe to go on vacation for a long trip.（分论点和支持句各自的位置都相当明显）

On the other hand, houses have their own attraction for its inhabitants. Garden lovers usually prefer houses as they can have their own garden. It is also easy to keep a pet, especially a dog in a house because dog can play around the garden. If someone is interested in maintaining cars himself, it can only be possible in house where one can have his own garage.（这段讲 houses 的优势其实是谈到了 gardens，pets 和 cars 三方面的内容，但是因为缺乏好的 linkers 联系词，导致这一段看起来很像“流水账”。而且考官的评语里也明确说了 There is some under-use of cohesive devices and some incorrect referencing. 对于要考 7 的童鞋们这一段可以作为失败的教训来吸取）

Where people are sometimes much more concerned about their privacy, living in apartments can be very difficult for them. It may also be the case that someone is not able to deal with other people, for instance next door neighbors, and then house can be a best choice for such people.（这段的分论点和支持句的关系很清晰，部分地扭转了上一段的败局，不过段内的句子离“地道”还有一定差距。）

However, sometimes houses can be a bad choice for low income people. Maintaining a big house and running it properly can be a problem for such cases.（这段写 houses 的弊端，与考官范文相比仍然可以看到该考生英文表达能力的局限性）

At the end I must say both options can be good or bad, depending on the personal considerations. But from my point of view, I must say apartments seem a gift for modern way of life which is not common in my home town.（结尾段提出自己倾向主体第一段的内容）

全文结构清晰，论证充实，词汇使用比较准确。但是该考生写句子的能力明显可以进一步提高，部分段落甚至陷入完全缺失连接词、机械堆积句子的误区，真的应该好好看看 Day 5 了。

事实胜于雄辩，我们在看了一系列剑桥高分范文后，明显能感受到下述7个方面：

① 高分范文一定是**严格扣题**的作文，不需要用模板，但必须要确保有清晰的结构。逻辑上采用折中式的比一边倒多（事实上，剑5～剑8后面的A类和G类**所有**考官范文**没有任何一篇**采用一边倒的写法）。而且**对每一方除了提出总论点外，一般还会再深入提出2～3个明确的分论点**。看了这么多考官实例后如果您依旧对难度较大的一边倒写法痴心不改，那么请研读本书姐妹篇《十天突破IELTS写作完整真题库与6-9分范文全解》。

② 高分范文都有不少准确使用的**连词**，而其本质则是**比较复杂（但在雅思作文中其实也并不是非常复杂）的逻辑关系**。因此，请认真学习Day 5的连接词，并牢记主体段内各分论点后面的**支持句是高分作文中使用连词最密集的位置**。

③ 高分范文在每个分论点后面一定会写1～2句，甚至3句**支持句**。支持句的意思并不需要很高深，只要是有一些关联度的解释性句子就可以了（但对连词和特殊句式要特别掌握熟练，请再次复习Day 4最后一节与Day 5全天）。有些剑桥考官满分作文的不同支持句之间甚至出现了重复的意思。IELTS考官们不是"犀利哥"（Brother sharp），但却是对英语写作的基本功掌握得非常扎实的一群人。

④ 高分范文里一定会出现一些加分词汇（通常是6～8个）和加分句型（大约5个左右），**但是也不会过多**。请认真复习Day 3的加分词汇和Day 6的重点句型。

⑤ 高分范文的**结尾段**通常会重申上文的倾向性（但用词上和主体段尽量不要完全一样，尽量展现出你领悟了用词与句式多样化的真谛，"牛牛"请复习附录Ⅰ"211工程"与Day4），而且考官范文的结尾段最后通常还提出**建议**。

⑥ 高分范文即使出现了语法和拼写错误个数也较少（4～5个）。雅思写作是旗帜鲜明的语言能力考试，对于连词、句式、语法等写作基本功的要求比对思维能力的要求高。

⑦ "敢写"真的很重要，多看多练之外，还要有足够的自信和勇气。Don't sell yourself short.

结论：从大量剑桥范文不难看出，作为典型的语言能力测试，雅思议论文部分的本质仍然是对英语**写作基本功**的考查。在素材方面，大量剑桥高分范文体现出的是reasonable（合理的），而不是profound（深刻的）。明确了这一点之后，我们就真的不应再片面地追求"深刻"，而忽视对IELTS作文来说更重要的表达能力的提高了。

本章第2页“老师应该鼓励学生独立思考”的可能翻译方法：

① Teachers should encourage their students to think independently.

② Teachers should encourage students to think on their own / by themselves / for themselves. (Please note that to think for oneself does not mean to be only concerned about one's best interests. Rather, it means to see things from one's own unique point of view.)

③ Teachers should encourage students to become independent learners.

④ Teachers should motivate students to think independently.

⑤ Teachers are supposed to encourage students to think out of the box. (idiomatic)

⑥ Independent thinking should be encouraged and inspired in class.

⑦ Teachers would be well-advised to allow students to think creatively.

⑧ Independent thinking is highly desirable in class.

⑨ Students' independent thinking abilities are crucial.

⑩ Self-motivation and critical thinking should be cultivated / fostered / nurtured.

每日一练 Question of the Day

分析练习

请利用上一章和本章学到的内容迅速确定下面雅思真题的结构和主体段分论点：

1 Some people think students should study together while others think they should be taught alone. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.

2 Some people think visitors to other countries should follow local customs and behaviour while others disagree and think that the host country should welcome cultural differences. Discuss.

3 Many people work at home using modern technology today. Some people think only the workers benefit from this, not the employers. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

4 Many wild animals are still not protected by humans today. What are the causes of this phenomenon and what are your solutions or disagree?

填空练习

下面是一篇达到6.5分的考生作文，请根据今天学到的模板在空格里填上恰当的内容。

题目：*Criminals should not be sent to prison. They should be given education and training instead. To what extent do you agree?*

Today, the issue of whether ❶ _____ has attracted much public attention. Some people think that ❷ _____. By contrast, many others hold the opinion that ❸ _____.

On the one hand, I can find some arguments to support the assertion that ❹ _____. For example, society profits from this method to ensure its safety and stability. ❺ _____. Also, imprisonment is more efficient in making the criminals realise that they have done something wrong. ❻ _____. Additionally, the possibility of being put in jail can effectively prevent some potential criminals from actually committing a crime. ❼ _____.

On the other hand, I would admit that that education and training may also contribute to the reform of criminals. The main reason for this is that ⑧ _____. Therefore, it would be easier for these criminal trainees to find employment opportunities after their release from prison. A weak point of this argument is that ⑨ _____. How to motivate criminals to learn would be a problem prison officers have to face.

Thus, in spite of the fact that ⑩ _____, the claim that ⑪ _____ is a convincing one. Consequently, I would insist that putting criminals in prison is necessary while education and training can be provided for criminals who will be set free soon.

练习答案 Answer Key

分析练习

① 典型的折中式 Argumentation，四段式：

用 TM STREEC $ 分析后，确定主体段第一段倾向一起学习，写三个分论点。

☆ Interaction with other students can effectively enhance their efficiency in their studies.
☆ Studying together enables students to exchange ideas with one another.
☆ Studying together cultivates team spirit.

主体段第二段写让步段，谈单独学习也有好处，然后再指出这种观点的一点不足之处。

☆ Studying alone helps students better concentrate on study.
☆ Always studying alone may render students unwilling to communicate with and to learn from other students.

② 典型的折中式 Argumentation，四段式：

用 TM STREEC $ 分析后，确定主体段第一段倾向应该适应当地风俗，写三个分论点。

☆ Adapting to the local customs and behaviour helps avoid conflicts between tourists and local residents.
☆ Adjusting to the local customs helps visitors better understand the culture of the recipient country.
☆ Learning about the local customs affords visitors pleasure and entertainment.

主体段第二段写让步段，写保持文化差异也有好处，再指出这种观点的一个不足之处。

☆ On the other hand, having to adapt to the local culture may make some tourists feel uneasy and upset.
☆ Most tourists only stay in their destination country for a short while; therefore, some learning and adapting are not so unacceptable to them.

③ 典型的折中式 Argumentation，四段式：

用 TM STREEC $ 分析后，确定主体段第一段倾向对员工有好处，写三个分论点。

☆ Working at home makes employees feel their rights are respected and they are allowed some freedom in choosing the way best suited to them.

☆ Working at home is beneficial to employees' physical and mental health.

☆ Working at home enables employees to economise on clothing and transportation costs.

主体段第二段写让步段，写在家上班对老板也有好处，再指出这种观点的一个不足之处。

☆ On the other hand, having employees working at home allows employers to save rent and utilities（水电气等）costs.

☆ If not properly managed, having workers working at home may render some employees unmotivated and inefficient.

4 典型的 Report，四段式：

用 TM STREEC $ 分析后，确定主体段第一段写人类不保护动物的三点原因。

☆ Illegal animal trading can bring the traders huge profit.

☆ Many people threaten the lives and livelihood of wild animals by destroying the environment animals live in.

☆ Some governments have many tasks to fulfill and do not have enough funding for animal protection.

主体段第二段对应上一段写三种解决方案。

☆ The government should enforce stringent laws to stop illegal animal trading.

☆ The media should show programs aiming to raise the public awareness of the importance of preserving the environmental and wild animals.

☆ Private organisations also should contribute to the protection of wild animals.

填空练习

1 sending criminals to prison is an effective method to reform them

2 it is a highly effective and efficient way

3 they should receive education and job training instead

4 putting criminals in jail is an effective means to reform them

5 I would be hard-pressed to imagine how it can be possible for law-abiding citizens to feel secure if all criminals can walk around freely

6 Imprisonment means the loss of a great deal of individual freedom, which would

make many prisons regret the things they have done

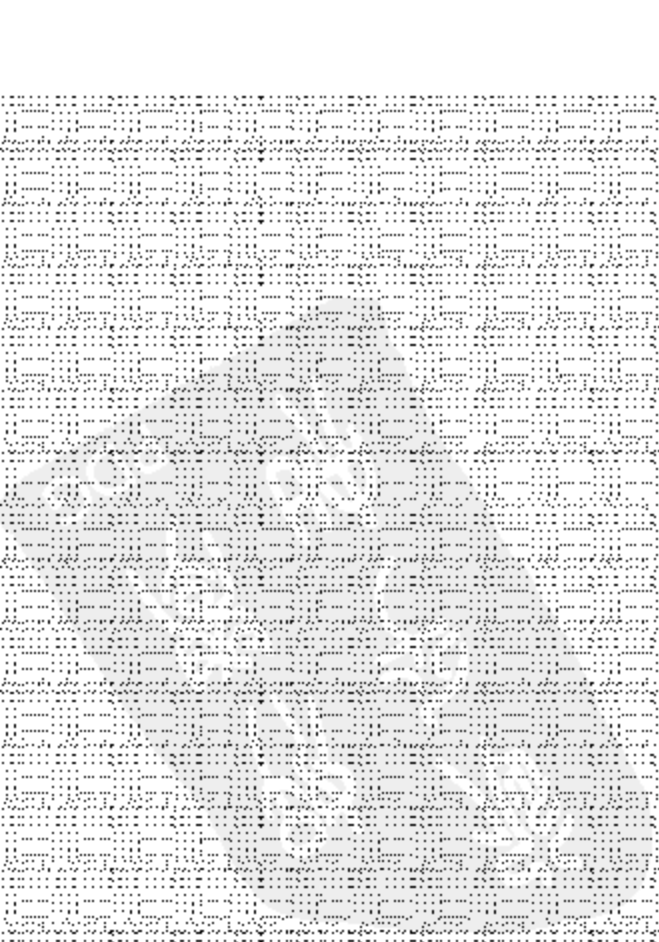
7 As a result, the overall crime rate can be effectively lowered

8 education and training can afford criminals job skills

9 obviously not all criminals are ready to go to a classroom and learn things

10 criminals can benefit from education and training

11 imprisonment is the most effective and efficient way to reform them



Mission Statement

—图表题的3个核心要求

—图表题的3个准备工作

—图表题的3种段落

—图表题的3种特殊题型

—如何打破小作文的时态魔咒

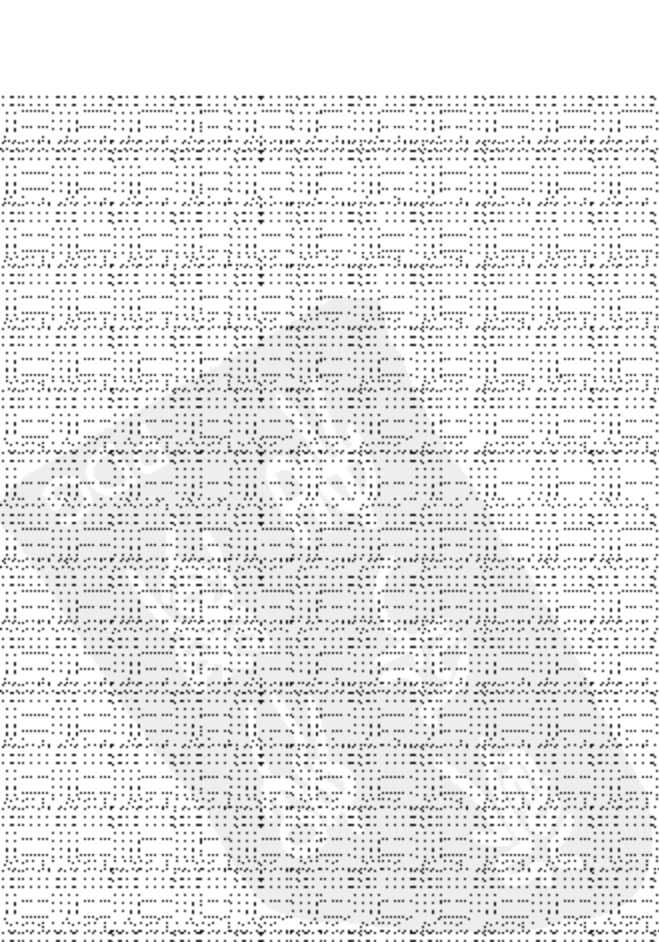
Day 9

图表题，能提前写完吗

Figuring Out a Set of Data

We will have plenty of quantitative data, but not necessarily enough analytical judgment.

— *Pat*



考场如战场，写作考场上如果1小时之内完不成，哪怕多写一分钟考官都会马上走过来在你的试卷上注明违纪。所以即使议论文按时高质量地写完了，如果图表作文浪费过多的时间或者质量不高，仍然可能意味着全局的失败。

图表作文的重要性还不止于此。task 1 虽然只在写作总分中占 1/3 的分数，但请大家牢记一个规律：如果图表作文比议论文低 1 分，它就会把总分下拉 0.5 分。这里给大家算笔账，我们假设一下，如果 task 1 是 5 分而 task 2 是 6 分，写作部分最后的总分数将只有 5.5 而不是 6 分（因为剑桥的计算方法是只有达到 5.75 才能被进为 6）。同样的情况也将出现在需要考 6.5 分甚至 7 分的同学们身上。因此，写作 0.5 分制的出现，迫使我们不能再过于轻视图表作文，如果 task 1 和 task 2 分数差异过大将直接导致总分的下降。

在今天的内容里，我们将以一般雅思写作书中罕见的深入分析，通过大量真题一步一步地向大家展示图表题的操作手法，培养起对图表题的快速反应与高效作战能力。

task 1 的语言特色

很多同学在学校里从来没有用英文描述过数学图表，所以对图表题的语言特色不是很清楚，仍然把议论文的饱含感情色彩的词汇拿到 task 1 来用，结果导致写出的文章和剑桥要求的 task 1 的风格背道而驰。

其实 task 1 是客观性写作，写作风格力求客观真实，最好不要太“激情”。比如我们仔细感受一下下面的几段范文，第一篇是剑 8 中一个考官写的一段话：

These causes affected different regions differently in the 1990s, with Europe having as much as 9.8% of degradation due to deforestation, while the impact of this on Oceania and North America was minimal, with only 1.7% and 0.2% of land affected respectively. Europe, with the highest overall percentage of land degraded (23%), also suffered from over-cultivation (7.7%) and over-grazing (5.5%). In contrast, Oceania had 13% of degraded farmland and this was mainly due to over-grazing (11.3%). North America had a lower proportion of degraded land at only 5%, and the main causes of this were over-cultivation (3.3%) and, to a lesser extent, over-grazing (1.5%).

下面的这段也是选自剑 8 的满分范文：

Expenditure on resources such as books had increased to 20% by 1991 before decreasing to only 9% by the end of the period. In contrast, the cost of furniture and equipment saw an opposite trend. This cost decreased to only 5% of total expenditure in 1991 but rose dramatically in 2011 when it represented 23% of the school budget.

Similarly, the cost of insurance saw a rising trend, growing from only 2% to 8% by 2001.

如果您觉得这两段话用词很精准，真的先不需要盲目崇拜，因为这些都是我们今天会学到的重点词。

下面这段话也是来自剑桥的考官范文：

... In 1940 the proportion of people aged 65 or more stood at only 5% in Japan, approximately 7% in Sweden and 9% in the US. However, while the figures for the Westerns countries grew to about 15 % in around 1990, the figure for Japan dipped to only 2. 5% for much of this period, before rising to almost 5% again at the present time...

我们可以明显地看出，和议论文相比，图表题的语言比较“板”。不过一个很有趣的现象是，它们也使用了我们在议论文部分推荐过的很多重点连词（再次强调，英文里面连词的数量很有限，把 Day 5 的连词学好、用好对于大家今后 N 年的英语写作都大有好处）。

我们最后再来看一篇剑桥给出的高分图表题范文中的一段话：

... London has the oldest underground railway systems among the six cities. It was opened in the year 1863 and it is already 145 years old. Paris is the second oldest, in which it was opened in the year 1900. This was then followed by the opening of the railway systems in Tokyo, Washington DC and Kyoto. Los Angeles has the newest underground railway system, which was only opened in the year 2001. In terms of the size of the railway systems, London has the largest underground railway system. It has 394 kilometers of route in total...

仍然是明确无误地告诉我们，task 1 的语言不能有太强的感情色彩，但是在 Day 5 里学过的连词有不少可以在 task 1 里继续使用。

图表题的 3 个核心要求

我们首先要把握一个大方向，即要分清图表题和议论文的差异在哪里。雅思图表主要有 5 种类型：

table	表格题
line graph	线图（包括直线图和曲线图）
bar chart	柱状图（也叫条形图）
pie chart	饼状图
process diagram	流程图

*好多学生一听到流程图就浑身颤抖，Day 10 我们专门用一天来讲。另外雅思写作中还有一种导致大量考生壮烈牺牲的地图题以及一种较为罕见的物品比较题，大家可以在 Pat“写作三部曲”的另一部《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》中看到详细说明。

图表题和议论文最根本的差异就是图表题是客观性写作而议论文是主观性写作。剑桥给的图表题评分标准比较概念化，不够具体，但根据我自己长期研究考官的范文，终于发现对剑桥的出题者来说，好的图表题应该有 3 个特点：

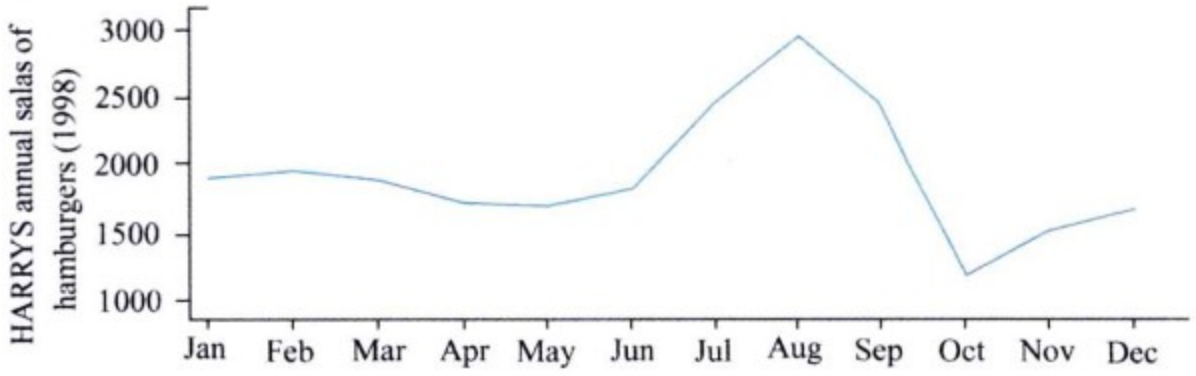
客观性（objectivity）

好的图表作文，不应该有任何自己主观想象的成分。图里面有什么我们介绍什么。即使是结尾段针对图表作出的总结性结论，也不能海阔天空随便写，而应该是根据图表的实际内容作出符合逻辑的总结归纳。

准确性（accuracy）

图表里面的数据要力求精确，一定不能抄错。不过，当一个特征点并没有落在一个准确的坐标值上（比如 500 或者 1000）时，我们还是可以进行合理的目测或者说个大概数值的。以下面的线图（line graph）为例：

例题一



分析：

当介绍到 February 时，我们就不一定非要说个准确数字，而可以简单地说 just under 2000，不过对于 April，由于离 2000 已经有一段距离，就要目测一下（around 1,700）。

详尽性（thoroughness）

这点容易被误解。详尽，其实并不是让大家面面俱到，也不是说一定要把所有数字都抄一遍，而是在时间允许的情况下尽可能多地介绍一些。图表题里有 5 类特征信息，即起点、拐点、终点、交点与变化趋势，如果题目里面出现了，是一定要介绍的。其他的非特征数据，则是根据时间的情况，尽可能多介绍一些，如果非逼迫自己把所有的数字都抄一遍，在实战中很可能写不完或者导致真正重要的信息描述得并不彻底。

决定成败的 3 个准备工作

我经常告诉学生们："决定你图表作文质量的并不是上升、下降、dramatically 那些词汇

（当然那些词确实很常用），而是看你能不能做好 3 个准备工作。”

1. 仔细审题

这一步看起来谁都会，但其实还是挺有学问的。一是看图一定要看清楚单位，如果图上标出了“km^3”（剑桥 6 第一套）、“millions”（剑桥 6 第四套）这样的单位可千万要抄到文章里，否则数量级就全错了；二是要记住，当数字实在看不准时，剑桥是允许你使用“大约”这类词的，比如 about/around/just over/ just under/approximately/roughly 等。而且当关键点没有正好落在坐标轴上时，也允许目测出一个数值。

2. 确定主体段写几段

开头和结尾段是每道题都要写的，但确定主体段到底写几段最好，这一步是很多考生不够重视的一步，但它真的至关重要，甚至直接决定一篇图表题的成败。**分段分得好，怎样写都好写；分段分不好，怎样写都乱。**

对于多数雅思图表题来说，题中给了几个图我们就对应地写几个主体段，比如下面两题。

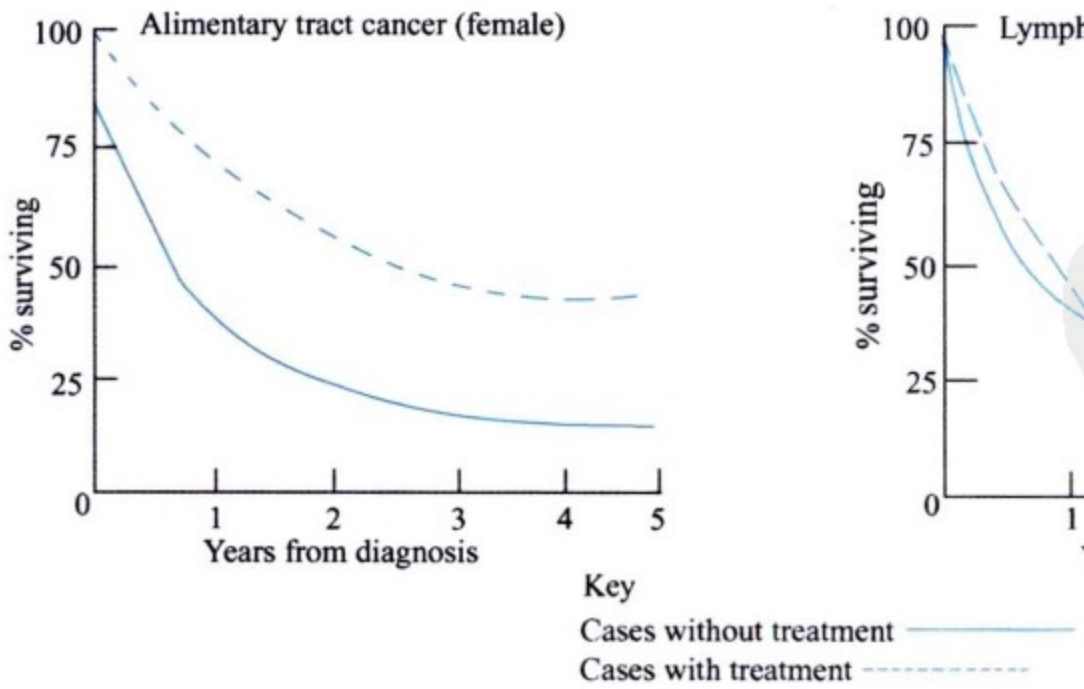
例题二

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graphs below indicate the effect of treatment in two types of cancer in females.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



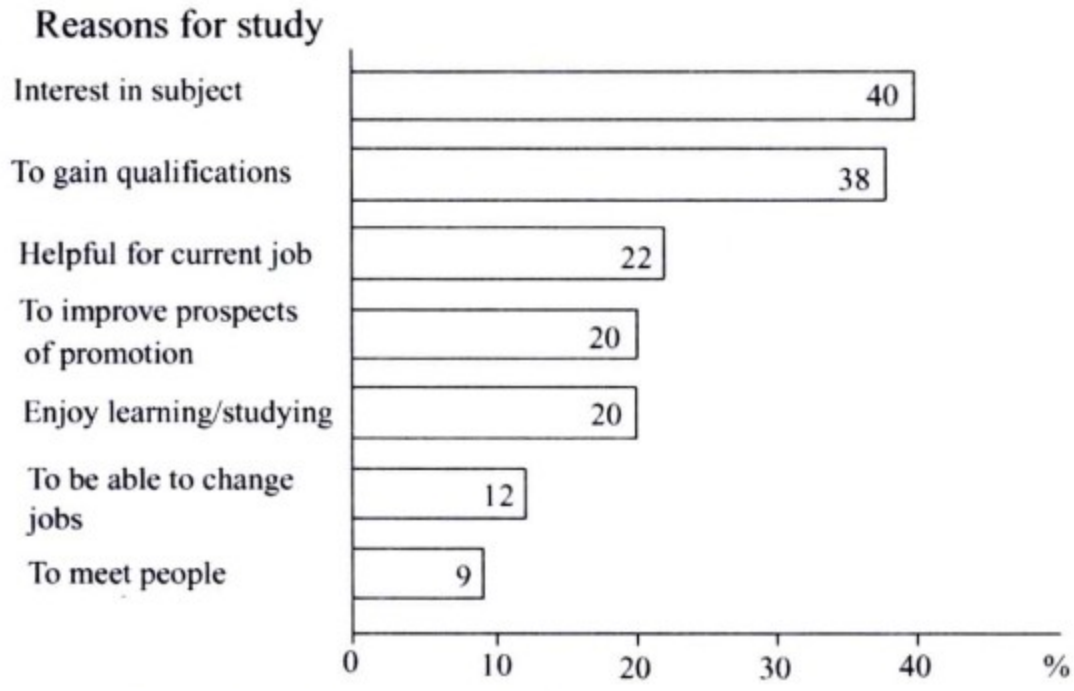
例题三

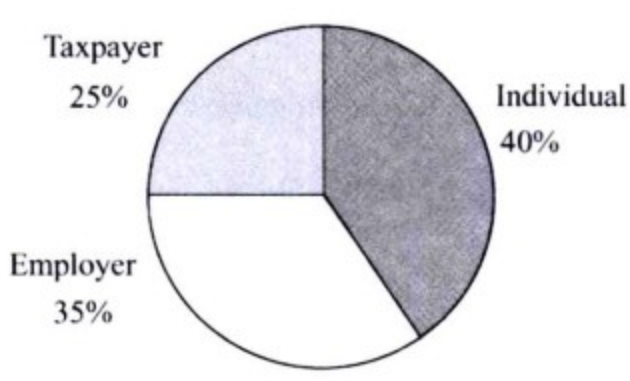
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The charts below show the results of a survey of adult education. The first chart shows the reasons why adults decide to study. The pie chart shows how people think the costs of adult education should be shared.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.





分析：

上面两题都是给出了两个图，所以写两个主体段分别介绍就可以，再加上开头和结尾。

还有一种题是题目里只给出了一个图，比如前面的例题一，那我们就看这一个图里面包含几组图形元素（比如一个线图里含有几根线、一个柱状图含有几根柱或者一个饼图里含有几份），然后对应地每个图形元素写一个主体段。比如例题一，图中只有一条线，那就写一个主体段就好了。再看下面的这道题。

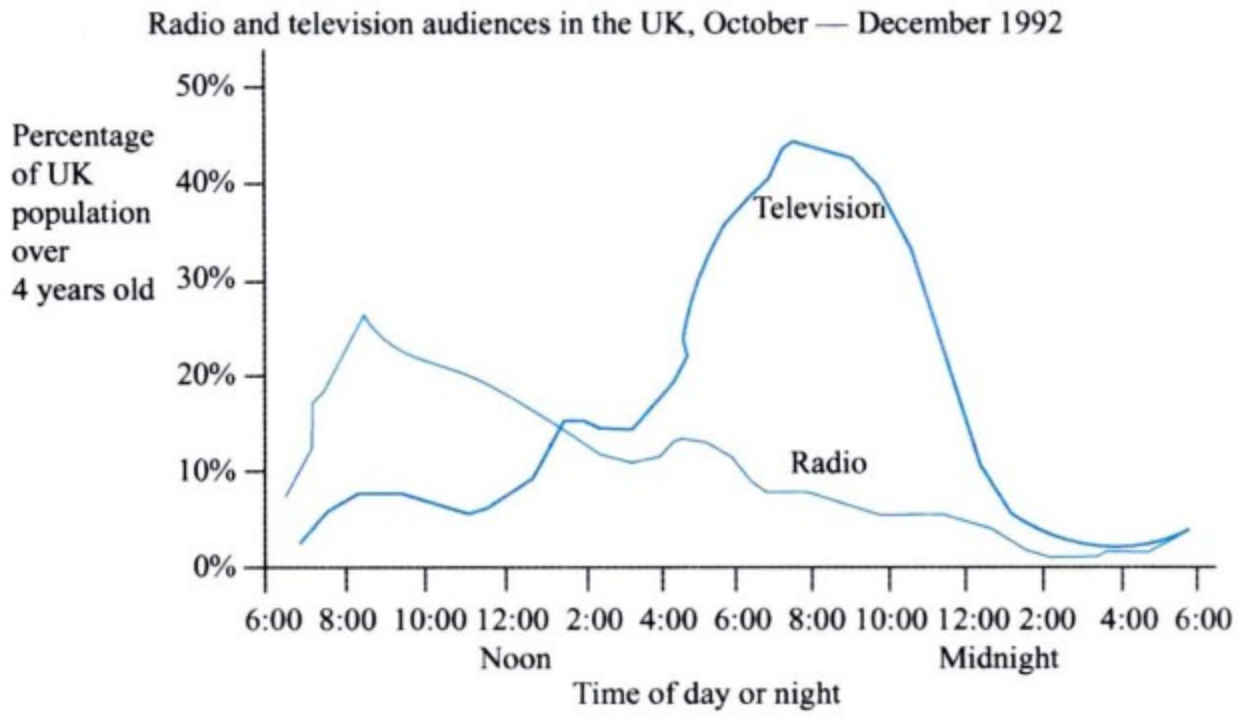
例题四

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph below shows radio and television audiences throughout the day in 1992.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



分析：

这个题只给了一个图但是含有两条线，那我们就可以写两个主体段，再加上开头和结尾。

再看下面这道题目。

例题五

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The following table gives statistics showing the aspects of quality of life in five countries.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.

Country	GNP per head (1982: US dollars)	Daily calorie supply per head	Life expectancy at birth (years)	Infant mortality rates (per 1000 live births)
Bangladesh	140	1877	40	132
Bolivia	570	2086	50	124
Egypt	690	2950	56	97
Indonesia	580	2296	49	87
USA	13160	3652	74	12

分析：

这道题只给出了一个表格，那么我们就既可以按照第一列中的 5 个国家写出 5 个主体段，或者也可以选择按第一行中的 4 类指标写出 4 个主体段，都很好写。

当然，每个图表的分段方法并非只有一种。以上这些题目如果换用别的分段方式也可能写得很好，但既然我们完全可以用更快更清晰的分段方法描述清楚这些题，那么何必要用那些会

占用更多写作时间却并不会多拿分的复杂分段方式呢?

此外，对于图表题主体段的分段技巧，还有几类难度较大的特殊题型，有兴趣的同学可以研究一下本章第六节“图表题的3种特殊题型”。

3. 确定每部分的结构

上面讲了，写图表题第一个准备工作是读题，第二个准备工作是正确划分主体段，接下来的第三个准备工作就是具体确定每一段的结构。

请大家熟悉下面这个结构，并确保在考场里可以熟练使用。

段　落	句　数	作　用
开头段	1 ~2 句	改写原题
主体段 1	1 + X 句	每个主体段第一句总体概括，X 句具体介绍数字
……		
主体段 N		
结尾段	1 ~2 句	结尾段第一句介绍总数 total（但如果题中没有明确给出总数，这句话就不写），第二句话作结论。结论只要是根据图的数据得出的合理规律就可以，并不是只有一个固定答案

请大家绝不要轻视这3步准备工作，因为它们是写好一篇图表作文必备的前提条件。

图表题的3种段落

每篇图表作文都可以分成3种段落：开头段、主体段和结尾段。上一节的表格给大家概括了每段的句数，现在我们深入研究如何写好每一段。

开头段：改写原题，写1~2句

根据我自己的长期总结，开头的转述原题不会超出3种方法：增加单词、删除单词和替换单词。而且转述原题的时候不需要改动过多，把原题改动3~4处就可以了。

下面我们来集中练习开头段，当你把下面的几道题开头段的转述方法都看完的时候，你已经是一个改写开头段的高手了。

例题六

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The table below shows the proportion of different categories of families living in poverty in Australia in 1999.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.

Family type	Proportion of people from each household type living in poverty
single aged person	6% (54,000)
aged couple	4% (48,000)
single, no children	19% (359,000)
couple, no children	7% (211,000)
sole parent	21% (232,000)
couple with children	12% (933,000)
all households	11% (1, 837,000)

分析：

原题中 show 可以替换成 describe/ illustrate/ demonstrate/summarise/ outline/ indicate；proportion（比例）可以替换成 percentage；categories（种类）可以替换成 kinds/ types；families 可以替换成 households；families living in poverty（贫穷）可以整体替换成 poor families。

下表是我总结出的图表题同义词代换表：

the UK	Britain
proportion	percentage
information	data
number	figure
family	household
males	men
females	women
influence	affect (*v.*) /effect (*n.*)
categories	kinds / types
demand	need
subway	underground railway
store	shop
university	college
show	describe/illustrate/demonstrate/summarise/outline/indicate

例题七

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The chart below shows the different levels of post-school qualifications in Australia and the proportion of men and women who held them in 1999.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.

分析：

这道题目正文中的 chart 可以加一个单词扩充成 bar chart；show 可以换成 describe；proportion 可以换成 percentage；men and women 可以换成 males and females。

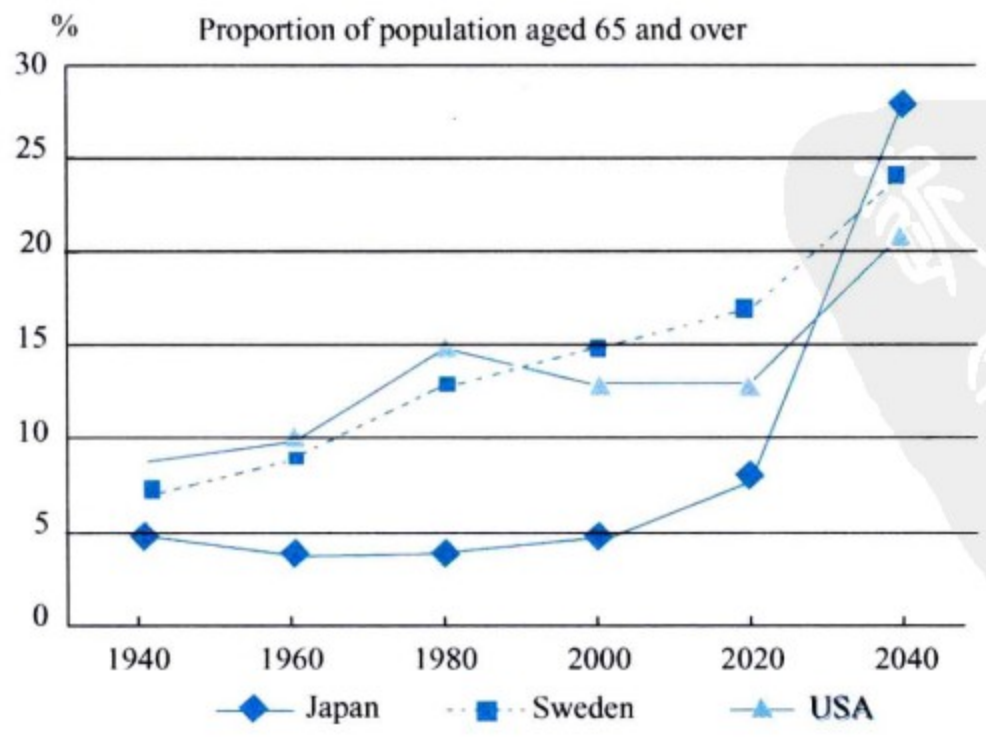
例题八

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph below shows the proportion of the population aged 65 and over between 1940 and 2040 in three different countries.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



分析：

原题正文中 graph 可以加单词扩充成 line graph；show 换成 describe；proportion 换成 percentage；population 可以换成 people；three different countries 后面可以加上短横线再加上三个国名：Japan，Sweden and the USA。

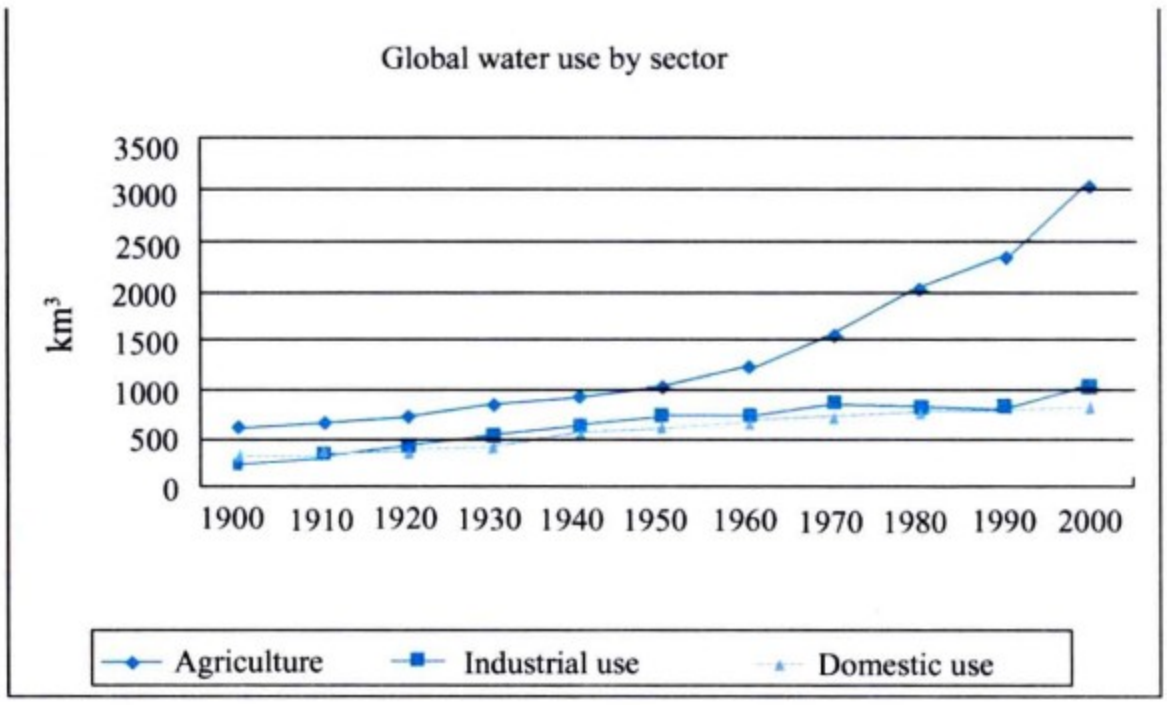
例题九

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph and table below give information about water use worldwide and water consumption in two different countries.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



Water consumption in Brazil and Congo in 2000

Country	Population	Irrigated land	Water consumption per person
Brazil	176 million	26,500 km^2	359 m^3
Democractic Republic of Congo	5. 2 million	100 km^2	8 m^3

按照我们上面讲过的方法瞬间就可改为下面的形式：

The line graph describes data about water use worldwide while the table shows information about consumption in two different countries — Brazil and Congo.

过去 3 年的图表作文题我几乎全部用这种转述的方法试验过，每道题都可以很快改完，希望大家认真掌握。

主体段：写 1 + X 句，第一句总概括本段，X 句按顺序介绍数据

第 1 句的作用是概括总体变化趋势或者概括图由哪几个部分组成。根据 Pat 的写作经验：对于有时间变化的图，比如多数的 line graph 和 bar chart，概括总体趋势（上升、下降或者波动）的情况比较多。而对于没有时间推移的图，比如多数的 pie chart 和 table，则明显是概括由几部分组成的情况更多（具体写法请您认真学习下文的例题）。

主体段的 X 句是具体的数据介绍，通过长期的写作实践 Pat 总结出了 3 个要点。真正理解这 3 个要点之后您会发现，其实介绍数据是件相当机械的事情，没有什么技术含量：

❶ 数据应尽可能按照顺序介绍，跳跃介绍往往得不偿失。

❷ 取舍数字的原则是：如果题目中的数字很少，那么就尽量多介绍一些，否则很有可能导致文章的字数无法达到要求。但是如果题目中的数字较多，那么官方要求是允许合理舍弃一些非特征数字的。不过，一般如果题目中出现了下面的 4 类信息，那么一般是不建议舍弃的：起点、拐点（注意拐点并不一定是极值，极值只会有两个，而拐点的数量一般会多于两个，这点请大家思考一下就明白了）、终点，以及特征点之间的变化趋势。还有 line graph 的交点，如果写作时间够也可以介绍一下。

另一方面，我问过环球雅思的几位前任与现任考官，他们对哪些数字必须介绍其实也没有绝对的依据（坦白地说，IELTS 考官虽然英语比你好，可数学却真的不见得比中国孩子好，雅思图表的核心任务是考语言而不是考“奥数”），主要也还是看考生是不是确实具备了一定的用英文描述数字的能力。所以请大家牢记取舍数字总的原则是：首先要保证文章的字数达到要求，如果肯定能达到要求，那么在时间允许的前提下尽量多介绍，而且特征数字最好不要轻易漏掉就好了。

❸ 考前请认真研究 table，line graph，bar chart 和 pie chart 的范文各一篇。

例题十

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The first chart below shows the results of a survey which sampled a cross-section of 100,000 people asking if they traveled abroad and why they traveled for the period 1994-1998. The second chart shows their destinations over the same period.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.

VISITS ABROAD BY UK RESIDENTS BY PURPOSE OF VISIT (1994 ~ 1998)

	1994	1995	1996	1997	1998
Holiday	15,246	14,898	17,896	19,703	20,700
Business	3,155	3,188	3,249	3,639	3,957

（续表）

VISITS ABROAD BY UK RESIDENTS BY PURPOSE OF VISIT（1994～1998）					
Visits to friends and relatives	2,689	2,628	2,774	3,051	1,181
Other reasons	982	896	1,030	1,054	990
TOTAL	22,072	21,610	24,949	27,447	28,828

DESTINATIONS OF VISITS ABROAD BY UK RESIDENTS BY MAIN REGION（1994～1998）				
	Western Europe	**North America**	**Other areas**	**Total**
1994	19,371	919	1,782	22,072
1995	18,944	914	1,752	21,610
1996	21,877	1,167	1,905	24,949
1997	23,661	1,559	2,227	27,447
1998	24,519	1,823	2,486	28,828

分析：

如果非要把这么多数据在20分钟里做全部介绍恐怕比登天还难。这道题我们可以写两个主体段。第一个主体段描述第一个表格，写1994～1998年的旅行原因分成4类，然后把每类的起点、变化趋势、拐点和终点写出来。第二个主体段写旅行去的地区分成3类，然后把每类的特征数据和趋势按顺序写出来。非特征数据在这道题描述第二个表格里完全可以忽略。

同时请大家牢记：主体段介绍数据和趋势的时态是由图中所给的时间来决定的。如果题目里的数据和趋势的时间是过去或者将来的时间，您就需要对应调整时态。

下面给大家展示几个高分图表作文的主体段。

例题十一（表格题主体段范例）

The table below summarises some data collected by a college bookshop for the month of February 1998.

Write a report describing the sales figures of various types of publications, based on the information shown in the table.

	Non-Book Club Members			**Book Club Members**	**Total**
	College Staff	**College Students**	**Members of Public**		
Fiction	44	31	-	76	151
Non-Fiction	29	194	122	942	1287
Magazines	332	1249	82	33	1696
Total	405	1474	204	1051	3134

分析：

这道表格题的开头段按照前面讲的转述方法很快就能写出来。

The table describes some sales figures gathered by a college bookstore for February, 1998.

这道题的主体段可以有两种分段方法：一是按照买书人的身份分成 non-book club members 和 book club members 两个主体段；二是按照 3 类书分成 fiction，non-fiction 和 magazines 三个主体段。下面这个段落是按前一种分法写的，很清晰地介绍了 non-book club members 这类人的数据。

请大家仔细体会下面这个高分主体段 1 +X 的写法。

We can see from the table that（由图可见）the non-book club member figures are made up of sales to college staff, college students and members of the public.（这句是概括本段包含几个组成部分）. More specifically（具体来说）, college staff bought 332 magazines, 44 fiction and 29 non-fiction books while college students bought 1249 magazines, 194 non-fiction books and 31 fiction books. More magazines were sold to college students than any other group of customers.（这句的作用是强调最大值）In contrast, although non-fiction books were sold to members of the public,（这句的作用是强调最小值）they bought 122 non-fiction books and 82 magazines.

主体段第一句开头“由图可见”的写法还有如下几种方式：

According to the（图表名称），……

As shown in the（图表名称），……

As can be seen from the（图表名称），……

We can see from the（图表名称）that...

It is manifest from the（图表名称）that...

主体段第二句开头“具体来说”的写法还有下面几种方式：

To be more exact, ... =More exactly

To be more precise, ... =More precisely

To be more specific, ... =More specifically

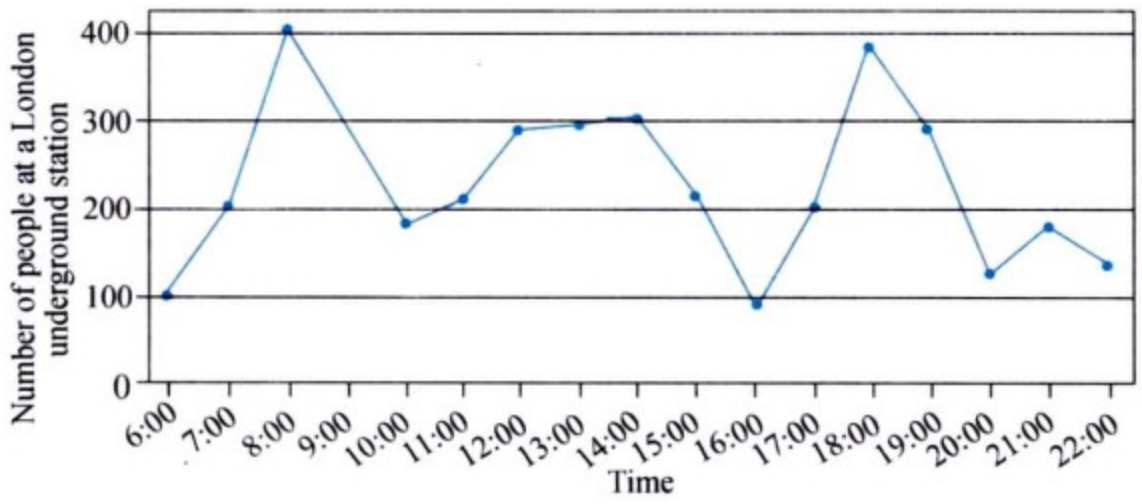
例题十二（线图主体段范例）

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph below shows the number of people at a London underground station from 6:00 to 22:00.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



分析：

这道题的开头段用前面讲的转述方法瞬间就可以转述为：

The line graph illustrates the data about people at a London subway station from 6am to 10pm.

主体段我们还用 1 + X 的形式，第一句写整体趋势是波动，第二句之后开始按顺序抄数字，出现最大值和最小值时强调一句，如下文：

As we can see from the line graph（由图可见），the number of people using this station fluctuates（波动）over these 16 hours.（第一句概括本段整体趋势）More specifically（具体来说），at first at 6am the number of people at the station stands at only 100. Then, the number shoots up over the next two hours, peaking at 400 at 8am. After that, the number declines rapidly for two hours, bottoming out at 180 at 10am. The period between 10 o'clock and 12 o'clock experiences a slight growth in the number of people in the station, with the number reaching 280 at midday. Numbers in the following two hours level off at just under 300 people. From this point onwards, the number plunges to only 100 from 2pm to 4pm. The next two hours experiences a sharp rise again, with 6pm arriving at 380 people. After 6pm, the number falls again, reaching the low point of 130 at 8pm. The period from 8pm to 10pm sees a slight rise, but finally the number of people declines again from 180 at 9pm to 135 at 10pm.

特别注意：这个主体段中使用了大量表示时间推移的短语，比如 **at first（=initially）, then, after that, from this point onwards, finally（=eventually）** 等，此外在地道英文中还有 subsequently（此后），afterwards（接下来）这两个副词。这些单词或词组可以明显打破不断地使用 at 6 o'clock, at 8 o'clock 来开始句子而产生的单调感。

主体段介绍数据或描述变化趋势的常用词详解（每组最多背3个就足够，例句也要看）

主体段介绍数据或描述变化趋势的常用词详解（每组最多背3个就足够，例句也要看）

最常用的动词

表示上升的动词

go up（went up）　　increase（increased）
★ rise（rose）　　ascend（ascended）
grow（grew）

括号里是过去时，其中，rise 和 increase 也可以作名词。另外名词的上升/下降还经常可以用 an upward/downward trend 来表达。

例句： Expenditure on resources such as books had increased to 20% by 1991 before decreasing to only 9% by the end of the period.（剑8例句）

例句： The consumption of chicken showed an upward trend, exceeding（超过）that of lamb in 1980.

小作文中的“超过”可以用 exceed /overtake / surpass 表达

表示急剧上升的动词

jump（jumped）　　★ shoot up（shot up）
surge（surged）　　★ soar（soared）

其中 surge 也可以作名词用。

例句： The spending on research and development soared to 2. 7 million pounds in 1990. ·

表示下降的动词

★ decline　　★ dip
fall　　decrease
★ drop　　descend
sink

其中 decline，fall，drop，decrease 也经常作名词用。

例句： Other workers' salaries saw a fall from 28% in 1981 to only 15% of spending in 2001.（剑8例句）

例句： The figure for the US dipped to only 4% for much of this period, which was the lowest in the figures for these countries.

表示急剧下降的动词

★ plummet　　plunge

例句： The average（平均的）price of tennis racquets plummeted to 79 pounds in 1990.

表示由……组成的词组（经常用在主体段开头第一句话用来概括组成部分）

★ be made up of　　be composed of

★ consist of　　comprise/be comprised of

例句： Households（家庭）that consisted of only one parent or a single adult were less likely to be poor（7%）.

表示波动的动词

★ fluctuate

不及物动词，其名词形式为 fluctuation，经常搭配为 fluctuate between... and...

例句： In spite of some fluctuations in the expected percentages, the proportion of older people will continue to rise in the next two decades.

表示稳定在一个水平上的词组

level off at　　stabilise at

★ level out at　　reached a plateau at

hover at　　★ remain stable at

例句： Its consumption levels remained stable at around 14% over the three decades.

表示经历了某种变化的及物动词

★ see　　experience

witness

例句： The cost of furniture and equipment saw an opposite trend（相反的趋势）.（剑 8 例句）

表示到达最高点的词组

★ peak at　　reach the peak at

reach the highest point at

请注意 peak 不仅可以用作动词，有时也可以当作名词使用。

表示到达最低点的词组

★ reach the bottom at	bottom out at
the lowest point at	

其中，bottom 可以作名词。

表示到达多少数量的及物动词或词组

reach	hit
★ arrive at	register
★ amount to	stand at

表示占多少（后面跟%百分数或者数字）的动词

★ account for	make up
★ represent	occupy
★ constitute	

剑 8 例句： This cost decreased to only 5% of total expenditure in 1991 but rose dramatically in 2011 when it represented 23% of the school budget.

Overall, teachers' salaries constituted the largest cost to the school.

表示对将来数字的预测的及物动词

★ expect	predict
project	

请注意这三个单词在小作文中经常是以被动形式出现的

常用句型：A is expected/ projected/ predicted to reach ...

例句： The proportion（比例）of elderly people in all three countries is expected to increase to almost 25%.

最常用的形容词/副词

表示速度快的形容词

sharp	rapid
★ dramatic（dramatically）	precipitous
drastic（drastically）	★ steep

除特别注明副词形式均加 -ly。

例句： A more dramatic rise is predicted between 2030 and 2040.

表示缓慢、逐渐或者持续的形容词

★ gradual（gradually）　　gentle（gently）
★ steady（steadily）　　slow
★ consistent

副词加 -ly，其中 gradually/steadily 特别常用，表示“持续稳定地（上升或下降）”

例句： The number of people working as scientists and technicians in industrialised countries increased steadily from 55 to 85 per 1,000 people between 1980 and 1990.

表示大幅度的形容词

★ marked　　significant
★ substantial

副词加 -ly，注意 substantially 是一个很常用的副词，类似的副词还有 considerably

例句： The consumption of fast food also declined, but much less significantly.

表示小幅度的形容词

modest　　★ slight
moderate　　★ marginal（副词加 -ly）
★ minimal（这个形容词表示“极少的”，请特别注意它与 minimum“最少的”之间的细微区别）

例句： Italy's spending on personal stereos is only marginally（很小幅度地）greater than that of Germany.

剑 8 例句： The impact of this on North America was minimal, with ony 0.2% of land affected.

Water used in the industrial and domestic sectors also increased, but consumption was minimal until mid-century.

表示大约的副词或词组

about　　roughly
around　　★ just over
★ approximately　　★ just under

例句： In 1940 the proportion of people aged 65 and over stood at approximately 7% in Sweden.

表示分别的副词

respectively（用在句子结尾，表示两组元素分别对应）

例句： Globally, 65% of degradation is caused by too much animal grazing and tree clearance, constituting 35% and 30% respectively.（剑 8 例句）

特别注意：

➡（1）对比与类比

关于准备 task 1 的用词还有一点要特别提醒大家的是：虽然多数国内考生都能把表示快速、慢速、上升和下降的词汇背得异常熟练，但是像上面列出的表示“占……”、“稳定”、“逐渐”这些常用词汇朋友们却往往容易忽视。希望您能在小作文里积极使用 ***account for* + 数字/百分数，*level off at* + 数字，*gradually* / *steadily*/ *consistently*（持续地）**……这些同样也很拿分但却相对“冷门”的词汇。

另外，下面这些表示类比 / 对比的词汇也非常值得高分考生记忆：

类比：

Similarly, / Likewise, ...　（类似的，……，多用在句首来引出类比）

例句： Similarly, the cost of insurance saw a rising trend, growing from only 2% to 8% by 2001.（剑 8 例句）

例句： Likewise, in terms of the number of years of schooling received, we can see that the length of time people spent at school in these countries was much greater in 1980.

对比：

Unlike ..., ...　（与……不同……，多用在句首表示对比）

In comparison, ...　（比较来说，……）

By/ In contrast, ...　（对比来说，……）

A... while / whereas B...　（A……而 B 则……）

例句： Expenditure on resources such as books had increased to 20% by 1991 before decreasing to only 9% by the end of the period. By/In contrast（用于句子之间的对比）, the cost of furniture and equipment saw an opposite trend.（剑 8 例句）

例句： Europe had as much as 9. 8% of degradation due to deforestation, while/whereas the impact of this on Oceania and North America was minimal.（剑 8 例句）

（while/whereas 用于表示一句话内部主句与从句间的对比）

提示： 需要写作 7 分的同学还可以仔细研读附录 I 中第二个表格给出的 task 1 有效替换表达。

➡ (2) 表示时间的“三好”介词

介绍图表题里的时间，国内的同学们对于 in，from，to 这三个介词已经用得相当纯熟，但却经常忽视另外三个在英式写作中极端常用的介词 by（截止至某一时期），during（在某一期间）与 over（跨越某个时期）。可惜，剑桥考官早已悄然把这三个介词用得出神入化。

剑 8 例句：

Expenditure on resources such as books had increased to 20% by 1991 before decreasing to only 9% by the end of the period.

During this 25-year period the consumption of beef and lamb fell dramatically to approximately 100 grams and 55 grams respectively.

Worldwide obesity（肥胖症）rates doubled over the same time period.

➡ (3) remain 是个坑

remain 是一个国内同学们喜闻乐见也很爱用的词。用 remain 本来是个好习惯，遗憾的是不少考生写这个词的结果却是导致扣分。remain 并不是一个普通的动词，而是一个系动词，简单地说就是它后面的成分可以是形容词或者名词，却不能是副词。

剑 8 例句：

While other workers' salaries saw a fall from 28% in 1981 to only 15% of spending in 2001, teachers' pay remained the biggest cost, reaching 50% of total spending in 1991 and ending at 45% in 2001.

Although it remained the least popular food, its consumption levels were the most stable.

The steel price remained constant（稳定不变的，注意这里就不能写 constantly）in the first quarter of the year.

➡ (4)“对应的”未必就是 same

Pat 发现一些同学在描写涉及两个或以上图表之间比较的题时经常会用 same 这个词来表示“对应的（时期或者变化）”。但有些对应元素间却未必是相同的，还非要用 same 就显得牵强。其实图表写作里有一个形容词 corresponding，酷似中文的“相对应的”。请仔细体会以下实例。

剑 8 例句：

While spending increased dramatically for equipment and insurance, there were

corresponding drops in expenditure on things such as books and on other workers' salaries.

As the course became more difficult, there was a corresponding drop in attendance (出勤).

上面这两句话中的 corresponding 就不能用 same 来代替。

Company losses were 40% worse than in the corresponding period last year. (这句话里的 corresponding 倒是可以用 same 来替换，如果不怕没特色的话)

➡ (5) 光阴的故事

大家都知道现在分词（verb + ing）和过去分词（verb + ed）可以用来反映出时间的变化。但在 task 1 作文中，除了我们在前面 Day 4 中讲过的十二种英语句式多样化手法依然行之有效外，把现在分词短语和过去分词短语放在句子后部也是一种十分给力的说明变化趋势细节并且制造出句式变化效果的手法。多数国内考生对这种 task 1 作文句式多样化手法完全不了解，而惯用这种技巧的剑桥考官们却早就没事儿偷着乐了。请您仔细体会下面的这些《剑 8》例句：

剑 8 例句：

The cost of insurance saw a rising trend, growing from only 2% to 8% by 2001. (现在分词短语放在句子后部，细化发展趋势)

Teachers' pay remained the biggest cost, reaching 50% of total spending in 1991 and ending at 45% in 2001. (现在分词短语放在句子后部，详述变化趋势)

65% of degradation is caused by too much animal grazing and tree clearance, constituting 35% and 30% respectively. (现在分词短语放在句子后部，分别解释数字)

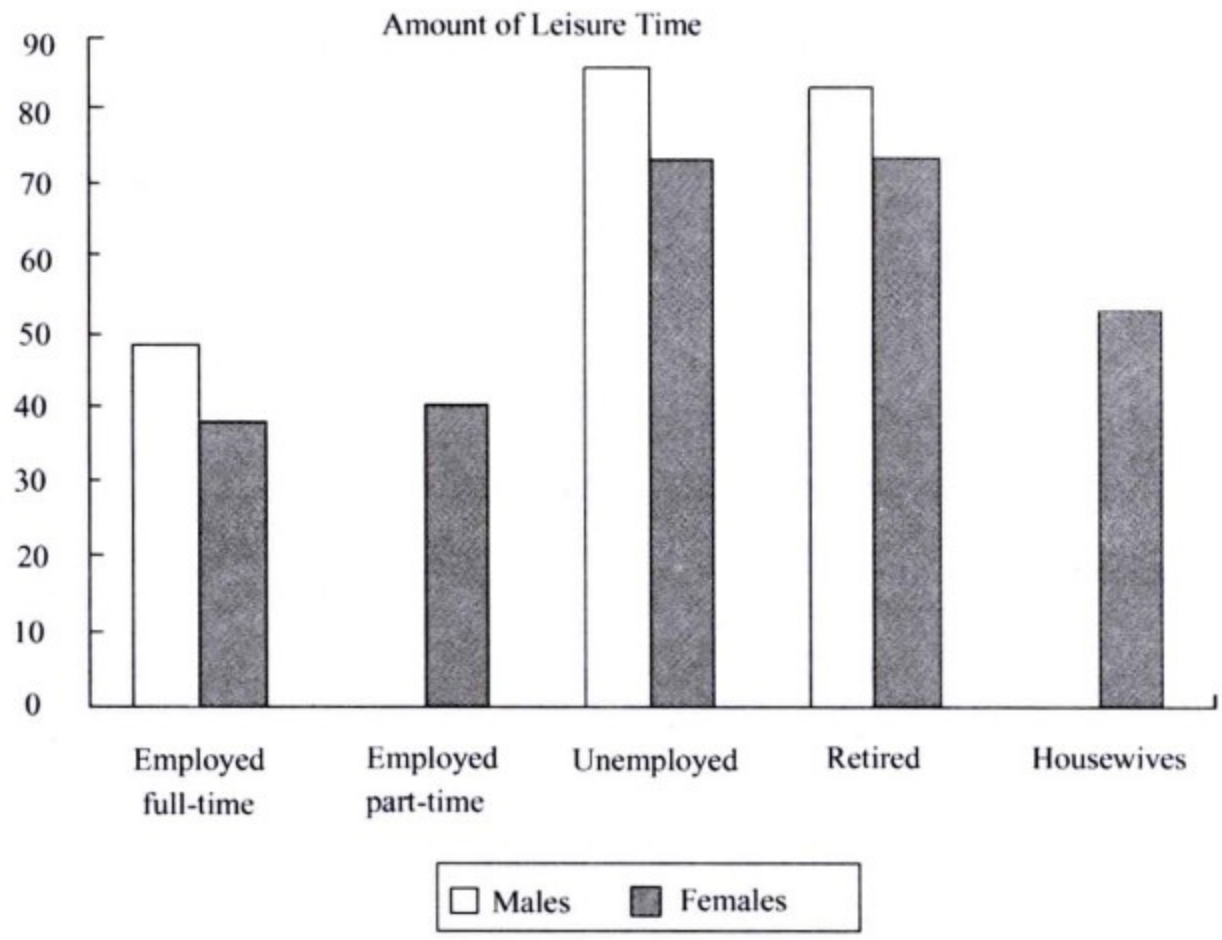
The impact of this on North America was minimal, with only 0.2% of land affected. (with + 过去分词短语放在句子后部，表示被动)

例题十三（柱状图主体段范例）

The chart below shows the amount of leisure time enjoyed by men and women of different employment status in March, 2002.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



开头段可以用我们在前面讲过的转述方法快速转述如下：

The bar chart indicates the data of leisure time enjoyed by males and females of different job status in the month of March, 2002.

主体段我们仍然采用 1 +X 的结构。

We can see from the bar chart that（由图可见）in the employed full-time, unemployed and retired groups, men enjoyed more leisure time than women. Specifically（具体来说），men employed full-time had 48 hours of leisure time while their female counterparts only enjoyed 38 hours. In the unemployed group, men enjoyed 85 hours of leisure time whilst ladies only had 75. In the retired category, males had 83 hours of leisure time whereas female retirees had less than 75.

According to the bar chart（由图可见），in the employed part-time and housewife groups, only figures about women are given. More precisely（具体来说），female part-timers and housewives had 39 and 52 hours of leisure time, respectively.

希望大家仔细体会这几个高分主体段，先准确划分主体段，再按照顺序介绍数字的思路。

例题十四（饼图主体段范例）

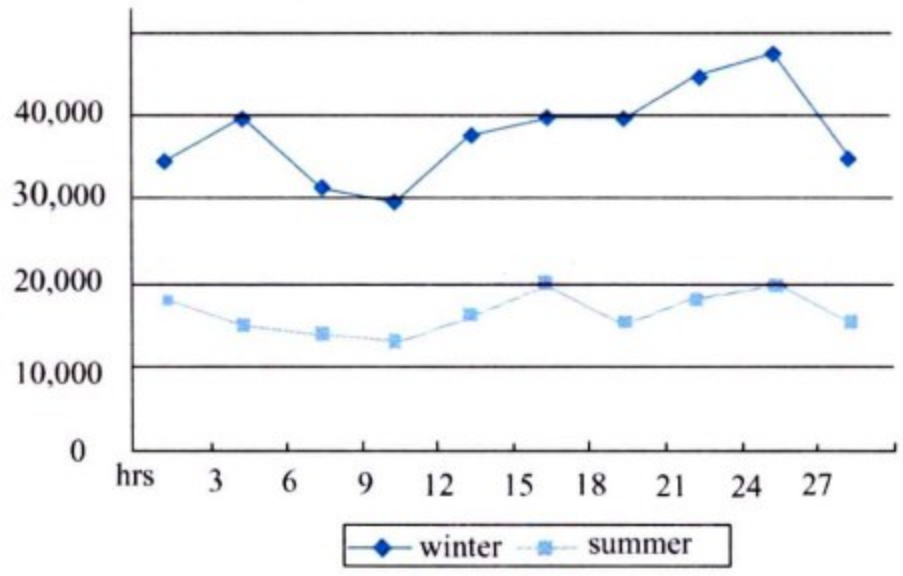
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph below shows the demand for electricity in England during typical days in winter and summer. The pie chart shows how electricity is used in an average English home.

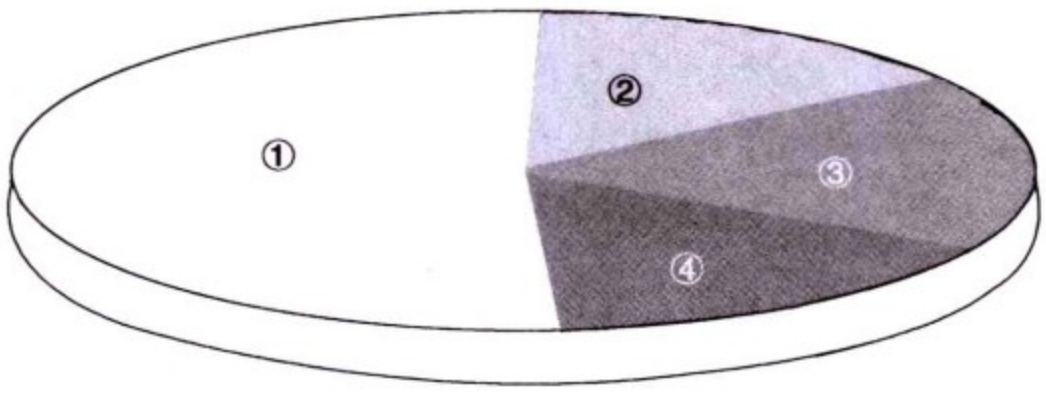
Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.

Typical daily demand for electricity



What the electricity is used for:



① 52.5% Heating rooms, heating water
② 17.5% Ovens, kettles, washing machines
③ 15% Lighting, TV, radio
④ 15% Vacuum cleaners, food mixers, electric tools

分析：

这道题开头段可以立刻改写为：

The line graph describes the need for electricity in England during typical days in winter and summer while the pie chart illustrates how electricity is used in an average English household.

这道题的主体段明显需要写两段，第一个主体段写 line graph，第一句概括冬天和夏天的用电量都是 fluctuate（波动），然后具体抄数字。第二个主体段写 pie chart，按照 1 +X 写法，请看下文描述饼图这一段（注意粗体关键词）：

Then, it can be seen from the pie chart that the electricity is used for four purposes（目的）. Specifically, heating rooms and water **accounts for** the largest proportion（52.5%）of the electricity used while the demand of ovens, kettles and washing machines **makes up**

17.5% of the total need of electricity. Lighting, TV and the radio **represent** the same proportion (15%) as do vacuum cleaners, food mixers and electric tools.

特别提示：

① 上述文章中的几个带颜色的粗体字单词是饼图描述百分比时常用的动词。

② 用括号介绍数字是剑桥范文极为常用的手法，注意括号里的数字要放在对应名词的后面而不是前面。

结尾段：写1~2句，第一句写总数，第二句写结论

关于结尾段大家注意3点：

❶ 一般题目里的total（总数）最好不要在主体段里介绍，那样很容易混乱，放到结尾段的第一句介绍就会清楚多了，也有助于第二句话作结论。但是如果题目里面没有total，那么结尾段就不用写总数了，直接总结上文作结论。

比如前面例题十一表格题的这个结尾段第一句话：

The total number of sales for the month was 3134 (1474 to college students, 405 to staff, 204 to the public and 1051 to book club members). 151 books sold were fiction and 1287 were non-fiction.

❷ 结尾段最后一句的结论只要是合理并且客观的就可以接受，多数题目并不是只能有一个正确答案。永远要牢记：图表题的主要目的是考你的英语写作能力而不是考数学，所以不会出现过于高深的数学题目。一般的结尾段结论还是比较清晰的，就是根据生活的常理想想画这个图的人画这张图是为了找出哪方面的规律，这就是考官期待的结论。如果题目里面有两个或者多个图的，一般结尾段的结论是通过图之间的比较得出来。

比如前面的例题十一，书店老板画一个月销量图，按照生活常理应该是为了找出哪种书最畅销，所以结尾段结论就可以写成：

Therefore, it can be clearly seen from the table that magazines accounted for the greatest number of sales (1696).

再比如前面的例题十二，地铁站管理员画人数变化图，肯定是为了找出高峰期的时间来配备更多的人员，所以结尾段结论就可以写成：

Therefore, it can be clearly seen from the line graph that the most people use the subway station during the rush hours in the early morning and the early evening.

再看前面的例题十四，上面的线图能看出冬天比夏天用电多，下面的饼图能看出最多的电是用在加热上，所以毫无疑问题目的两图是因果关系，写出因为最多的电用来加热，所以冬天

比夏天用电多就好了。

❸ 结尾段结论的时态也是由题目的时间决定的。如果题目给的时间是过去或者将来，就需要相应调整时态。

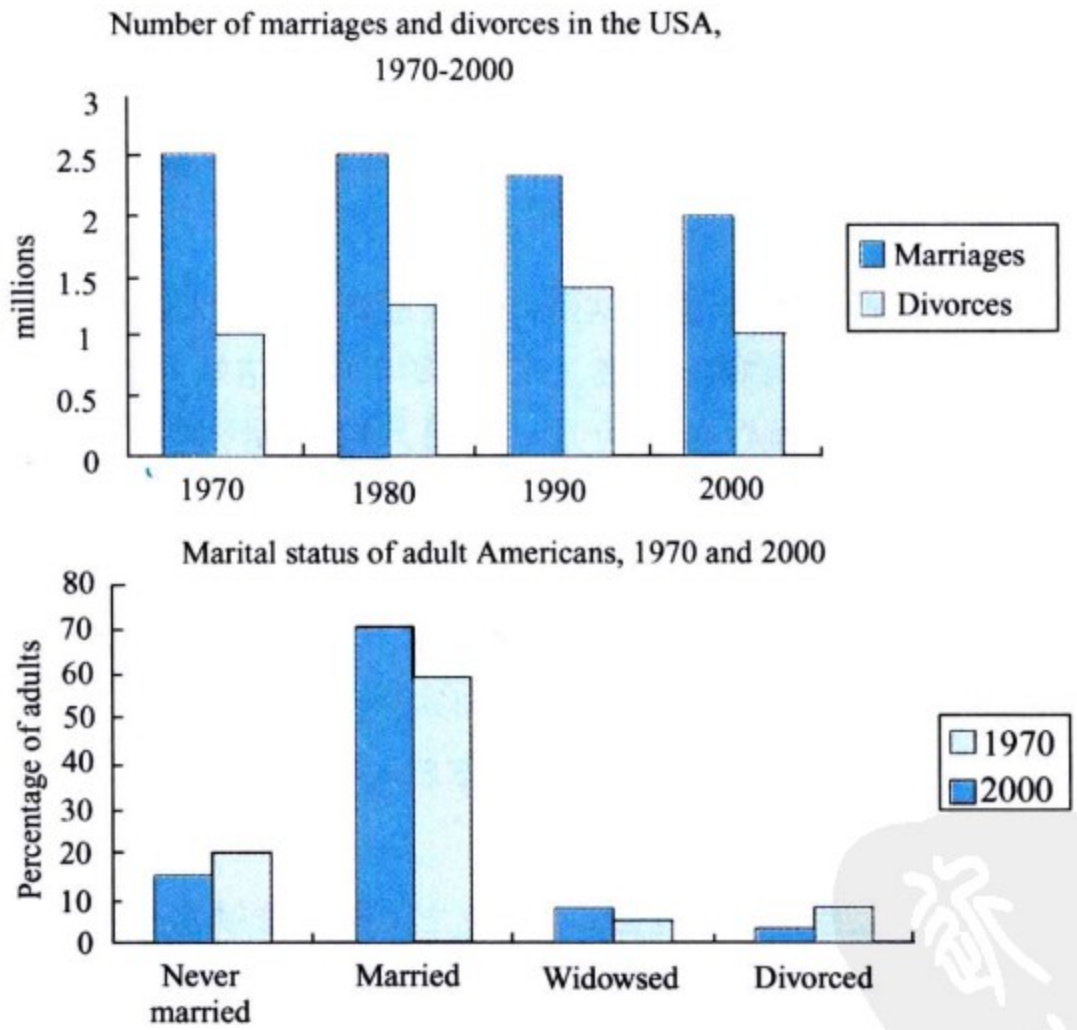
最后，请大家看一篇 bar chart 范文，以及本章前面例题四的一篇范文，仔细体会我们刚才学过的每一个环节的操作。

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The charts below give information about USA marriage and divorce rates between 1970 and 2000, and the marital status of adult Americans in two of the years.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



The first bar chart shows data about American marriage and divorce rates between 1970 and 2000 while the second bar chart describes information about the married status of adult Americans in 1970 and 2000.

According to the first bar chart, the marriage rate was consistently higher than the divorce rate over the thirty-year period. More precisely, in 1970 the number of marriages stood at 2. 5 millions whilst the number of divorces was 1 million. Then, the number of marriages

remained stable at this level over the next decade whereas the number of divorces increased to 1.1 millions over the same period. After that, the number of marriages gradually declined to 2 millions in the next twenty years. The number of divorces also experienced a downward trend (1.4 millions and 1 million in 1990 and 2000, respectively).

The second bar chart clearly shows that married people accounted for the greatest proportion of the adult American population in both 1970 and 2000 (70% and 59%, respectively). As for other categories, the percentage of Americans adults who were never married was 14% in 1970 and 20% in 2000. By contrast, people who were widowed represented 8% of the population in 1970 and 6% in 2000. Divorced couples constituted only 2% of the entire population in 1970 but in 2000, this figure amounted to 9%.

Therefore, it can be clearly seen from the charts that the USA marriage rates were substantially higher than the divorce rates over the three decades and married population made up the largest proportion of the whole population in both 1970 and 2000.

译　文

第一幅柱状图显示了从1970年到2000年美国的结婚和离婚人数。而第二幅图则描述了从1970年到2000年间美国成年人的婚姻状况分析。

从第一幅图表看，在过去的30年里，结婚人数一直高于离婚人数。更清楚地说，在1970年有250万人结婚，有100万人离婚。在接下来的10年中，结婚人数一直稳定在这一水平，而离婚人数却上升到了110万。而后的20年里，结婚人数逐渐下降到了200万，而离婚人数呈现出一个下降趋势（1990年有140万，2000年有100万）。

第二幅图清楚地展示了在1970年和2000年结婚的人口都占到了美国成年人的最高比例（分别为1970年70%和2000年59%）。在其他范畴里，从未结婚的美国人占全体成人的比例从1970年的14%上升到了2000年的20%。与之形成对比的是，寡居的人口比例由1970的8%下降到了2000年的6%。离婚人群在1970年仅占总人口的2%，但是到2000年，这个数字上升到了9%。

因此，从图表可以清楚地看到，在过去30年中，美国的结婚率一直远高于离婚率；而已经结婚的人无论是在1970年，还是在2000年，都是构成美国人口的主体。

本文词汇表

bar chart	柱状图	marriage *n.*	结婚
divorce rates	离婚率	describe *vt.*	描写
according to	依照	consistently *adv.*	一贯地
bar chart	柱状图	marriage *n.*	结婚

（续表）

precisely *adv.*	正好	whilst *conj.*	同时
gradually *adv.*	逐渐地	downward *adj.*	向下的
trend *n.*	趋势	respectively *adv.*	分别地
account for	占	proportion *n.*	比例
category *n.*	种类	percentage *n.*	百分比
widow *n.*	寡妇	couple *n.*	夫妇
constitute *vt.*	组成	entire *adj.*	全部的
figure *n.*	数字	amount to	总计
substantially *adv.*	充分地	make up	组成

本章例题四范文（线图）

The line graph indicates the data of radio and TV audiences in 24 hours (6am to 6am the next day) in 1992.

As can be seen from the line graph, there was a slight rise in the number of TV audiences from around 3% at 6am to about 7% at 8am. Then, from 8am to noon, it remained stable. After that, the number of audiences rose sharply until 8pm, peaking at just over 40%. From this point onwards, the number declined fast to around 4% at 6am the next morning.

According to the line graph, unlike the TV audiences, the number of radio audiences increased rapidly from 6am (4%) to 8 am, reaching the highest point at 27%. Then, in the next 22 hours, the number decreased gradually, with a slight rise from 4pm to 5pm and around 11pm.

Therefore, it can be clearly seen from the line graph that before 1pm, the number of people who listened to the radio was larger than the number of people watching TV. After that, more UK residents chose to watch TV instead of listening to the radio. Overall, in these 24 hours, the TV audiences were larger than the radio audiences.

图表题的 3 种特殊题型（高分内容）

根据 Pat 在国内的教学经验，有几种比较特殊的题目如何分主体段国内同学们很容易困惑，这里给需要高分的同学讲一下。

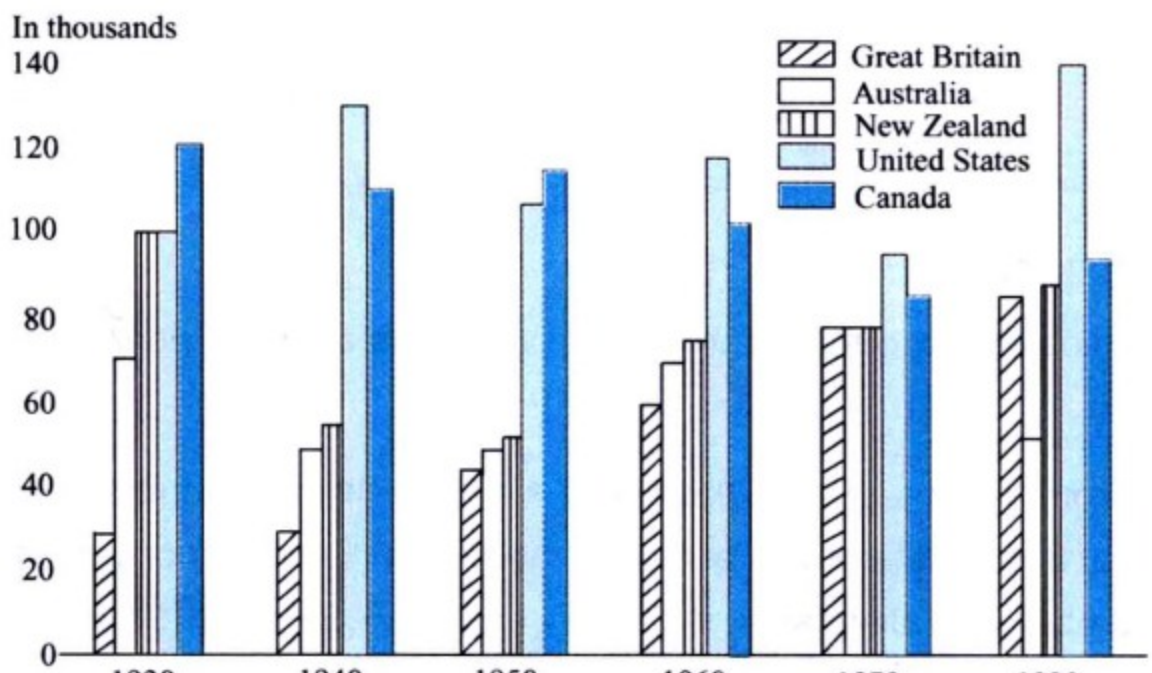
Sample 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The table below shows the figures for imprisonment in five countries between 1930 and 1980.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



这个图很多同学主张写6段，就是1930，1940，……一直到1980这样写6段。其实像这样的图，强烈建议大家不要有几组柱写几段，而应该是把每组柱的各个对应元素分别提取出来分主体段，即Great Britain的各年代数据全部拿出来写一段，Australia的各年代数据全部拿出来写一段……，全篇写成5个主体段。这样分段最大的好处是每个国家的变化趋势一目了然，可以瞬间把握，还可以最后在结尾段很方便地比较一下整体上哪个最多哪个最少，这样全文很快就写好了。

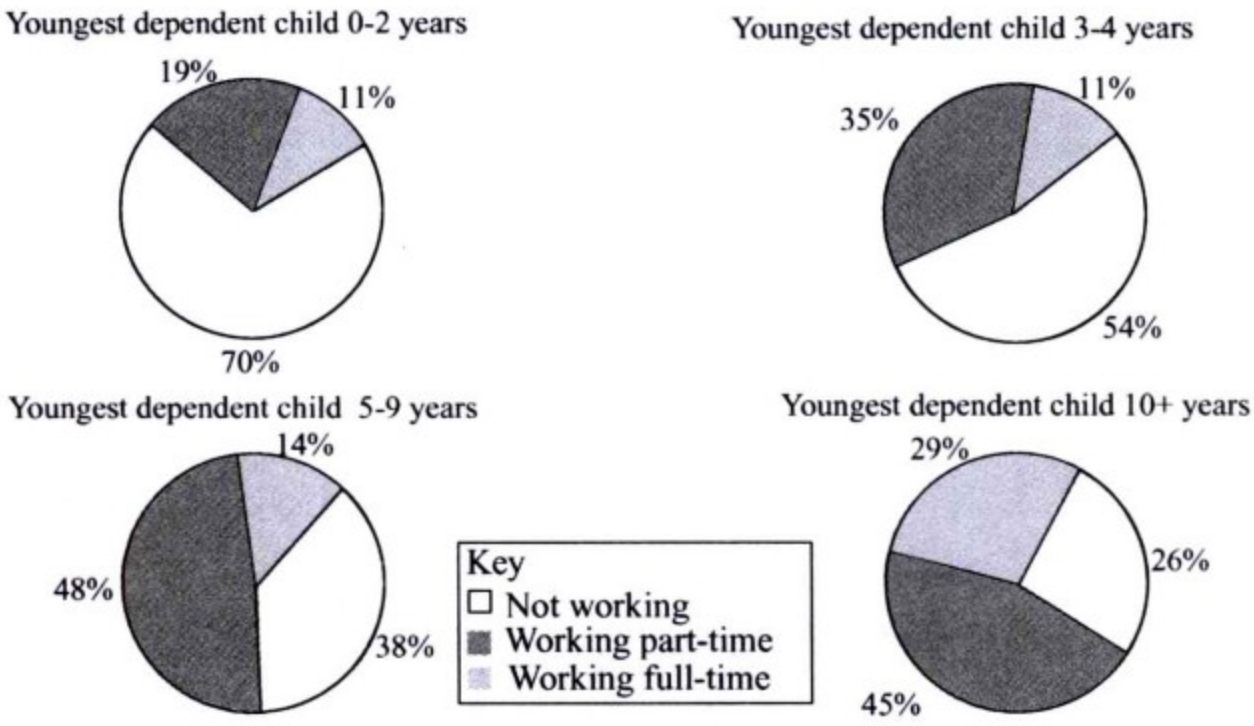
Sample 2

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

Many women need to continue working even after they have children. The charts below show the working patterns of mothers with young children to care for.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



同样的问题，这道题同样不要按照 4 个饼图去分别写 4 段，而应该按照白色的、黑色的和灰色的这样 3 个类别来组织 3 个主体段，加上开头和结尾。这样写的好处也是可以让我们立刻发现不工作的、兼职的和全职的这 3 类母亲随小孩年龄的不同各自变化趋势。

Sample 3

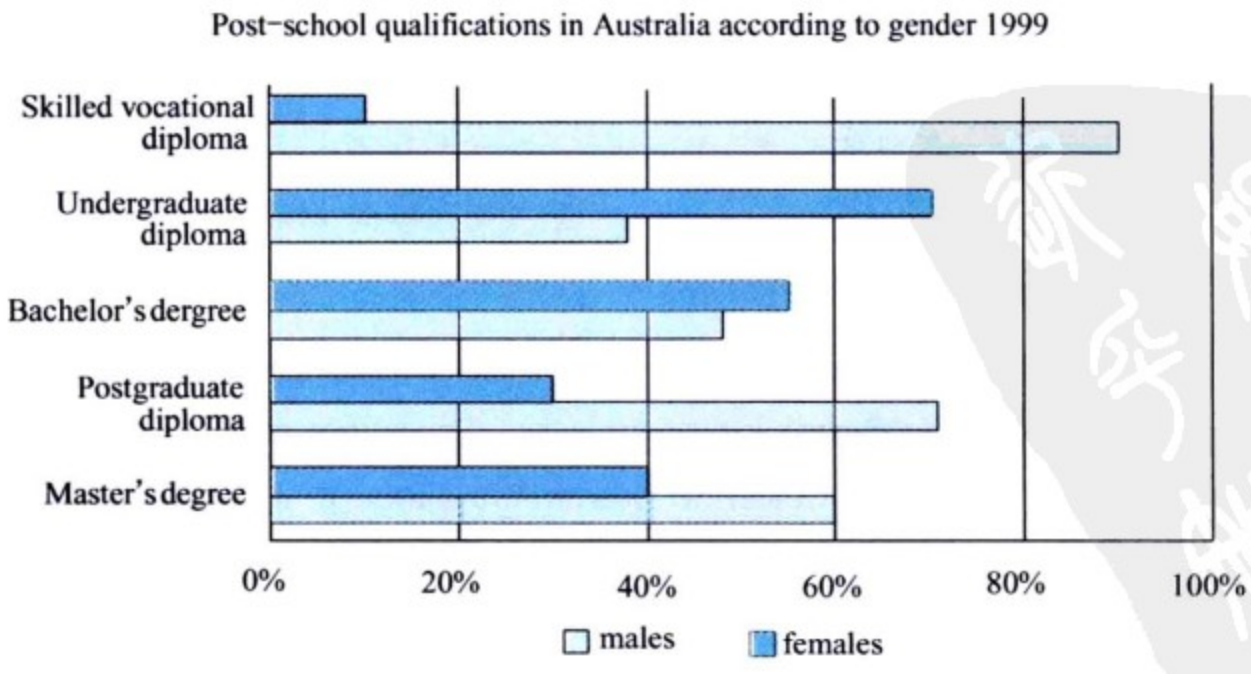
还有一类题主体段分段也很特殊，就是比较男性和女性百分比的题。

You should spend at about 20 minutes on this task.

The chart below shows the different levels of post-school qualifications in Australia and the proportion of men and women who held them in 1999.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



这种比较男性女性的题目通常都比较复杂，在 task 1 里面一旦出现同学们往往不知所措。这类题的写作要点，在于一定不要把男性全都拿出来写一段，再把女性的数据写一段。这类题正确的分段方法，应该是把男性所占比例高的那几组拿出来写一段，再把剩下的女性所占比例高的几组另外写一主体段，加上开头、结尾全文一共 4 段。这样写作的好处是每个主体段里面都是同类比例高的一组，总体概括起来很快。更加重要的是，这样分段会让结尾段的结论非常清晰易懂，比如这道题，结论就明显是低学历和高学历中男性比例高，中间的大学学历女性占的比例高。

考官惯用伎俩揭秘（5）：如何打破小作文的时态魔咒

task 1 的时态选择始终困扰着广大考生，每考必错（即使您自己不错您前后左右的考生也必定有人错）。这种白白给考官送分的情况真的不能再继续下去了。

下面我们就通过分析剑 7 test 2 给出的这篇考官范文彻底为大家解决图表题的时态问题。

The graph illustrates（展示） changes in the amounts of beef, lamb, chicken and fish consumed in a particular European country between 1979 and 2004.

说明： 这个开头段是极为典型的改写原题，注意这段里的谓语动语 illustrate“展示”用的是一般现在时（请注意本句后部的 consumed 并不是从句的谓语动词，而是之前几种食物的过去分词后置定语，用来表被动：“被消费的牛、羊、鸡、鱼”。这句话里没有从句）。

In 1979 beef was by far the most popular of these foods, with about 225 grams consumed per person per week. Lamb and chicken were eaten in similar quantities (around 150 grams), while much less fish was consumed (just over 50 grams).

说明： 本段描述了四种食品各自的起点。由于题中所给数据都是过去时间的（1979 年），所以本段中的谓语动词全部使用了过去时。请注意连接词 while 的对比作用，蓝色的单词已经出现在前文的必备词汇表里了。

However, during this 25-year period the consumption of beef and lamb fell dramatically to approximately 100 grams and 55 grams respectively. The consumption of fish also declined, but much less significantly, to just below 50 grams, so although it remained the least popular food, consumption levels were the most stable.

说明： 本段描述了消费量下降的三种食品各自的趋势和终点，并积极调动了前文词汇表中讲解的加分词汇（本段中蓝色的词汇）。由于这部分数据在题目中所给的还是过去时间，

因此本段谓语动词考官仍然坚定地选择使用过去时。

The consumption of chicken, on the other hand, showed an upward trend, overtaking（超过）that of lamb in 1980 and that of beef in 1989. By 2004 it had soared to almost 250 grams per person per week.

说明：本段介绍了唯一出现消费量上升的鸡肉的变化趋势和终点，蓝色的词汇亦为前文词汇表里的单词。因为时间 by 2004（截至 2004 年）含有“过去的过去”的意思，所以这句话的谓语 soared 改成了 had soared 的过去完成时形式。介绍其他数据的动词时态与图中所给时间一致，仍为一般过去时。

Overall, the graph shows how the consumption of chicken increased dramatically while the popularity of these other foods decreased over the period.

说明：与我们在今天前半部分的深入讲解中对于图表作文结尾段的要求一致，这篇满分范文的结尾段也给出了一个清晰易懂的结论（即鸡肉消费量上升而其他肉类不那么受欢迎了，典型的直线型思维）。The graph shows（该线图展示了）由于是陈述一般事实所以使用了一般现在时，而 shows 后面的从句中具体结论的动词因为是总结过去事件的规律，所以还是使用了过去时。

IELTS 小作文的时态规律总结

★ task 1 小作文的时态完全遵循地道英文写作中“**时态与发生时间一一对应**”的原则。

★ 对于“此图表展示了……”或“由图可以看出……”或“此图表由……组成”这类陈述永恒事实的句型，其**主句的谓语动词**必定是用**一般现在时**。例如：

The line graph shows / illustrates / demonstrates / outlines / describes / is made up of / consists of...，或者 The bar chart shows how... / We can see from the bar chart that... / It can be seen from the pie chart that... / It is clear that... / The figures in the table indicate that... 等（但 that 和 how 引导的从句中的动词则需要根据题目所给时间确定时态）；

★ 上面这类句型中的 **that 或 how 从句里的动词**，以及主体段中所有**介绍具体数据、趋势或规律的动词**均要**根据其对应的具体时间来确定时态**：介绍过去的数据就用过去时，介绍将来的数据就用将来时；

★ **如果题目没有给时间**（是的，大约有 20% 的雅思图表题中不含具体时间信息），**则全文都使用一般现在时**。

测测你的进展

熟读上面所讲的这几条规律之后，您就会立刻明白《剑 8》test 2 小作文考官满分范文是怎么确定时态的了，能看穿考官们看家本事的感觉一定很爽（请密切注意文中每个蓝色动词的时态选择）：

The charts show how much a UK school spent on different running costs in three separate years: 1981, 1991 and 2001.

In all three years, the greatest expenditure was on staff salaries. But while other workers' salaries saw a fall from 28% in 1981 to only 15% of spending in 2001, teachers' pay remained the biggest cost, reaching 50% of total spending in 1991 and ending at 45% in 2001.

Expenditure on resources such as books had increased to 20% by 1991 before decreasing to only 9% by the end of the period. In contrast, the cost of furniture and equipment saw an opposite trend. This cost decreased to only 5% of total expenditure in 1991 but rose dramatically in 2001 when it represented 23% of the school budget. Similarly, the cost of insurance saw a rising trend, growing from only 2% to 8% by 2001.

Overall, it can be seen that teachers' salaries constituted the largest cost to the school, and while spending increased dramatically for equipment and insurance, there were corresponding drops in expenditure on things such as books and on other workers' salaries.

每日一练 *Question of the Day*

改写练习

使用本章的方法确定下面题目主体段写几段，并在一分钟内改写下面题目的正文，形成该题的开头段。

1 You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph and table below give information about water use worldwide and water consumption in two different countries.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.

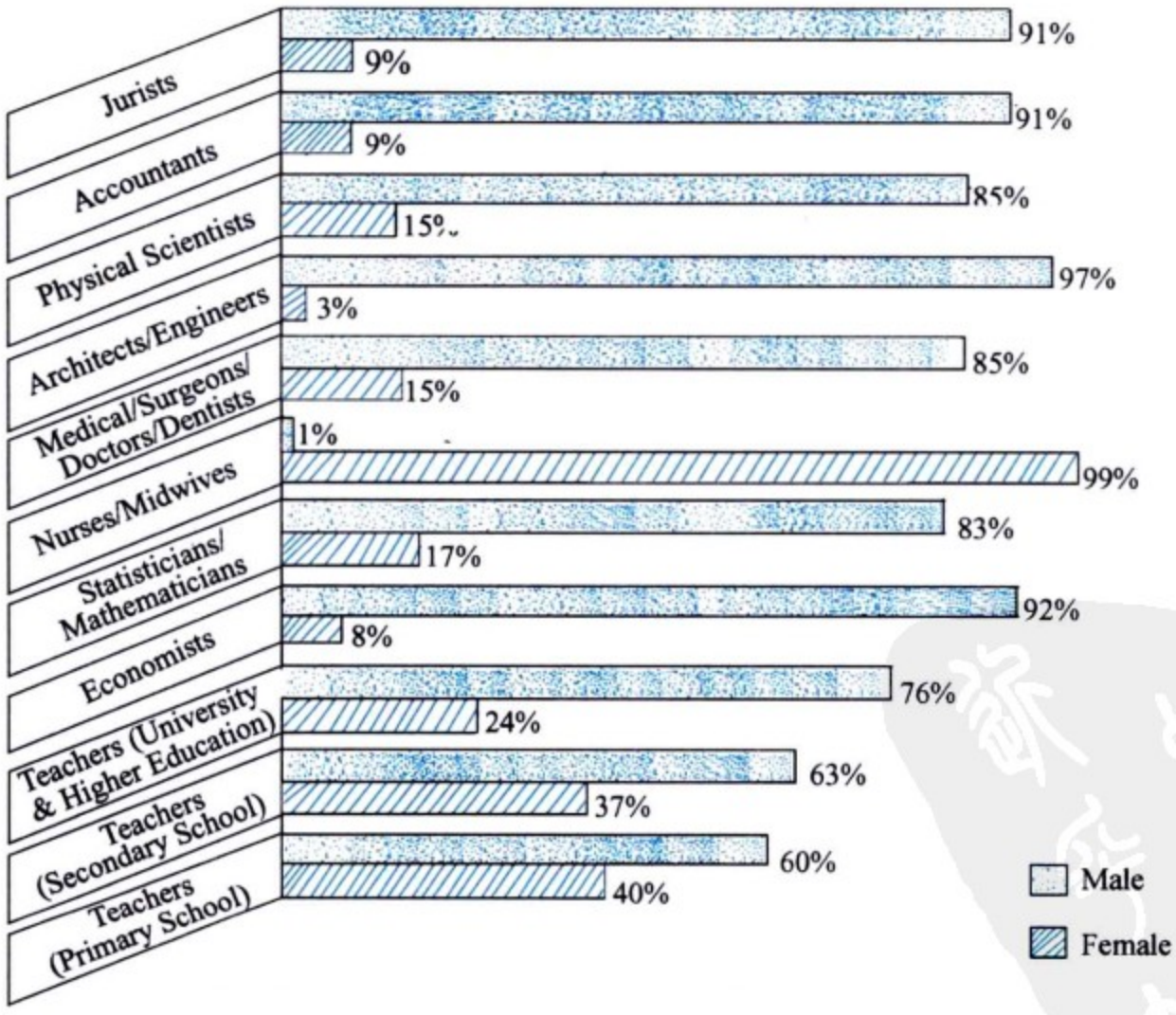
Water consumption in Brazil and Congo in 2000			
Country	Population	Irrigated land	Water consumption per person
Brazil	176 million	26,500 km^2	359 m^3
Democractic Republic of Congo	5. 2 million	100 km^2	8 m^3

2 You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The diagram below shows the distribution of men and women in key professions in Malaysia in 1970.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

You should write at least 150 words.



填空练习

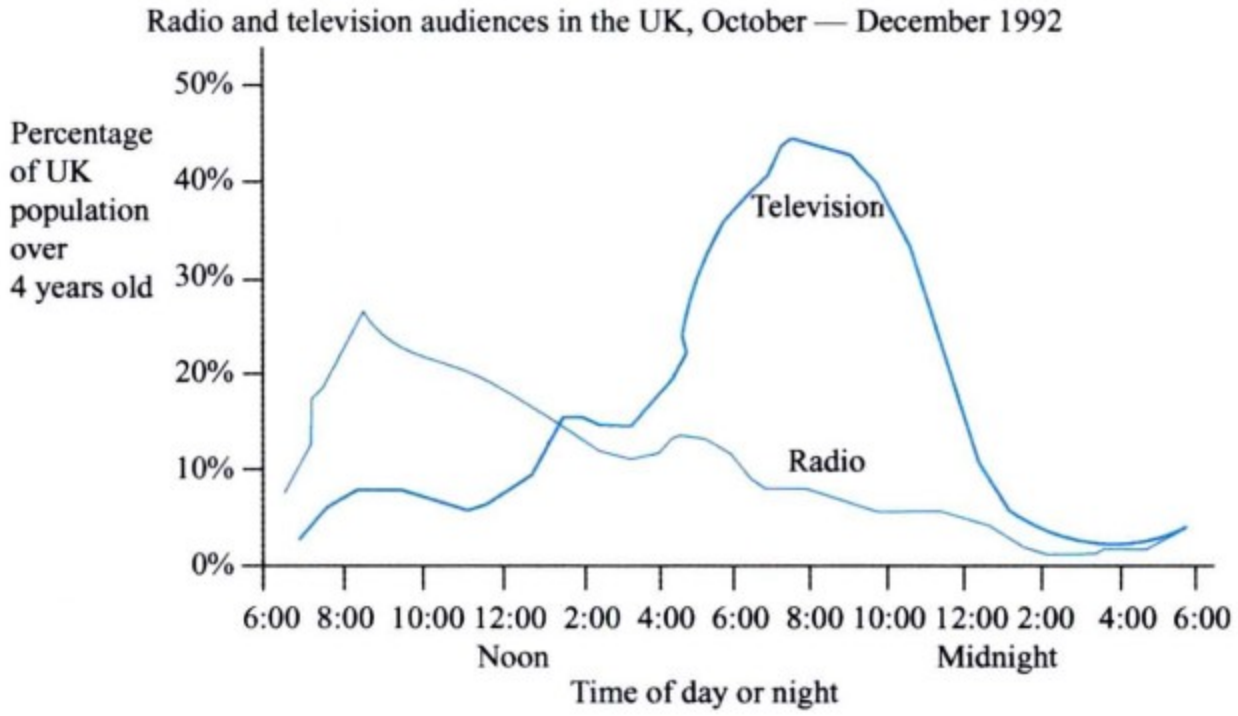
请在下面的范文空格里填上恰当的单词、词组或句子：

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The graph below shows radio and television audiences throughout the day in 1992.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



Para 1

The line graph indicates ❶ _____ radio and TV audiences in 24 hours (6am to 6am the next day) in the period of October-December, 1992.

Para 2

As can be seen from the line graph, ❷ _____. ❸ _____, there was ❹ _____ _____ in the rise of the TV audience, from around 3% of the UK population over four years old at 6am to about 7% at 8am. Then, from 8am to midday, it ❺ _____. ❻ _____ ____, the proportion of the UK population who were watching TV ❼ _____ until 8pm, ❽ _____ just over 40%.

❾ _____, the percentage ❿ _____ around 4% at 6am the next morning.

Para 3

⓫ _____, the rise of the radio audience fluctuated as well in the same period. ⓬ _____, unlike the TV audience, the rise of radio audiences ⓭ _____ from 6am (4% of the British population over 4 years old) to 8 am, ⓮ _____ the highest percentage at 27%. Then, in the next 22 hours, the proportion ⓯ _____, with a slight rise from 4pm (11%) to 5pm and at around 11pm.

Para 4

⑯ _____ before 2pm, the audience of people who listened to the radio was larger than the number of people watching TV. After that, more UK residents chose to watch TV instead of listening to the radio. ⑰ _____, in these 24 hours, the TV audiences were larger than the radio audiences.

全文写作练习

请按照我们今天学习的图表题步骤、结构、词汇和模板快速完成下面的图表作文：

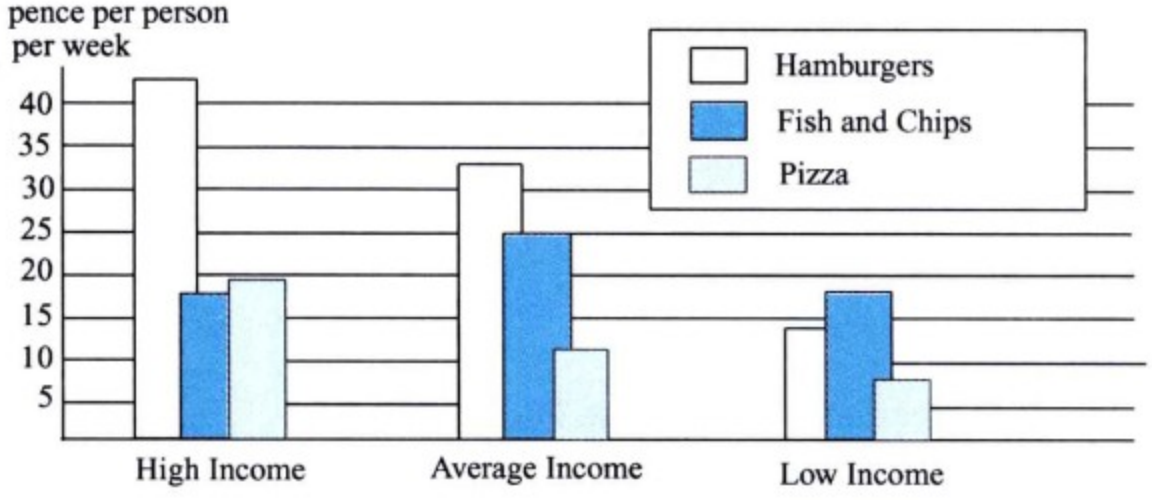
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The chart below shows the amount of money per week spent on fast foods in Britain. The graph shows the trends in consumption of fast foods.

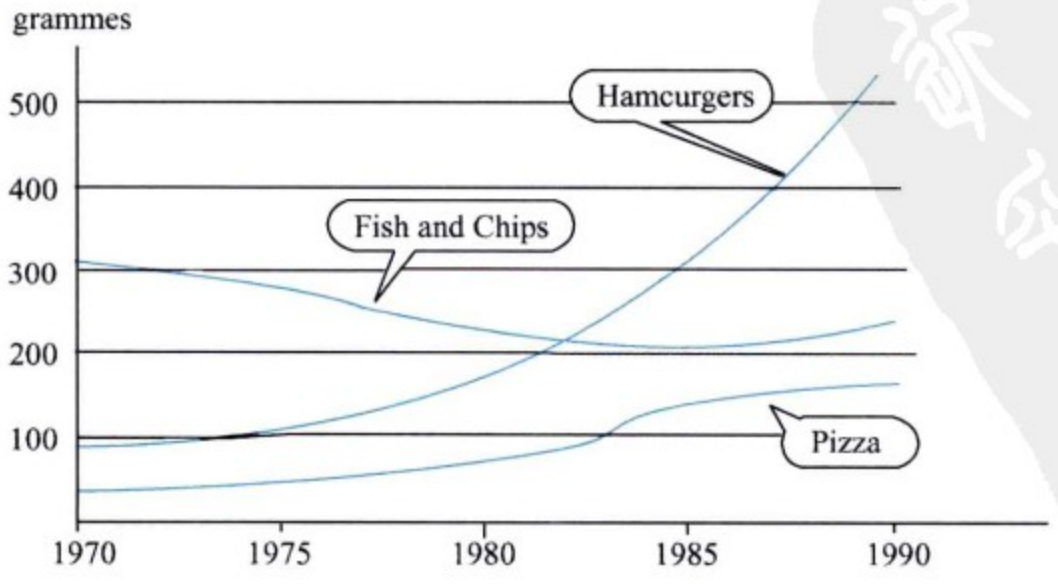
Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

You should write at least 150 words.

Expenditure on fast foods by income groups



Consumption of fast foods 1970-1990



练习答案 Answer Key

改写练习

1 本文写两个主体段，一个国家写一段。

开头段转述如下：

The line graph and table show data about the use of water worldwide and water consumption in two different countries — Brazil and the Democratic Republic of Congo.

2 本文写两个主体段最快，女性占比例多的 nursing and midwives 写一段，其他组为一段（不要认为其他组太多就不好写，其实这样分组是最容易写清楚的，结尾段结论也很明显：1970 年马来西亚绝大多数职业都是男性多）。

开头段改写原题正文如下：

The bar chart illustrates the males and females in key jobs in Malaysia in the year 1970.

填空练习

1 data about
2 the TV audience fluctuated over these 24 hours
3 Specifically
4 a slight rise
5 remained stable
6 After that
7 rose sharply
8 peaking at
9 From this point onwards
10 declined fast to
11 Then, according to the line graph
12 More precisely

13 increased rapidly

14 reaching

15 decreased gradually

16 Therefore, it can be clearly seen from the line graph that

17 Overall

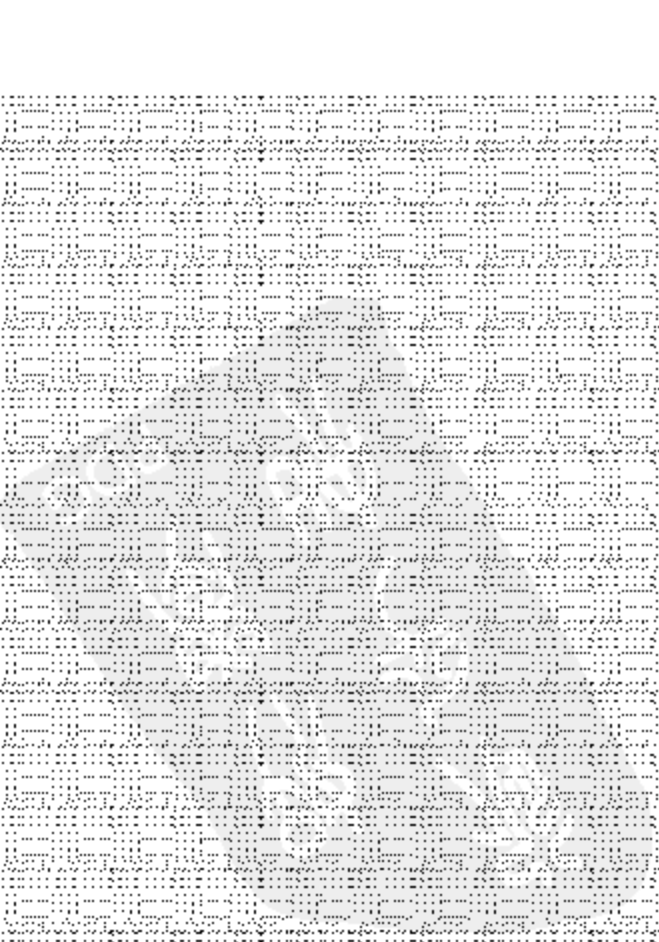
全文写作练习

The bar chart describes the amount of money per week spent on hamburgers, fish and chips, and pizza in the UK while the line graph illustrates the trends of consumption of them.

The bar chart shows the amount of money expended on fast foods according to three different income groups. Clearly, hamburgers are the most popular fast food in the high and average income groups (43 and 33 pence per person per week, respectively). While fish and chips are the least popular food for those with a high income (17 pence per person per week), they are the most popular with those in the low income groups (18 pence). Pizza, on the other hand, is not very popular among the low and average income groups (7 and 11 pence per person per week, respectively).

The line graph outlines the general pattern of fast food consumption between 1970 and 1990. Specifically, hamburgers showed the greatest increase in consumption during this time period. From just under 100 grammes in 1970, people in Britain ate over 5 times this amount of hamburgers by 1990. Pizza also experienced an increase but it was not as dramatic. Fish and chips, however, show a steady decline, from 300 grammes to just over 200 grammes during the 20 year period.

Therefore, it appears that the high income groups expenditure directly affected the total consumption of fast foods.



Mission Statement

—流程图的4个写作要点

—流程图的逻辑框架

Day 10

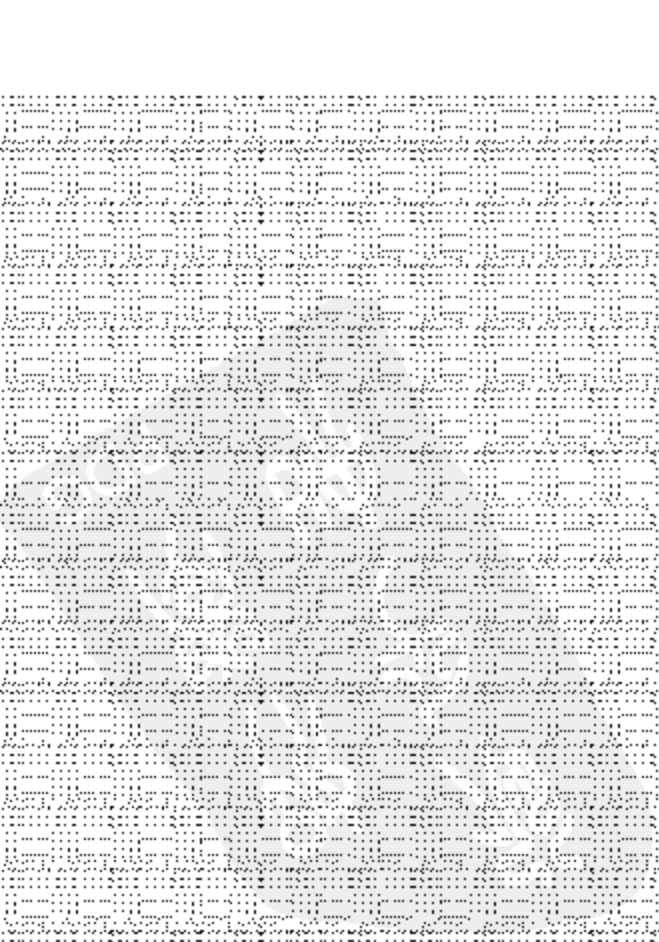
关于流程图的恶狼传说

The Ultimate Template of Process Diagrams

“嗷……嗷……”

每次考前，都会听到那个恶狼的传说：“这次要考流程图啦！”而每次我给同学们的回应都是：“真的考那我太高兴了，因为流程图比其他4种图表都更好、更容易得高分。”

— Pat



在你对传说中的流程图感到无比恐惧的时候，你确信自己真的了解什么叫流程图么？而且你是否明白：

剑桥考流程仍然是为了考查学生的英文写作描述能力，而不是智力测验。只要你不怕它，静下心来看，你会发现，流程图是不可能真的有过于怪异的题目的。

我们今天就把高高在上的 process diagram 降到我们完全能够俯视的水平。

从近 7 年的总体规律来看，通常每隔 3 ~4 个月就会出现一次图画题，所以如果在您考试之前的 2 ~3 个月内一直没出现过流程图，那么就应该关注它一下了。（亚太区近期出现也较为频繁的 map 地图题和物品比较题您可以在本书姐妹篇《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》中见到详尽说明。）

为什么大家会觉得流程图难？根本原因是因为它并不是纯粹的图表题，而有点像是介于图表题和论说文之间的一个“灰色”种类，对描述能力的要求更高一点。但我们只要注意了常见的 4 个要点，就完全可以再瞬间内把握住它的特点。

流程图的 4 要素

❶ 流程图的信息比数学图表更零散，因此看图时必须更加仔细，不能漏掉任何一个细节，否则可能导致无法正确理解题意。

❷ 流程图里面有生词完全正常。即使给你中文的流程图，中间有的技术用语你也可能不认识，所以 process diagram（流程图）里出现生词真的是再正常不过的事。关键在于生词绝大多数都是名词，而且生词旁边有解释性的图画，我们虽然不一定能准确地猜出它的意思，至少大方向可以猜出来。对待流程图里面生词的最好方法就是直接抄到文章里，然后不再理它，根本不影响我们写作。

❸ 表示顺序的单词或者词组一定要多用。什么叫流程图？就是描述一个过程的图，所以必须要充分使用下面的词汇才能把过程描述清楚：

at first = initially = in the first stage

then = in the next step = after that = in the following stage = subsequently ≈ afterwards

（其实 afterwards 的意思与前面的词略有不同，但仍可以作为实在已经没法再换词时的备用）

at this point = in this phase（或者用 specifically）

finally = eventually = in the final step

有了这类表示顺序的连词，文章就有了骨骼，再往下加内容就是水到渠成的事了。

❹ 如果发现流程图特别复杂，就一定要合并成几大步来写。当你面对一幅包含有十几个小图的流程图时，你是否会感觉一切线、条、饼都只是浮云？但其实仔细研究就会发现，如果一个流程图里真的有一大堆小图，那么只有一种可能：就是一定能把这些小图合并成几个大的阶段来介绍（否则 100% 会写不完）。而且最棒的是，当这种情况真的出现时，题目里面一定会有某些细节暗示我们如何把小图合并成大的阶段。剑桥出题其实真的是很科学而且考虑得非常周到的。

好，4 个要素都讲了，下面开始结合实例深入讲解。

面对流程图，连雅思考官也只能“从了”

在前面的议论文部分 Pat 曾经明确指出：对于英文基础好并且经常练笔的同学来说，只要在考前充分了解雅思作文的特点并熟悉题库（附录 D），是完全有可能在考场中靠实力原创出高质量的大作文的。

然而，对于流程图这种在过去七年中平均每 3 ~4 个月出现一次的另类小作文来说，不管一个人多么有个性，模板却都是必不可少的。因为流程图作文的本质就是一种科技说明文，因此在描述它的时候即使是用母语写作的人也很难“免俗”，不得不使用一些固定套话。

比如，Cambridge ESOL 给出的这篇流程图考官满分范文就含有异常明显的套路（请特别注意下面蓝色字的部分）：

The first diagram shows that there are four main stages in the life of the silk worm.

First of all, eggs are produced by the moth and it takes ten days for each egg to become a silkworm larva that feeds on mulberry leaves. This stage lasts for up to six weeks until the larva produces a cocoon of silk thread around itself. After a period of about three weeks, the adult moths eventually（在今天的开始处我们已经见过这个词：最终地，它在流程图里经常用来代替 finally）emerge from these cocoons and the life cycle begins again.

The cocoons are the raw material used for the production of silk cloth. Once selected, they are boiled in water and the threads can be separated in the unwinding stage. Each thread is between 300 and 900 metres long, which means they can be twisted together, dyed and then used to produce cloth in the weaving stage.

Overall, the diagrams show that the cocoon stage of the silkworm can be used to produce silk cloth through a very simple process.

对吧？剑桥考官也极为明显地使用了表示顺序的套话。

不过这道题比较特殊，因为它讲的是循环往复的过程。而雅思考试中的多数流程图则并不是循环的，而是一步一步向前推进的。那么这类题目又应该如何去写好呢？

真题放送

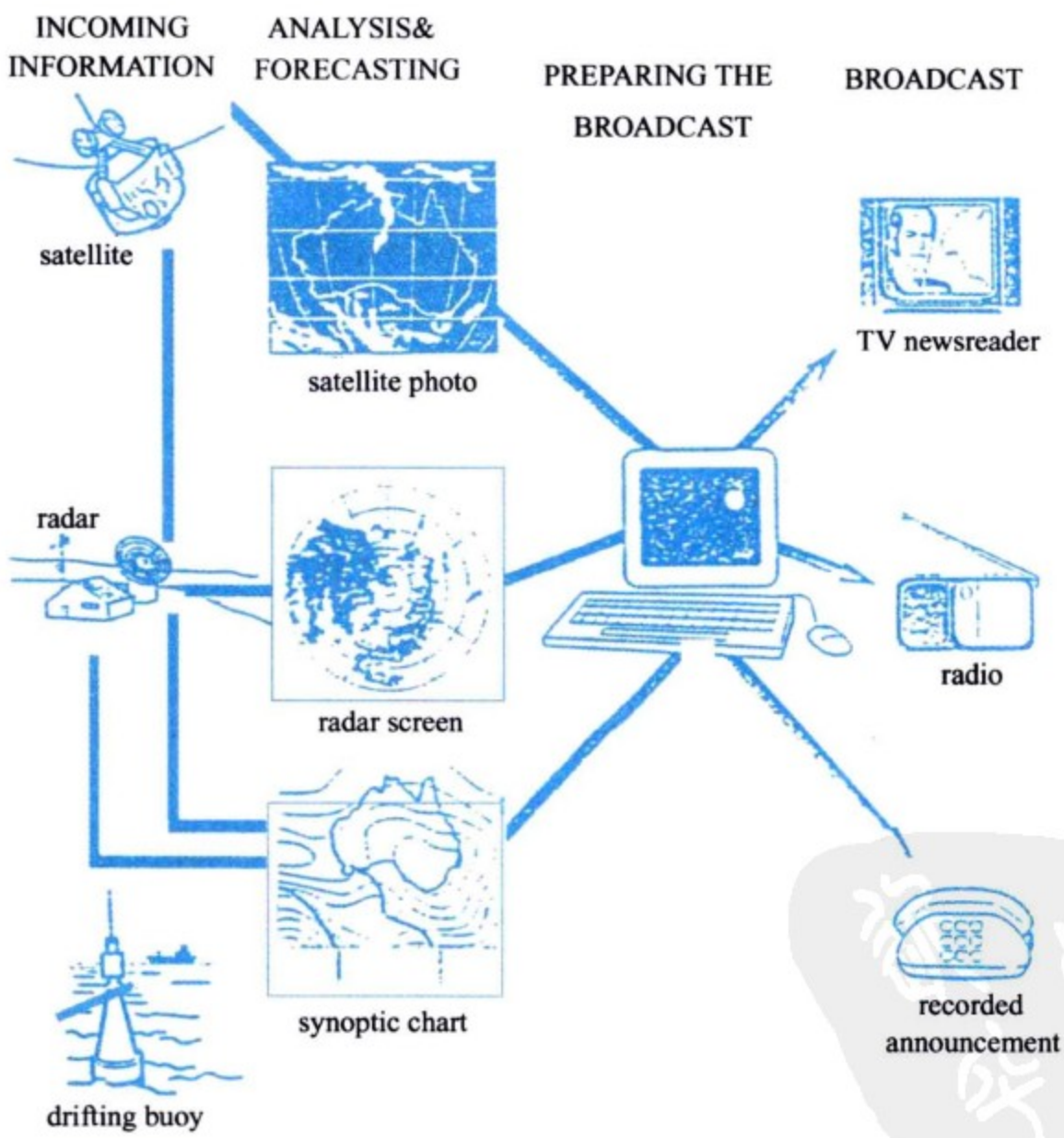
真题一

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The diagram below shows how The Australian Bureau of Meteorology collects up-to-the-minute information on the weather in order to produce reliable forecasts.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



分析:

这道题应该算是一道超级典型的流程图了。它满足了考生们对 process diagram 的一切幻想：生词无数、N 多小图而且有迷宫般的网络。

但如果你暂时抛开心里的恐惧感，静下心来用我们讲过的 4 个要素衡量一下呢?

❶ 这个图的信息绝对分散。所以请大家一定要保证每个图和每个字都看见了，而且即使不认识的单词也要看一下。

❷ 题目中有很多生词。但是我们应该能猜出这个图是讲澳洲的某个机构收集天气信息，并且加工然后再播放的一个流程。有些生词，比如图右下角的 drifting buoy 完全可以猜出是水上收集天气信息的一种装置，然后抄到文章里就好了，根本没必要知道它的确切定义。

❸ 描述这个图明显要用很多表示顺序的连词。

❹ 这样复杂的图肯定要合并成几大步写。几大步最好呢？有的同学可能说三大步，就是按照卫星、雷达和浮标（drifting buoy）这样分别写三步。这样写逻辑上正确，但还是很容易乱。有没有更好的分步方法呢？

大家可以仔细看一下，在这个流程图的上方有 4 组大写的英文单词，分别是：

incoming information	信息接收
analysis & forecasting	分析和预报
preparing the broadcast	准备播放
broadcast	播放

这样的四大步不是正好说明了整个流程吗？范文中蓝色的部分是用来描述进程顺序的模板。

范文：

开头段转述原题（和我们 Day 9 学习的图表题方法类似）

The process diagram illustrates in four stages how the Australian Bureau of Meteorology gathers its weather information in order to make weather forecasts.

主体段（结构也类似前面的图表题，写 1 +x 句）

According to the diagram, in the first stage there is the "incoming information". Specifically, weather data is collected from outer space, on land, or at sea, using satellite, radar, and drifting buoy respectively（分别地）. Next, in the second step, this data is analysed and forecast（这个词的被动形式可不加-ed）by experts. At this stage experts study satellite photos, radar screens, and synoptic charts to determine weather conditions. Stage three of the process is when the information is prepared for broadcast. This is done through computer which sends all necessary data to the fourth stage. At this point the weather data is broadcast（这个词的被动也可不加-ed）to the general public via TV, radio and telephone (recorded announcement).

结尾段（1 ~2 句）

Thus, the process diagram clearly shows how weather data is collected, studied, prepared, and finally broadcast.

看起来这么难的一道题，使用恰当的结构和表示顺序的连词，很快就写完了。

我们再看一道看似很困难的流程图。

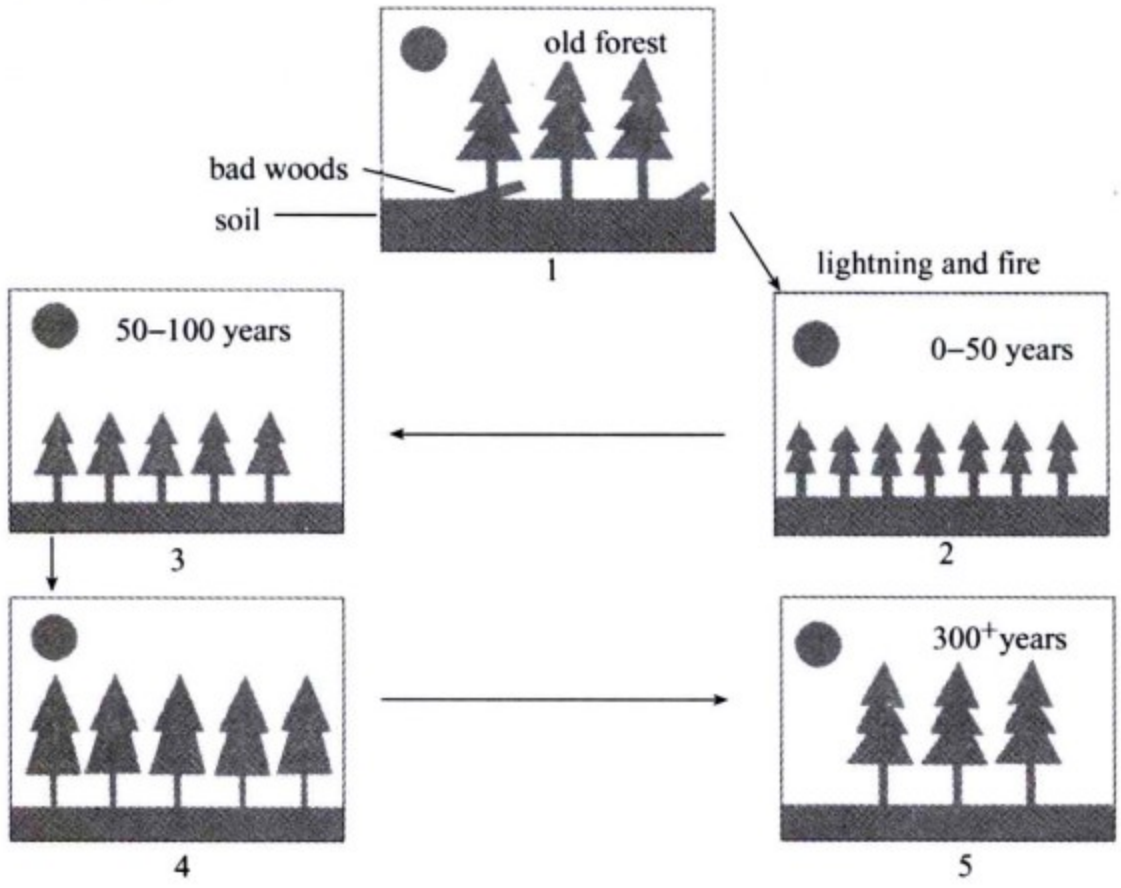
真题二

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The chart below shows the shaping and growth of the forests in Yellowstone National Park after a fire disaster.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.



分析:

这道题的生词比上一道题少，但是看图一定要仔细，很明显，第二个图到第三个图树的数量减少了（因为竞争 competition），第四到第五个图同样出现了树木数量的减少。还是要分步来写。

请看下面的范文，中间大家可能会遇到一些生词，重点体会连接词的使用。

范文:

The process diagram illustrates in four stages the recovery（恢复）of the forests in Yellowstone National Park after a devastating（破坏性大的）forest fire.

According to the diagram, in the first picture, while the old forests still exist, they drop bad wood to the soil under them, which makes the soil more fertile（肥沃的）. Then lightning and fire strike, destroying the forests completely. And the growth of new forests starts right at this point. The second picture demonstrates that in the first 50 years after the devastating fire, saplings（小树苗）emerge where the old forests used to stand. The second five decades see the saplings grow in build but diminish（减少）in overall number. In the next two

centuries, the young trees continue to thrive（旺盛地生长）in Yellowstone, because of the fertile soil and the ample（充足的）sunlight. Then, three hundred years after the fire, the forests begin to experience a turnaround and the number of trees decline to roughly the same as the old forests.

These five pictures show us that it takes as long as three centuries for a destroyed forest to fully recover. Additionally, they vividly explain to us（生动地告诉我们）the natural law of "survival of the fittest". The number of trees that a region can support is not limitless, which means the forests on earth will not be an inexhaustible（取之不尽的）resource.

好，我们乘胜追击，再看一道貌似地图的流程图。

真题三

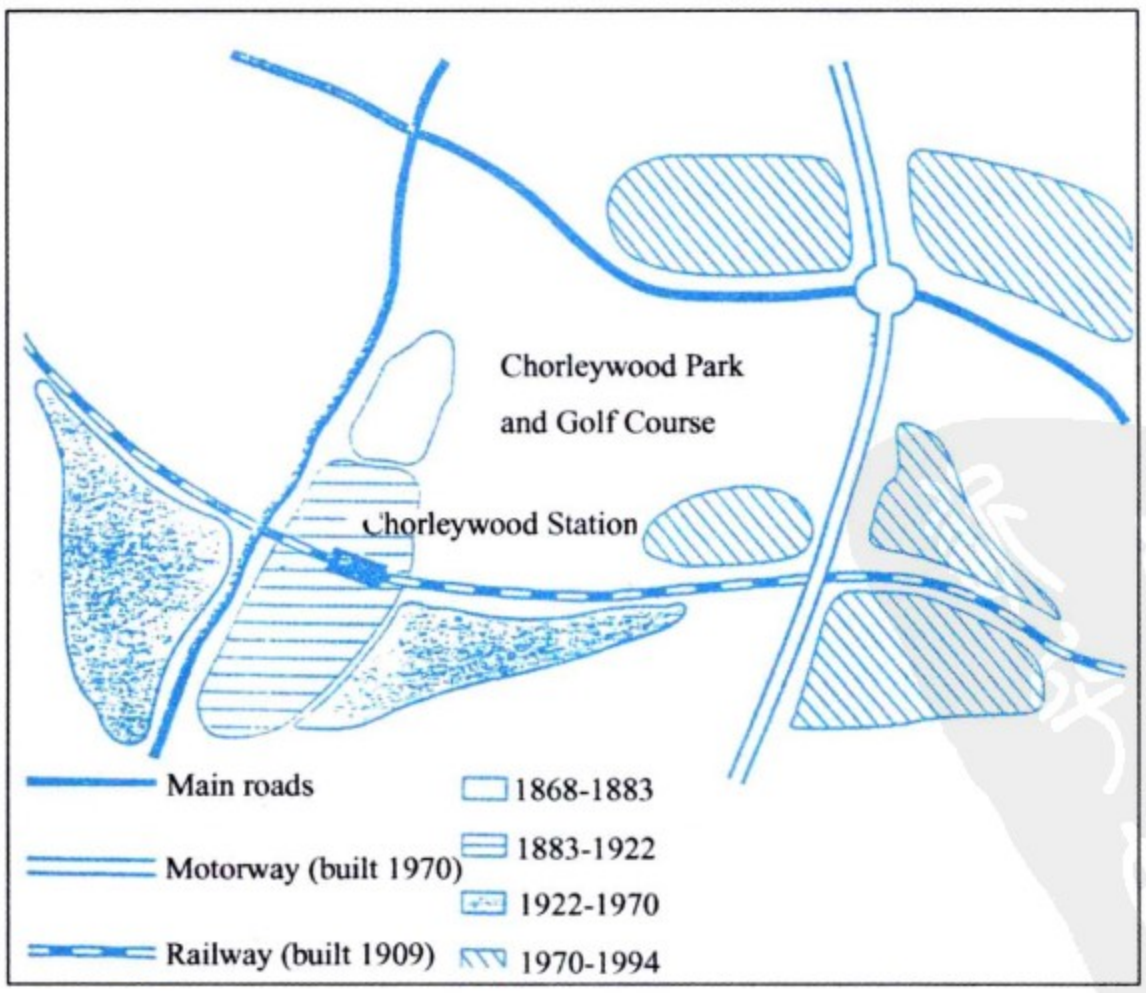
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

Chorleywood is a village near London whose population has increased steadily since the middle of the nineteenth century. The map below shows the development of the village.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

You should write at least 150 words.

Village of Chorleywood showing development between 1868 and 1994



分析:

这道题看起来像是 map，其本质则是地图 + 一个分成四个发展阶段的流程图，每个阶段写出对应的交通方式即可。

范文:

Chorleywood is a village close to London. Its population has increased gradually since the middle of the nineteenth century. The map describes in four stages how the village of Chorleywood developed from 1868 to 1994.

According to the map, the first period was from 1868 to 1883. At this time Chorleywood was only a small area of inhabited land. As for transportation, the people of Chorleywood only had two main roads available to them. The next period stretched (延伸) from 1883 to 1922. During this time the village more than doubled in land area. The Chorleywood railroad station and the railroad were built in the middle of this new patch of land. Next, the period between 1922 and 1970 saw the village slowly expanding alongside the railroad line. Finally, from 1970 to 1994 Chorleywood again increased significantly in rise. In 1970, a motorway was built away from the center of the original village. As the diagram shows, new settlements (定居点) were made alongside this motorway.

Therefore, the map informs us that Chorleywood's population and land area steadily increased as its means (方式) of transportation developed from 1868 to 1994.

所以，还是想跟大家强调：只要记准 4 个要素，加上范文里面给大家提供的结构和句型，流程图完全可以战胜，甚至可能比数学图表更简单好写，请大家一定要彻底扔掉对流程图的恐惧心理，从容面对。

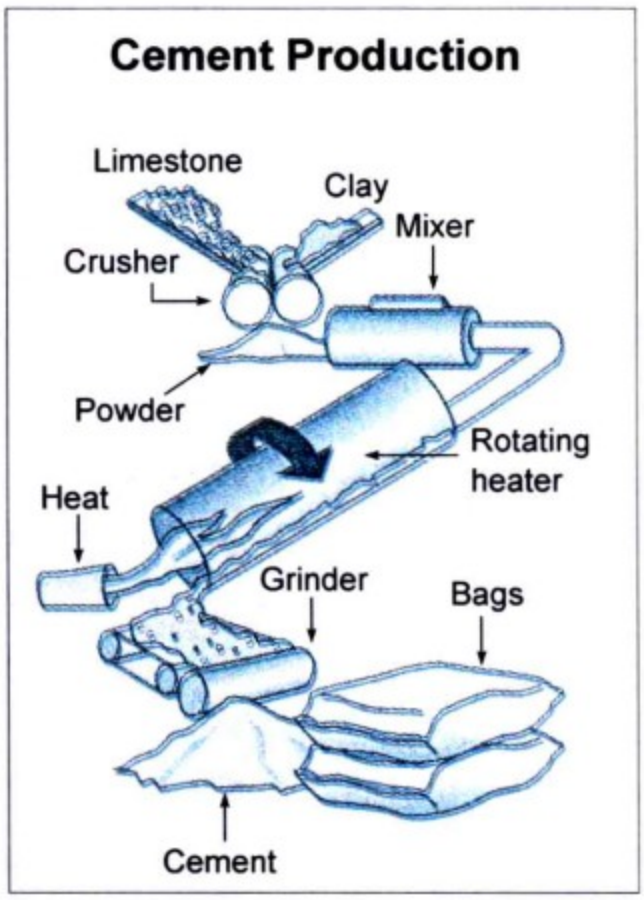
词汇量不够如何读懂《剑 8》里的"史上最难流程图"

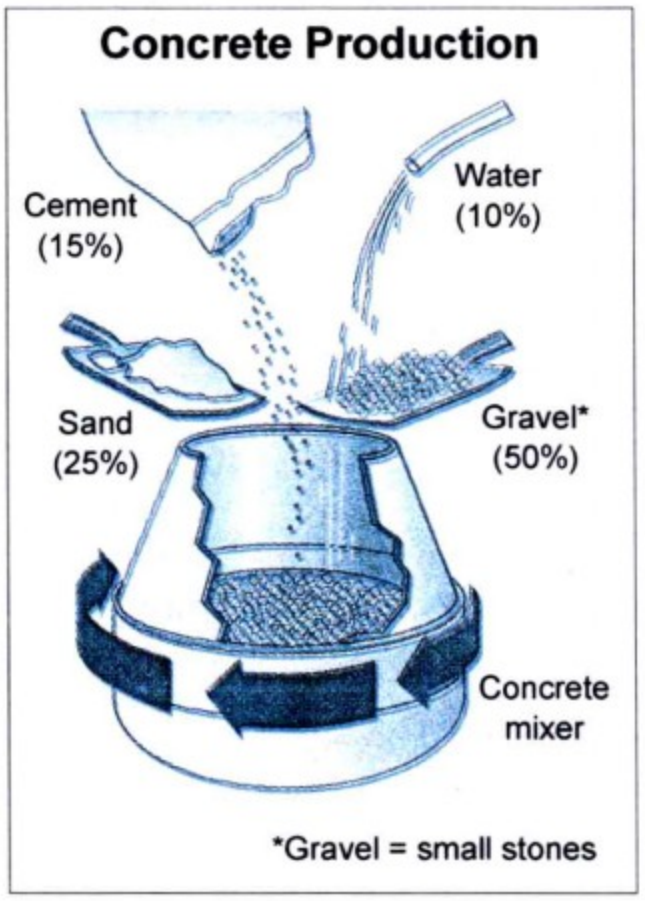
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The diagrams below show the stages and equipment used in the cement-making process, and how cement is used to produce concrete for building purposes.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.





深入分析:

这是神马……

真是怕什么来什么。明知每次考流程图都会在考生当中引起极大的恐慌，剑桥还是生生地在《剑8》里安插了一个如此的 Test 3，这让本来就已经备考得很辛苦的中国孩子们情何以堪？本题的威慑力如此巨大，甚至有的孩子一看见图就说："XX，连核电站都拿来考了！"而且不仅是中国孩子，Pat 也把这两幅图拿给很多老美的朋友看了，他们/她们刚看到这两幅图的时候（尤其是左边这幅）眼神儿同样明显发直。

V

诚然，这道题很 BT。但问题是：是否真就难到了没法写的程度？Fair enough. 我们就按照最不利情况（the worst-case scenario）来假设，看看一个仅具有初中英语水平的考生（考虑到原题中两个对部分同学可能是生词的单词 cement 和 concrete 都是 c 开头的，我们不妨称之为小 c）到底能从这两个图里看出哪些信息，假如他/她没有被图里给出的雷人形式所吓倒的话。

在小 c 眼中，左边这幅图描述的肯定是制造某种东西的加工过程（假设英语经常不及格的小 c 并不认识 cement 这个词），第二幅则是制造另一种东西（假设痛恨英语的小 c 同时也不认识 concrete 这个词）的方法，基本就是把第一种造出来的东西跟水、沙子、小石子按照不同的百分比（英语虽然不行，但小 c 的数学还是不错的）倒在一个"大锅"里，然后 mix。

接下来，小 c 需要凭借他/她少得可怜的词汇量来"猜出"尽可能多的词汇信息。请您跟小 c 一起静下心来按顺序看图吧。第一幅图左上角的 limestone 小 c 很可能不认识，但能猜出

是某种石头（其实是石灰石），这就足够了。clay 这个词小 c 没有线索可供猜测，但可以确定它也是一种 material。crusher 小 c 依然不认识，但从词性来看 crusher 应该是某种人或者某种机器（从图里的内容可以排除是某种人的可能性），而且看样子 crush 应该是一个动词（其实是压碎的意思），写文章的时候也许还可以借这个动词用一下。powder 是第一步的成果，所以它肯定是个名词，即使不认识的话当宾语抄进对第一步的描述也够用了。mixer 小 c 没问题，搅拌机嘛。类似的，还可以对 grinder 进行"合法的"猜测（知道是某种机器对写这篇作文来说就够用了），甚至也许还可以借用一下 grind 这个动词。此外，像 heater 和 bags 这些词就不用猜了，简直是侮辱聪明的小 c 的智商。rotating 不知道是什么东东，但图里画的表示旋转的箭头说明它很可能是跟转动有关的。至于右边的第二个图，小 c 定睛一看，除了 concrete 不认识之外其实只有 gravel 一个生词，但剑桥的叔叔阿姨们居然还特意给了个星号来说明 gravel = small stones，感激涕零，终于明白了啥叫人性化考试……

知道了这么多再加上考前准备的对于改写原题、介绍顺序等的相关知识，文章自然就出来了（当然了，下面的高分范文不是小 c，而是小 p 写的。你可以不必写成这样，但如果你因为恐惧根本就不敢写甚至不敢看这道题目，那可就是你的错了）

The process diagrams illustrate the series of steps and machinery for cement production, and how cement is used in the manufacture of concrete.

According to the first diagram, the cement-making process begins with the raw materials — i. e. , limestone and clay, being crushed into powder in a crusher. The second stage shows that the powder is blended in a mixer and then transported to a rotating heater. After having been fire-heated, in the following step the compound is fed to a grinder and ground into cement, which is subsequently packed into bags.

After the cement is prepared, it is mixed in a revolving concrete mixer with water, sand and gravel in a 15% : 10% : 25% : 50% proportion to produce concrete, as shown in the second diagram.

Thus, the two diagrams clearly demonstrate the manufacturing process of cement and its role as a key ingredient in the production of concrete.

词汇表

machinery	*n.*	机械（请注意与 machine 不同，machinery 是一个不可数名词）
manufacture	*n.*	制造
raw material	*n.*	原料

i. e.		Day 5 里介绍过的拉丁词 = that is，…
blend	*vt.*	混合，本文里用来替换 mix 实现用词制造多样性
rotating	*adj.*	旋转的，请注意下一段中则改用它的近义词 revolving 来替换使用
compound	*n.*	混合物，本文里用来替换 mixture 以丰富用词
feed	*vt.*	在描述制造过程时 feed 是“输送”的意思，本文里用来和 transport 互换使用以获得多变的用词效果，请注意它的过去分词是 fed
grind	*vt.*	碾压（它的过去分词是 ground，这一点小 c 确实无从知道，但即使写个错误的过去分词 grinded 也比压根儿不敢动笔强吧）
pack	*vt.*	打包（与 bag 配合形成词性的多样化）
ingredient	*n.*	成分，原料，本文中与 raw material 互换以获取用词多样性

☆ ☆ ☆

范文都已经看完了，可小 c 还是不知道这两个图里的 cement 和 concrete 到底是什么东东。其实只要能猜出它们是两种产品，而且把能够它们准确无误的抄到文章里，知道它们分别是水泥与混凝土与否，对于写这篇 process diagram 又有什么分别呢……

每日一练 *Question of the Day*

V

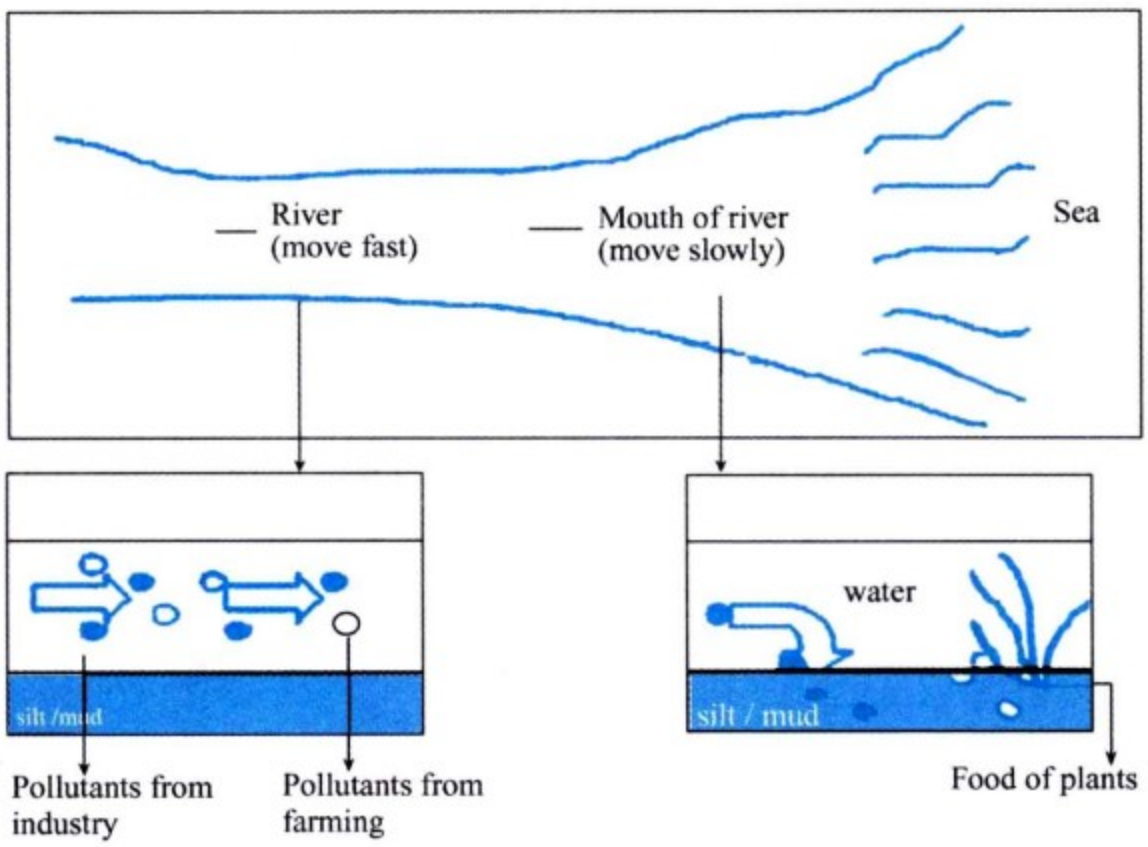
分析练习

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

The diagram below shows how the water speed affects the pollution of a river.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Write at least 150 words.

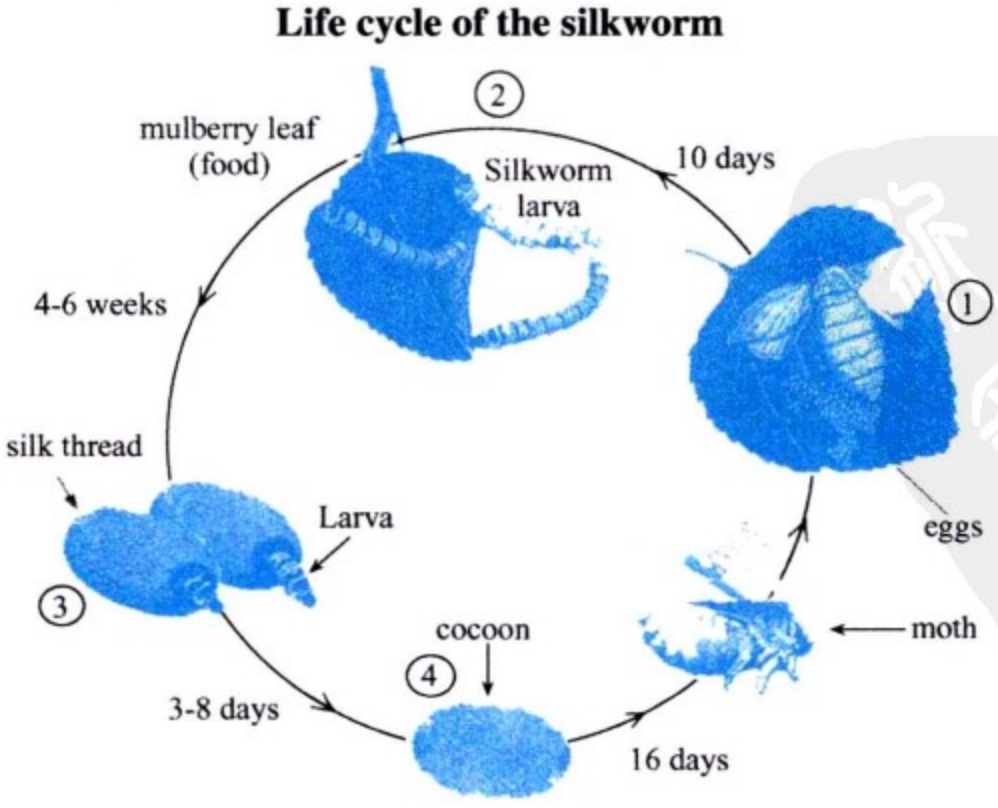


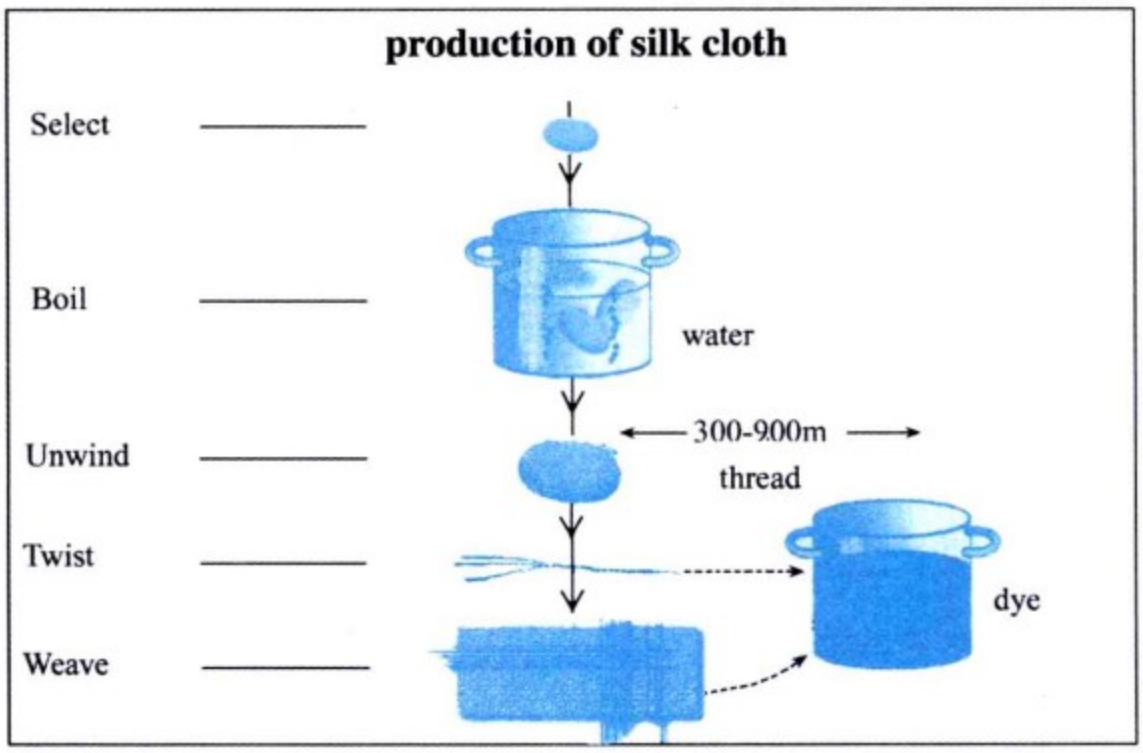
请分析以下方面：

1. 应该分几步写这个流程图?
2. 猜测生词可能大致是什么意思?
3. 黑色和白色的圆点有何区别?
4. 水流快和慢时污染物有何区别?
5. 结论如何做?

填空练习

下文是 Pat 写的剑 6 test 3 流程图范文，请大家根据今天讲的流程图写作规则在下面空格里填上恰当的单词、词组或句子：





Para. 1

❶ _____ the life cycle of the silkworm while ❷ _____ summarises the stages in the production of cloth.

Para. 2

❸ _____ Initially, a moth lays some eggs on a mulberry leaf. ❹ _____ one of the eggs hatches and a larva that feeds on mulberry leaves appears. ❺ _____ after four to six weeks, the larva spins silk threads to form a cocoon in which it pupates. ❻ _____ in the fourth stage the silk threads are spun into a complete cocoon. ❼ _____ ten days later a moth emerges from the cocoon and then the whole cycle starts over again.

Para. 3

Then, ❽ _____ silk cloth is produced. In the first stage, cocoons are selected and then they are boiled in water. ❾ _____ each cocoon is unwound into a thread three hundred to nine hundred meters in length. After that, the thread is twisted, woven and eventually dyed.

Para. 4

Therefore, the process diagrams clearly indicates ❿ _____.

参考译文

第一张图表描述了蚕的生命周期，第二张图表概述了布料生产的流程。

根据第一张图表，一条蚕的生命周期可以分为五个部分。首先，雌蛾会在桑树叶上产卵。然后，卵孵化出幼虫，并以桑叶为食。接下来，在大约四到六个星期以后，幼虫开始吐丝做茧并最终化为蛹。这个过程为第四周期，大概需要 3 ~8 天的时间，蚕吐出的丝线最终结成了一个完整的茧。最后，大概十天以后一只蛾破茧而出，一个新的生命周期宣告开始。

第二张图表展示了纺织丝绸的五个步骤。首先，蚕茧要经过挑选。然后，将挑选出的蚕茧放入水中煮。第三步，每一个蚕茧都将被拉成大约 300 米到 900 米的丝线。这些丝线将被梳理、纺织并染色。

因此，两张程序表清晰地展示了蚕茧的形成过程以及如何生产丝绸的过程。

练习答案 Answer Key

分析练习

1 写本图可分成两大步，水流速快时一步，水流速慢时一步。

2 可能有两个词汇是生词，silt 的意思可以根据 mud（泥土）猜出，pollutant 可以根据构词猜出是“污染物”。

3 黑色的圆点表示工业污染，白色的圆点表示农业污染。

4 水流速快时污染物都不下沉，流速慢时工业污染沉到土里，农业污染被水生植物吸收。

5 结论明显是应该减少污染，否则对河流，尤其是河口（mouth of river）破坏很大。

填空练习

1 The first process diagram describes

2 the second process diagram

3 According to the first diagram, the life cycle of a silkworm can be divided into five stages.

4 Then

5 Next

6 Over the following three to eight days

7 Eventually

8 the second diagram shows in five steps how

9 In the third step

10 the processes of how cocoons are created and then how silk cloth is produced

词汇表

diagram *n.* 图表	life cycle 生命周期
silkworm *n.* 蚕	summarise *v.* 概述
initially *adv.* 最初	moth *n.* 蛾
lay some eggs 产卵	mulberry *n.* 桑树
hatch *vt.* 孵出	larva *n.* 幼虫
spin *v.* 纺	cocoon *n.* 茧
pupate *vi.* [昆] 化蛹	boil *v.* 煮沸
unwind *vt.* 展开	twist *vt.* 搓
weave *vt.* 编织	dye *vt.* 染
process *n.* 过程	indicate *vt.* 显示

Mission Statement

—5种书信类型

—书信的段落

—常用模板

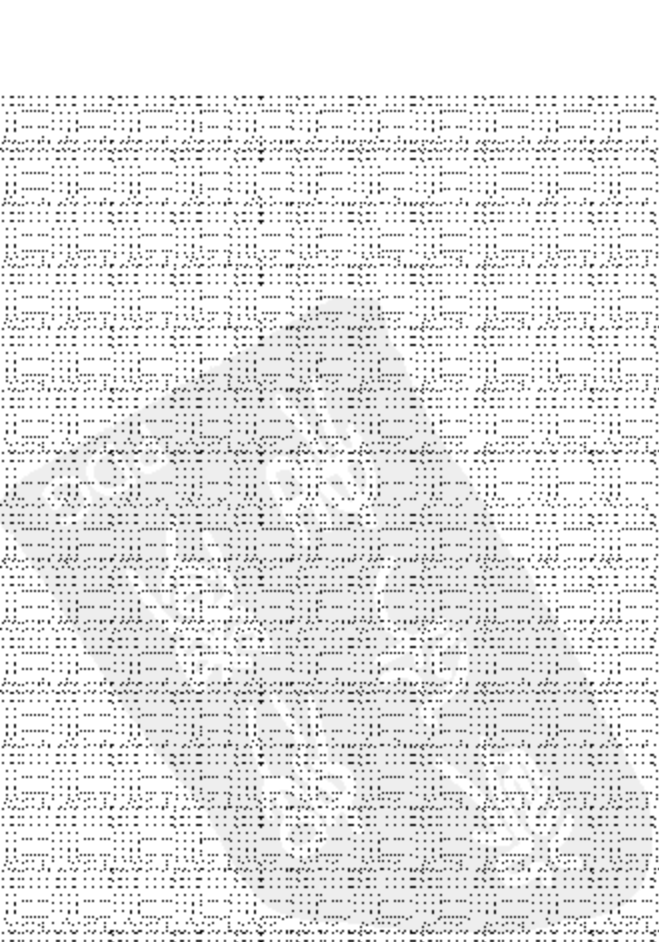
—10大最常用短语

G类考生特训

IELTS Letter Writing: Not Exactly an Art Form

G类的task 2议论文试题比A类议论文难度低一些，但是话题的方向和写作套路则是完全一样的。

— Pat



我自己的父母早年到美国工作，后来又移民加拿大，这为全家人比较安定的生活打下了较好的基础。近两年申请移民加拿大和澳洲的人数越来越多，但移民配额却并没有明显增加，所以明显有审查越来越严的趋势，尤其是语言方面。我从开始教雅思到现在，已经教过大量的 G 类同学，而我发现最近我教的 G 类学生里开始有越来越多的同学被使馆要求听说读写考四个 7 分。退一步说，即使移民官不要求你考这么高的分数，那也总是 IELTS 考分越高免面谈的可能性越大。

G 类的 task 2 议论文试题比 A 类议论文难度低一些，但是话题的方向和写作套路则是完全一样的，判分的时候考官打分比 A 类考生要求会松一些。根据我长期比较的结果，考 A 类能考 6 分的同学，如果改考 G 类作文是有可能达到 7 分左右的。所以对于广大的 G 类考生来说，我强烈建议大家准备 task 2 议论文的时候按照前面第一天到第八天所讲的 A 类议论文的写作方法来准备，这样你才会真正有把握地去考 G 类议论文。如果你一直只练习 G 类相对简单一些的议论文题目，有可能导致准备不足。

至于书信，它是 G 类考生必考的 task 1。总的来说，书信的难度比 A 类的图表作文低一些，如果准备充分，甚至可以得到非常高的分数，对总分有极大的好处。所以我对移民类考生的建议是：一定不要轻视书信，考试前至少练习 3 ~5 篇，而且每一篇都应该严格按照本章内容给大家提的要求去练习。

书信的格式大家可以参考 Day 1 后部的问题解答“作文考试应该用什么样的格式和字迹?”。书信部分用齐头式和缩入式都可以，但切忌混用。如果正文用齐头式，则署名放在左下角；如果正文用缩入式，则署名放在右下角。

书信的 3 大纪律

雅思的书信题不是什么书信都会考的，而是主要集中在 5 大类：

Making a request	提出要求或者请求的信
Making suggestions	提出建议的信
Making an apology	道歉信
Making a complaint	抱怨信
Thank-you letters	感谢信

从写作特点上来看，特别提醒 G 类同学注意以下“3 大纪律”：

纪律一：书信和 A 类议论文最大的区别在于，书信是允许考生在主体段对情节进行合理联想的。换句话说，A 类的图表题是看学生有没有能力读大学，而 G 类的书信是看学生有没有

能力在英语国家顺利地生活。只要书信的情节符合生活常识，考官是可以允许考生进行适当联想来让书信的情节更充实的（当然即使是联想也不能跑题，特别应该参考原题里面给的三条参考信息）。而且正是因为书信允许有一部分合理的想象，所以即使我们遇到一些想不出的生词，也往往可以适当修改情节用一些其他比较简单的词汇来替换。在后面的范文里我们会看到一些主体段里适当的想象内容。

纪律二：书信的用词我们应该追求稳妥，一方面不需要使用过大的词汇，另一方面也一定不能过于口语化，甚至俚语化（slangy）。参加移民类考试的同学多数都有工作经验，有不少还有写商业英语信函的经历，但请注意：雅思的书信考试完全没有必要像商业公文那么正式（这点从《剑8》的书信体现得尤其明显），即使是比较正式的话题，只要保证不用太口语化的词汇就已经很好了。另一个极端是有些考生工作中常年用 email 和英语国家人士进行沟通，而 email 往往对语法和用词要求得并不严格，导致这些考生对英文书信产生某些误解，书信里时不时地出现 guy，wanna，gonna 这种非常口语化的词汇，甚至爆出一些粗口，实在令人触目惊心。希望大家仔细体会下面大量范文里的用词风格，形成正确的书信用词观念，避免两个极端。

纪律三：写书信切忌“福尔摩斯”式的倾向。有些同学工作经验丰富，思维也很严密，但是在合理虚构情节的时候却走向了另一个极端：主体段的正文部分过于追求逻辑的完美，最后写出来的书信也确实精彩，却导致考试时间不够用，这种情况同样令人惋惜。考试是在时间允许的前提下尽可能写好，但并不是追求完美，这一点也提醒广大 G 类考生注意。

书信的结构

关于雅思的书信，除了开头的称呼和最后的英文“此致敬礼”，我一般推荐学生主体段写四段式，即

段　落	目　的	长　度
主体段一	很简要地提出写信目的，是请求、建议还是感谢等等	1～2 句
主体段二	写明是什么促使自己写这封信，具体来讲： 1）Making a request 请求信 第二段应大致说明自己面临的情况和需要的帮助 2）Making suggestions 建议信 第二段应大致说明自己面临的情况和自己的建议是什么 3）Making an apology 道歉信 第二段应大致说明自己做了什么并对对方产生了什么影响 4）Making a complaint 抱怨信 第二段应大致说明对方做了什么并对自己产生了什么影响 5）Thank-you letters 感谢信 第二段应大致说明对方做了什么并给自己带来了什么好处	3～4 句

（续表）

段　落	目　的	长　度
主体段三	进一步提出自己希望的效果，具体来说 1）Making a request 请求信 第三段应进一步细化自己的请求 2）Making suggestions 建议信 第三段可以进一步提出自己的建议最核心的部分，或者提出另一种替代性的方案 3）Making an apology 道歉信第三段可以提出自己如何挽回的方法 4）Making a complaint 抱怨信 第三段进一步说明对方给自己造成的麻烦有多严重 5）Thank-you letters 感谢信 第三段更进一步说明对方替自己做的事有多么重要 请注意，第三个主体段往往是需要我们发挥自己的想象力，合理编造一些情节的段落	5句左右
主体段四	希望尽快得到回音，具体来说： 对于 1）Making a request 请求信 2）Making suggestions 建议信 这两类信，第四个主体段是表示希望自己尽快收到回复 对于 1）Making an apology 道歉信 2）Making a complaint 抱怨信 3）Thank-you letter 感谢信 这三种信，第四个主体段是进一步希望对方尽快采取行动，比如调查此事（对于抱怨信），或者是要求与写信人见面（对于感谢信），或者保证自己会有所行动（道歉信）	1~2句

雅思书信分类范文

Making a request 请求信

例题一（本文摘自环球雅思学校强化写作教材）

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

You are organizing a trip to the Snowy Mountains in New South Wales for a group of students from

Perth in Western Australia.

Write to the manager of Student Hostel Services and in your letter explain

- *when you want to visit the Snowy Mountains*
- *how long you will stay*
- *how many students are in your party and what accommodation you will require.*

You should write at least 150 words.

You do NOT need to write your own address.

Begin your letter as follows:

Dear

分析:

这是一封典型的 request 信，写四段，第一段简要说明自己会带一些人到当地旅行，第二段说明一些要求，比如逗留时间和需要哪些类型的房间，第三段可以有些想象，比如希望旅店提供其他的帮助，第四段写希望尽快得到回复。

请注意下文的格式。如果选择主体段每段开头退后 4 ~5 个字母，则最后署名放在右下角。如每段开头顶格写，则最后署名在左下角。

Dear Sir /Madam,

I am writing to seek accommodation in the Snowy Mountains for a group of students from Perth.

We expect to be the Snowy Mountains between June 1 and June 12. There are fourteen people in our group, five men and seven women, and a married couple. The five men will accept dormitory accommodation, and the women are happy to share rooms, but the married couple would like a double room. We hope to keep our expenses as low as possible.

Please tell me about recreational services in the area. The group will bring their own boots for bushwalking, but we are hoping to hire equipment for other sports, like skiing. Some of our group will want to hire geological picks and other equipment, if possible. We also need to know about access to caves and other interesting geological features in the area.

I am looking forward to receiving information about the Student Hostel Services and other facilities.

Yours sincerely,
Amanda Chan

Making suggestions 建议信

例题二

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

A library in your neighborhood plans to improve its equipment. As a frequent reader, please writing a letter to the administrator of this library and offer your proposals.

You should write at least 150 words.

You do NOT need to write your own address.

Begin your letter as follows:

Dear

分析:

典型的建议信可以分成四段。第一段说明自己的目的是提建议，第二段描述一下自己的想法，第三段提出自己建议里最核心的部分，第四段说明自己很希望得到回复。

Dear Sir/ Madam,

I am delighted to learn that your library is taking steps to upgrade its equipment and I am writing this letter to offer my suggestions.

As is known to all in this neighborhood, your library is not only essential for the local students, it also plays a crucial role in the work and leisure of the local professionals and retirees. Therefore, in my view, this library should be equipped with a wide range of equipment and facilities, including video and film collections, projectors, recording equipment and multi-media rooms to better facilitate the work, research and entertainment needs of the locals.

Most importantly, more computers with access to the Internet should be available in this library. As a biologist, I am very interested in the information about the latest developments in the biological labs around the world. To my great disappointment, only one computer in your library has Internet access. This situation should be changed immediately. Otherwise, more local residents would end up feeling disappointed with this library.

Since the information age has made this local library all the more important to our lives, I would be grateful indeed if you can take my proposals into serious consideration.

Yours sincerely,
Steve Atkins

Making an apology 道歉信

例题三 （本文摘自剑桥5 第170 页）

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

Your neighbors have recently written to you to complain about the noise from your house/flat.

Write a letter to your neighbors. In your letter

- *explain the reasons for the noise*
- *apologise*
- *describe what action you will take.*

You should write at least 150 words.

You do not need to write your address.

Dear James,

I was very shocked to get your letter saying that the noise from my flat has been spoiling your evenings and causing you some distress. I am really, really sorry about that. I had no idea that you would be able to hear so much, so I hope you will accept my apologies.

As you may have guessed, I am trying to refit my kitchen in the evenings when I get home from work. Unfortunately it is all taking longer than expected and I have been having problems with getting things to fit properly. This has meant a lot of banging and hammering.

As the kitchen is still not finished, I have decided to call in a professional builder who will finish the work in the next day or two. He'll work only during daytime hours, so you won't be disturbed in the evenings again, I promise.

Sorry to have caused the problems.

Bill

Making a complaint 抱怨信

例题四 （本文摘自环球雅思学校强化写作教材）

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

Your have bought a washing machine (Sanyo XQB 50-68). First you found that the machine damaged your clothes, and you had it changed. Then you found that the new one seriously entangled the clothes.

Write to the manager of the factory to complain about it.

You should write at least 150 words.

You do not need to write your address.

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to complain about a product made by your factory.

A few months ago I purchased a washing machine (Sanyo XQB 50-68) produced by your factory. After a few weeks I found that it had seriously damaged the clothes. I asked you to change one for me, which you did. Now I want to ask you to change this one for me again.

This one does not damage my clothes any more, but I have found that it entangles the clothes seriously and when it automatically begins to spin the water out, the machine shakes so heavily that it stops by itself. In the instruction booklet you have not mentioned this defect and neither have you told the user how to solve the problem. I am quite annoyed by the fact that sometimes when I came back from work to take the clothes out to dry, they were still unwashed. When I am home, I have to tend it frequently to untwist the entangled clothes. Is that what you call your machine "fully automatic"?

Please change a new one for me that will not entangle the clothes. Otherwise, I would ask you to give my money back, or I would complain to the Consumers' Association.

Yours sincerely,
Jack

Thank-you letters 感谢信

例题五 (本文摘自环球雅思学校强化写作教材)

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

You have just arrived in the city where you are going to spend two years for your master's degree. You have a lot preparation to do before the new term starts, but you do not know how to go round the city. A friend you have newly acquainted offered you guidance and helped you through difficulties.

Write a letter to express your thanks.

You should write at least 150 words.

You do not need to write your address.

Dear David:

I am writing this letter to thank you for the guidance you gave me.

I was a perfect stranger when arriving at this city. Once I lost myself for not knowing the way in a downtown street, although I stopped to ask some people for direction. As you know that was the first time for me to come up to this big city.

I bought a guidebook, but there were still difficulties in going round the city. The streets and shops puzzled me so much that I would rather stay indoors. It is your valuable guidance that has enabled me to go about the city without losing myself. I thank you very much for your kind help. Now I begin to know how to take the proper trolley-buses or buses. Yesterday I went downtown with some of my schoolmates to buy some stationery.

Lesson will begin in a few days. I will come over to see you some day next week and tell you everything that has happened to me.

Yours,
Linda

Extending an Invitation 邀请信

从应试角度来说 invitation 可以视为是一种非常客气的 request，但其写作方式与 request 还是有一些差异的，我们通过一篇《剑 8》范文来为大家说明。

例题六 （剑 8 真题）

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

You have recently moved to a different house.
Write a letter to an English-speaking friend. In your letter

explain why you have moved
describe the new house
invite your friend to come and visit.

Write at least 150 words.

分析： 这封邀请信属于剑 8 中要求写 informal/personal letter 的题目。所以这篇范文中使用了比较多的口语表达。请大家注意严格区分体例（并请特别注意文中标出蓝色字的部分），不要随意将这种口语化的风格套用到其他的正式书信考题中。

Dear Dave,

I am writing to let you know that at last we have moved to a bigger house! We just couldn't go on living in the two-bedroom bungalow now that the twins are growing up and the new baby has arrived. So we started looking — and one thing led to another and finally here we are in our new home.

I'm sure you'll like it. We have three bedrooms now, and a very modern bathroom and kitchen. The kids are happy because there is much more space with the big living room and the garden outside. But Michel is the happiest of all because he doesn't need to do much decorating.

Why don't you come round this weekend and see what you think of our new place? We

would all love to see you and if the weather is good we can have a barbecue in the garden.

Our new address and phone number are below, so give us a call and let us know when to expect you.

Lots of love,

Francoise

雅思书信常用模板和书信 10 大最常用短语

类型一 Request

I am writing to request your assistance.

Would you please advise me regarding...

I would like to request materials for...

I would be very grateful if you could send me information on...

I would like to inquire about...

I would like to reserve one room for... from... to...

The room should be big enough to accommodate... people comfortably.

I wish to reserve it in advance to...

I would appreciate your prompt reply regarding the availability of...

I am writing to express my interest in your recently advertised position for a...

I am writing in response to your advertisement in... on...

This morning I happened to see your advertisement.

I am fully convinced that I am the right person for the advertised job.

Enclosed with this letter is my resume, which gives further details of my work experience.

I feel my qualifications and work experience would make me a good candidate for the job.

I believe I would be a strong asset to your company.

I would like to meet you at your earliest convenience.

Please contact me at your earliest convenience.

I'm writing this letter to request your assistance in finding my...

I'm writing to invite you to...

We would feel really honored if you could come.

I would be more than happy if...

I would very much like you to participate in the...
I really hope you can make it.
I hope all this eventually works out.
I look forward to the pleasure of your company.

In these circumstances, I find it difficult to...
I would be very grateful if you would consider this request at your earliest convenience.
Thank you for your kind assistance.

类型二 Making suggestions

I would like to suggest that...
It seems to me that you could...
I am very glad to hear that..., so I am writing this letter to offer my suggestions.
I hear you are planning a trip in...
...is a must-see as it boasts...
As you must be well aware, ...
I hope you have as much fun as I had.
That way, you will find that...
That way, ... would be ensured.
I would really appreciate it if you take my proposals into serious consideration.

类型三 Apology

I'm writing to apologise for...
I would like to give you my apology for...
Please accept my sincere apology for...
In response to your kind offer of a position with your company, I am afraid that I have to decline.
However, I regret to inform you that...
I assure you the problem is temporary and it will not arise again.
I hope you are able to grant my request and apologise for...
Once again, I am sorry for the inconvenience caused.
Hope you can accept my apology and understand my situation.
Thank you for your understanding.
To make up for my thoughtless behavior, I hope to invite you to.

类型四 Complaint

I'm writing to bring to your attention the unprofessional attitude of one of the members of your staff.（抱怨人）
I'm sorry to inform you that...（抱怨事）
I wish to complain about a... which I bought... days ago in...（抱怨物品）
I'm writing to express my dissatisfaction with...（抱怨人＋抱怨事＋抱怨物品）

类型五 Thank-you Letter

It was very enjoyable to speak with you about...
Thank you for all the help you have given me with...
Thank you for taking the time out of your busy schedule to...
I appreciate the time you took to...
I very much enjoyed...
I especially appreciate...
Your assistance has been invaluable to me during this process.
Your help and support is greatly appreciated.

雅思书信中的十个最高频表达

As you know，...
To make/ cut a long story short...
As a result，...
In addition，...
Besides，...
Therefore，...
Unfortunately，...
By the way，... / Incidentally，...（比 By the way 略正式）
Anyway，...（在较为 personal 的信中表示让步，如剑桥例句：Anyway，I have to stop now because my sister is staying with me and has brought my baby nephew to meet me.）
On top of all this...

每日一练 Question of the Day

判断练习

请判断下面 task 1 属于 5 种书信中的哪一种类型，并根据本章学习的内容迅速写出正文的开头段和结束段：

1 *You are due to start a new job next week but you will not be able to because you have some problems.*

Write a letter to your new employer.

You should write at least 150 words.

2 *You went shopping one day and you had received very bad service in a shop. You want to complain to the boss.*

Write a letter to complain about the bad service.

You should write at least 150 words.

全文写作练习

1 请利用今天学到的知识在 20 分钟内完成下面的书信：

You have just spent a weekend staying at the Holiday Inn Hotel in Beijing. When you get home you find that you have left a suitcase at the hotel.

Write to the manager of the hotel and inquire whether the suitcase has been found.

You shouldwrite at least 150 words.

2 请利用今天学到的知识在 20 分钟内完成下面的书信：

From an advertisement you learn that a company has the position vacant in an engineering department. You are a postgraduate student with a master's degree from Mechanical Engineering Department of Lance University and have participated in the Professional Training Program as Programmer Trainee. You have just arrived in the United States and you want to have the job.

You should write at least 150 words.

Answer Key 练习答案

判断练习

1 本题属于5大类中的apology道歉类，下面是一个供参考的正文开头段：

I am writing concerning the position of Assistant Office Manager that I am due to start next Monday. However, a problem has arisen.

下面是一个供参考的正文结束段:

I would like to emphasise that I remain very keen to work with you and that I am sure I will be gaining valuable experience in your company.
I look forward to hearing from you.

2 本题属于5大类中的complaint抱怨信类，下面是一个供参考的正文开头段:

Much to my regret, I write this to place a complaint against one of your shop assistants for his bad service.

下面是一个供参考的正文结尾段:

I look forward to your reply and a resolution to the problem I have had. Otherwise I will seek help from a consumer protection agency.

全文写作练习

1 Dear Sir/ Madam,

I am writing to you in the hope that you can help me find my lost suitcase.

I stayed in your hotel on November 27th and November 28th. I was in Room 406. When I returned home, I discovered that I had left my suitcase at the hotel. Now I wonder if you could check with your Lost and Found Department to see if my suitcase is there.

The suitcase is black. It measures about 12″ × 9″ × 18 and has a black nylon lining and a retractable handle. Inside the bag, you would find a day planner, a PDA, some pens and some brochures. These things are not very valuable in money terms, but they have great personal value.

I would really appreciate it if you could contact me as soon as possible, particularly

because I need the PDA for a presentation this week. Thank you very much for your kind help.

Yours sincerely,
Elaine

② Dear Sir /Madam,

I am writing to you in response to your advertisement for an engineer.

From your advertisement on New York Times, March 24, I have learned that you need an engineer in your mechanic department. I have been seeking a position in the engineering department in which I may use my training in computer sciences to solve engineering problems and I would be interested in exploring the possibility of obtaining such a position within your firm.

I received a Master's of Science degree in mechanical engineering from Lance University in June. 1995, Since September 1997 I have been participating, through my university, in Professional Training Program as programmer Trainee and have gained a great deal of experience in computer applications. Details of the academic courses that I have taken are contained in the enclosed resume.

Thank you for your time and consideration.

I look forward to the opportunity to personally discuss why I am particularly suited to this position. Please telephone me at after 4. 00 p. m. to suggest a time that we may meet. I can also be reached by email at jet@ olee. com.

Yours sincerely,
Steven Han

终于该上战场了

十天艰苦卓绝的攻坚战，终于到了尾声，而 IELTS 写作考试，也已经 just around the corner（近在咫尺了）。在各位烤鸭“飞”赴考场之前，仔细核对下面的表单，并且在你已经完成的工作项目上画√：

Checklist

❶ 你是否已经熟练掌握了思考素材的分类法、替代法和裸奔法，并可以在一分钟内思考出任何议论文题目的素材（写作真题与思路详解请参阅《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与6-9分范文全解》)?

❷ 你是否已经熟记了雅思议论文必备的 136 个单词，需要冲 7 的同学是否已经掌握了 288 个高分词汇和附录 H 与附录 I?

❸ 你是否已经了解了英语句子的 5 种核心成分和 3 种句子，需要考高分的同学是否掌握了实现句式多样化的 12 种方法（Day 4)?

❹ 你是否已经理清了复杂句的 6 种内在关系各自对应的高频连接词和 36 个必备基础句型，需要考高分同学是否已经记忆了 63 个高分句型?

❺ 你是否已经熟知 Argumentation 和 Report 题的常用结构（不使用模板的雅思范文请参考 Day 8 下)?

❻ 你是否已经熟悉图表题每一段的常用结构，特征数据选取原则，task 1 核心词汇是否已经可以正确拼写?

❼ 移民类同学是否已经可以快速区分 5 种书信并安排每段结构，是否已经有了每种书信开头和结尾段的写法?

如果你发现上面有任何一个问题没有画√，请立刻回到相应章节复习相关知识。我们需要的是对雅思作文真正充分的准备，而不是到考场里去碰运气。

下面这个表格的内容，每次考前我都会跟自己的学生叮嘱一遍，请大家仔细阅读一下。

IELTS 写作和口语考试特别重要的九件事

	注意事项	重要度
1	Report 和 Argumentation 的写法不一样，尤其要注意开头段写法完全不一样	★★★★★
2	主体段中各分论点后面的支持句如果时间够就可以多写几句。牢记支持句是议论文里最体现实力最拿分的部分，尽量写成复杂句（但也不用太复杂），多用加分句型和词汇	★★★★★
3	考试之前大作文应该至少练习 3 篇，小作文至少要练习 1 篇	★★★
4	如果打算使用模板，我们一定要首先保证安全，再追求效果，而且模板完全可以突破。有原创能力的同学请认真体会本书 Day 8（下）和《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》一书中不依靠模板写出的范文	★★★★★
5	实战中议论文素材不应追求深刻（profound），考场里只要合理（reasonable）的素材就是好素材。即使是剑桥 4 ~8 后面的考官范文也极少有深刻的，多数只是合理	★★★
6	主体段不是必须要举例子。如果想不出恰当的例子那就推理论证，比如因果、假设、让步等也都很好，请复习 Day 5 讲过的连接词	★★★
7	Report 类题概率可能是 10% ~15%，因此如果考前时间不够应该重点准备 Argumentation	★★
8	考试之前练习口语用老师近期预测的题目就可以，但是一定要把答案说出来，不能只想不说。您头脑里面想的答案用嘴说出来可能是完全不一样的。练习不用时间很长，但是最好每天能练习 10 分钟以上，保持一种想说英文的惯性	★★★★
9	如果从来没有和老外说过话，最好考试之前找外教练习一下，人生里第一次面对蓝眼睛最好不要是在考场里	★★★★

最后，再跟大家强调一下 IELTS 议论文考场实战 6 步，一定要熟练。再次强调：考场如战场，一分钟都不可以浪费。

◆ Step 1

看懂 task 2 题目后，首先判断题目类型——是 Argumentation 还是 Report?

◆ Step 2

快速确定结构。

Argumentation 四段式

Ⅰ	2 ~4
Ⅱ	1 +6
Ⅲ	1 +4
Ⅳ	2 ~3

Report 四段式

Ⅰ	2 ~4
Ⅱ	1 +6
Ⅲ	1 +6
Ⅳ	2

（注意主体段分论点后面的支持句如果有时间完全可以多写几句，支持句不追求 profound，只要 reasonable）

◆ Step 3

使用“裸奔法”（TM STREEC $）快速确定主体段的分论点。注意对于雅思作文的素材（分论点），我们追求的也是 reasonable（合理）而没必要 profound（深刻）。

◆ Step 4

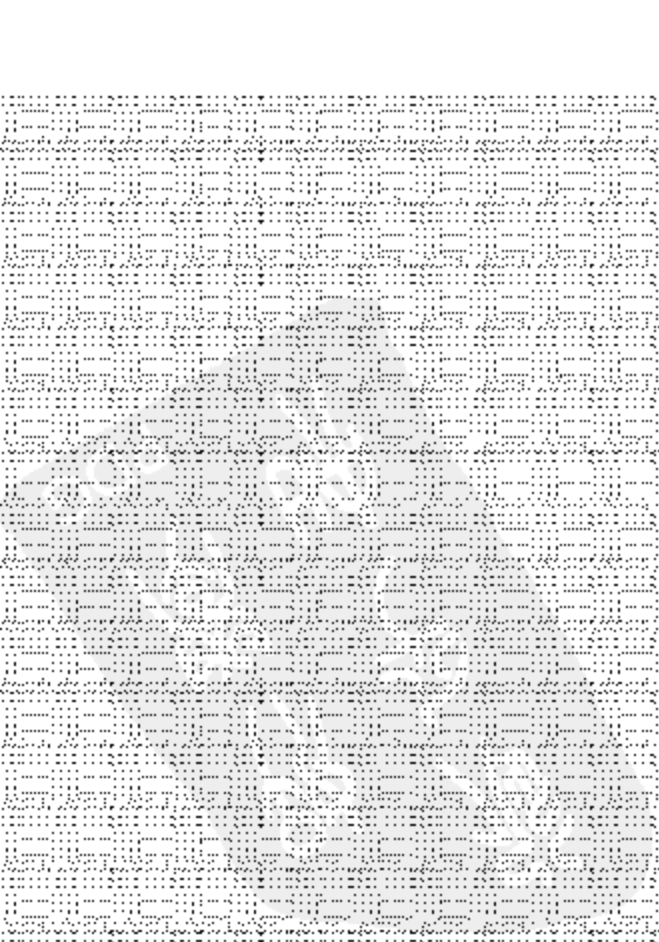
有实力原创的同学完全可以冲破模板的限制自己写，但仍然要注意保持逻辑结构的清晰与完整，剑桥范文从来不会是结构混乱的文章。

◆ Step 5

主体段里集中使用前面学过的 Day 3 的 136 个必备的词汇，Day 4 的 12 种句式多样化手法，Day 5 的六大类常用连接词，Day 6 的 36 个基础句型，需要考高分的同学还可以充分调动 Day 3 的 288 个高分词汇，附录 H 的加分动词，附录 I 的 211 同义词工程 以及 Day 6 的 63 个高分句型，以达到用词造句方面的高端要求。

◆ Step 6

写句子时始终牢记 Day 4 强调避免的“语法七宗罪”。本书中讲述的内容大家熟练之后一般都可以在 40 分钟内顺利完成议论文，一旦考官叫停就必须立刻停笔，否则考官将在你的试卷上做记录。



IELTS

附　录

附录A 冲破模板的1000种可能性

附录B 43个原创雅思作文高分背诵段落

附录C 我怎么做预测

附录D 雅思写作考什么

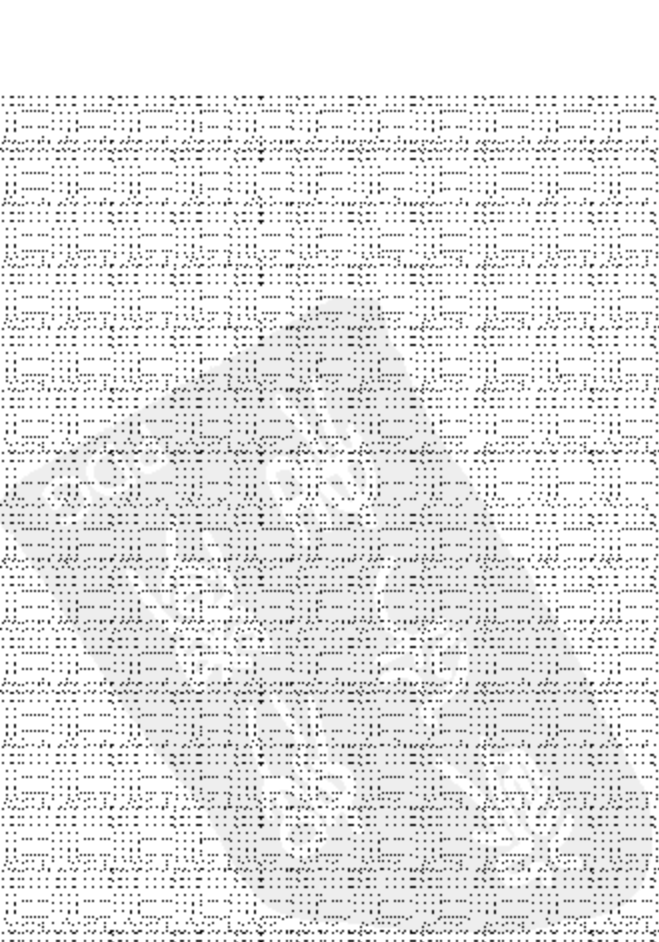
附录E 如果计划在国外考雅思

附录F 雅思作文可以引用的名人名言汇总

附录G 鲜为人知却极为实用的英文写作网站

附录H 那些让你的论证更加给力的verbs

附录I 雅思写作之211替换工程&211重点SPot Check



附录A
Appendix A

突破模板的1000种可能性

在国内从事雅思写作教学的五年半中，我一直坚持给环球雅思“基础＋强化班”的学生批改作文，累计超过2万篇。我批改作文有两个特点：① 每篇文章都是一字一字地修改。作为主讲教师，学校从来没有要求我为学生改作文，但这是我给自己规定的一个教师的应尽义务。如果仅仅只是为了应付，那么我宁可不去做这件事；② 只修改不地道的英文，但是不限制文章的思路。在我看来，只要是原创的、扣题的作品，任何思路其实都是可以写出说服力的，只是看一个教师会不会引导学生去深入论证。

本小节前半部分的几篇文章都是考生习作，语言由我修改过，但思路都还是每个作者自己的，而且都没有用模板。而在本小节的后半部分，我收入了自己为环雅写作课程创作的几篇原创范文。对于希望彻底征服 IELTS essays 以至出国后在大学里经常需要写 academic essays 的朋友们，对这些不同话题的高分范文进行分析和比较，将会对今后英语议论文的写作打下极为深厚的基础。

请相信 Pat 的话，只要你愿意下苦功夫去用心研究，勤于思考，而且找到一个真正负责任的老师帮你不断改进你的作文，雅思议论文冲破模板的可能性真的可以有 1000 种（更多不使用模板的雅思范文请参阅本书姐妹篇《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》）。

❶ 建筑类

Some people think all the new buildings should be built in traditional styles. To what extent do you agree?

学生习作 1（修改前）

In contemporary society, whether the buildings in cities should be built in traditional ways has been debated by people from all walks of life. People have different views about this hot-button topic. Some people hold that traditional style buildings should be recommended while many others maintain that modern style buildings outweigh traditional ones.

On the one hand, some buildings should not be built in traditional styles. Initially, it is obvious

that modern buildings outweigh traditional buildings because of structures, materials and functions. For instance, modern industrial buildings, such as factories with advanced materials and structures, increase productivity. Most modern factories possess large warehouses that contain heavy equipment used for assembly line production, which traditional factories do not have. Traditional industrial factories fail to meet the demand of modern manufacture. For the second place, modern buildings could give city dwellers access to agreeable living. For example, modern commercial buildings, such as modern shopping malls and clubs, can not only enable individuals to enjoy their lives, but also better the cityscape.

On the other hand, some buildings should be built in traditional styles. Some buildings, such as churches and temples, stand for certain culture identities. As a result, their traditional styles should be preserved. Besides, residential buildings, in my point of view, should be built in traditional styles. Although modern high-rise residential buildings could save the land they occupy, city residents prefer living in traditional flats or houses due to the comfortable and quiet environment.

Based on the arguments offered above, buildings in modern styles having irreplaceable advantages. However, buildings in traditional styles have their particular significance. I will come to the conclusion that whether buildings should be built in traditional styles should depend on their types.

从 body paragraphs 可以看出，这个同学的写作水平在雅思考生中其实还是不错的，词汇量比较大，而且用词准确度（accuracy and precision of the diction）高于考生的平均水平（upper-intermediate）。文章的论证（reasoning）是扣题的（The answer addresses the issue relevantly），分论点后面有支持句而且举了例子（Points are well-argued and supported with examples.）。但是本文的缺点同样明显：套用模板过于生硬（rigidly），很多地方有明显的低级错误（It contains numerous errors in grammar, usage and mechanics.），论点之间的连接有时候不够严密（Some ideas are not connected with clear transitions.），而且有些例子并不是和分论点密切相关（Some examples deal with tangential matters.）。另外，结尾段的结论内容比较机械而且重复（mechanical and redundant）。

Pat 修改后：

Architects often find themselves in a dilemma when trying to decide whether the exterior of their design should convey a traditional feel.

Modern architectural styles are, in many cases, indeed superior to their traditional counterparts in terms of structures, materials and functionality. For instance, industrial buildings, such as factories with large-span, reinforced-concrete structures augment the

productivity because they can accommodate the enormous workshops where heavy equipment is stored and used for assembly-line production. This superiority can also be confirmed by the example of the high-rise residential complex that is more compact and therefore helps urban developers to save valuable land.

More importantly, modern-style buildings offer city-dwellers better living conditions. This can be best illustrated with the modern commercial buildings, such as shopping malls and department stores wrapped with exquisite curtain walls, which not only enable city residents to enjoy our lives more, but liven up the cityscape as well.

Nevertheless, the traditional style may be a sensible option for some urban projects, for example, new churches and temples, which represent specific cultural identities. Also, the location of the construction site should be taken into consideration. Architects who are responsible for new projects in traditional neighbourhoods should try not to rip apart the historical fabric with starkly contrasting designs (A telling example would be the complaints surrounding Frank Gehry's odd-shaped Stata Center on the MIT campus.)

Perhaps some residential-building designers can integrate traditional elements into their design. After all, there are individuals who still prefer to live in traditional apartments or houses, regardless of the condition they are in, because of the comfortable layout.

Overall, my conclusion is whether buildings should be built in traditional styles should be determined on a case-by-case basis, depending on their location and the exact purposes that they serve.

dilemma	*n.*	两难的处境
exterior	*n.*	外观
convey	*v.*	传达
feel	*n.*	这个词和 feeling 经常被国内考生弄混，其实 feeling 是指人的感受，而 feel 也经常可以作名词，指事物给人的感受
as	*conj.*	因为（这里作连词）
superior	*adj.* + to	比……优越
functionality	*n.*	基本就是 function 的同义词，不过指代的范围更广泛，这个词被评为去年全美最流行的词汇之一
span	*n.*	跨度
reinforced concrete	*n.*	钢筋混凝土
augment	*v.*	提升
productivity	*n.*	生产率

（续表）

accommodate	*v.*	容纳
high-rise	*adj.*	高层的
residential complex	*n.*	居民综合楼
compact	*adj.*	紧凑的
city-dweller	*n.*	城市居民
exquisite	*adj.*	精致的
liven up	*v.*	活跃
cityscape	*n.*	城市景观
neighborhood	*n.*	社区
rip apart	*v.*	撕裂
historical fabric	*n.*	历史的脉络
a telling example	*n.*	一个有说服力的实例
Frank Gehry	*n.*	弗兰克·盖里（他为麻省理工大学设计的 the Stata Center 因为形式怪异与 MIT 的校园很不和谐，大家可以在我的博客相册里看到我亲手拍摄的该建筑照片）
integrate	*v.*	结合
layout	*n.*	布局
determine	*v.*	决定

下面的前五篇文章是近期由我修改过的学生作文。但我主要是为同学们润色语言，而学生原来的观点则尽量保留，因为在我看来，独立思考是写出高分作文（7 分或者以上）必备的能力。

❷ 教育类

Some people think intelligent students should be educated together with other students. Do you agree or disagree?

学生习作 2

Today, it is not uncommon for talented students to get admitted to gifted programs.

Letting these students take special courses makes practical sense. Gifted students need a challenging curriculum as they are fast learners and their learning process requires little

repetition of the information taught. If the material is too easy, they may feel unmotivated or even end up acquiring nothing at all, which may lead to complete loss of interest in schooling. Also, intelligent students may feel isolated if they spend all their class time with their ordinary peers. They may feel they cannot fit in socially — that is to say, they can be overly sensitive and possibly have a harder time dealing with the day-to-day stress of school or growing up.

Even so, it should be pointed out that segregating gifted student from their average peers is not without its downside. Some educators believe such classes would drain schools of student leaders and role models. Moreover, such practice may send a message to those who take regular courses that their work is not as valued as the intelligent students', which may lower their self-esteem and leave them unmotivated academically.

So overall, I would suggest that gifted students spend their class time with their peers. In addition to that, they should be encouraged to take electives that can challenge them mentally.

gifted programs		特长生课程
curriculum	*n.*	授课内容的总称
acquire	*v.*	获得
isolated	*adj.*	孤立的
peer	*n.*	同龄人
sensitive	*adj.*	敏感的
drain	*v.*	吸干（这里指导致缺乏）
role model		榜样
self-esteem	*n.*	自尊
unmotivated	*adj.*	没有动力的
elective	*n.*	选修课

❸ 科技类

Many people ignore basic science today. What are the causes and what are your solutions?

学生习作 3

Recognised as the chief driving force behind productivity, science plays a crucial role in human development. Odd enough as it may seem, the significance of basic science is largely ignored by the general public today.

The reason for this unfortunate fact lies in the very nature of basic science.

First of all, basic science such as physics and chemistry has always been shrouded in mystery or secrecy. Their areas of research are highly specialized and their methodology of research are rarely publicized. This fact, combined with some prevalent sci-fi style rumors, has made scientists no better understood than centuries ago.

Further, the benefit of basic scientific research extends far beyond laymen's perception. Unlike applied science subjects, basic science concentrates on the development of theories rather than the design of any specific products for practical use. In fact, the period between the invention of a raw theory and its first application can be as long as several decades. For that reason, basic scientific projects hold little attraction to investors and therefore are undervalued. Consequently, the person who pioneered a theory is often unable to see it applied in his/her lifetime.

Basic science actually lays the foundation upon which any other subjects are built. The false ideas among people should be corrected. To achieve this objective, governments should afford scientists compensations and highlight their contribution to society. Meanwhile, scientific research should also be more actively publicized. Through more intensive interaction with the general public, scientists can, hopefully, change the classic stereotypes of "lab animals" and consequently gain the understand and respect they deserve.

In sum, causes of the ignorance of basic science are manifold. I am convinced that steps, including government efforts and media publicity of scientists, should be taken to address this disturbing trend.

... as it may seem		尽管……看起来……（倒装结构）
unfortunate fact	*n.*	不幸的事实
shroud	*v.*	围绕
secrecy	*n.*	保密的状态
layman	*n.*	外行
perception	*n.*	感知
stereotype	*n.*	思维定势

❹ 政府类

The government should stop putting money in national defense. To what extent do you agree?

学生习作 4

There has been much dispute over whether the government should spend money on self-defense or not. I believe national security is always of vital importance for countries. The real concern should be about how much money should be spent.

National security is critical to all governments. Reasonable amounts of money have to be spent on developing military technology and keeping enough soldiers to ensure the safety of a country. In Chinese history, there used to be a Song Dynasty that was the wealthiest dynasty in the history of this nation, or even the richest in the world at the time. Even so, the rulers put too much money in economic and cultural development and neglected the advance of its military power. That dynasty lasted less than a hundred years before it was destroyed by invaders. Currently, with the trend of globalization, conflicts between countries are frequent. The development of a country would not continue without a strong national-defense system.

Another reason supporting investment in national defense is that the technology developed for military use can often serve civil purposes as well. Take CDMA for example. It used to be telecommunications technology developed by the US army. But as it has been deployed across the world, millions of people are benefiting from the clear voice communication it has brought.

On the other hand, there are countries that put too much money in military forces. New weapons have been invented, so powerful that they can destroy the earth several times.

How much money would be reasonable for national-defense budgets remains a question. But one thing is for sure: countries should never ignore their national defense.

dispute	*n.*	争论
critical	*adj.*	关键的
military	*adj.*	军事的
civil	*adj.*	民用的
deploy	*v.*	部署

❺ 文化类

Artists should always be given the freedom to express their ideas. To what extent do you agree?

学生习作 5

Whether artists should be able to express their minds without any restrictions has been a

controversial issue.

It seems to me that artists' freedom is highly essential. The first point I would like to make is that only when the artists do not feel restricted in creating their paintings or sculptures is it possible for them to present truly original works of art; therefore, freedom is crucial for art to develop instead of repeating itself. Further, art, by definition, should be one of the most diversified parts of any culture. By that I mean the government should not restrain the artists' freedom in choosing techniques of expressing their creative ideas.

Admittedly, some rules made by the authorities to limit the freedom of artists serve useful purposes as certain methodologies of artistic expression are not so widely accepted socially. For example, the movie rating system in some countries can effectively ensure that sexually-oriented scenes do not reach the audience who may be adversely affected by them.

To conclude, I think artists' freedom in expressing their ideas should be protected to the extent that we have effective measures to make sure such freedom does not jeopardise social stability or other individuals' well-being.

diversified	*adj.*	多样化的
restrain	*v.*	限制
technique	*n.*	方法（注意和 technology 区别）
the authorities	*n.*	政府
methodology	*n.*	方法
adverse	*adj.*	负面的
jeopardise	*v.*	威胁

⑥ 全球化

Some people think that rich countries giving aid to the poorer countries have more negative impact than positive impact. To what extent do you agree or disagree.

学生习作 6

There is much debate surrounding the issue of wealthy countries aiding poor countries.

Those who support the international financial assistance emphasise its benefits. As a commonly-accepted measure, aid contributes to the infrastructural construction of poor countries. An example is that the World Bank whose key members are rich countries provides poor countries with low-interest loans each year, with which these countries develop their

infrastructure such as roads and pipelines efficiently. Also, it helps to save lives in needy countries as in these countries, many people are suffering from starvation, poverty or contagious diseases. Besides, a country that provides aids generously will be regarded as a responsible country and be respected internationally.

The opponents tend to focus on the potential side effects of foreign aid. The most critical problem has to do with fairness. Even in the most developed countries, there are people who are leading deprived lives. Therefore, such expenditure will be unfair to their taxpayers. In addition, the cause of poverty varies. Sometimes aid fails to assist a poor country in its development. Instead, it lends the people there an excuse — that is, the aid may not be put to good use. Moreover, aid without the tracking of its use may be a disaster. The aid, including loans and other supports, may be used for the purchase of weapons or end up driving up the incidence of corruption. Most importantly, it seems no foreign aid comes without a price — i. e. , it is always tied to some foreign-policy objectives.

Personally, I think international aid compromises the taxpayers' interests in the rich countries and may even lead to abuse of the aid. Therefore, it should be cut down on, if not stopped completely.

infrastructural	*adj.*	基础设施的
starvation	*n.*	饥饿
opponent	*n.*	反对者
has to do with		与……相关（是习惯用法）
deprived	*adj.*	贫困的
assist	*v.*	帮助
incidence	*n.*	发生率
corruption	*n.*	腐败
objectives	*n.*	目标
compromise	*v.*	牺牲

下面的几篇文章都是我在国内期间为环雅写作课程写的原创作品。

❼ 语言类

English is used by more and more people whose first language is not English. To what extent do you think the advantages of this trend outweigh the disadvantages?

范文（Pat 自己的作品）

Pat's Hints: 在中国，有越来越多的人学习和使用英语。这个现象到底是不是象语言完美主义者们（language purists）说的那么可怕？英语的历史说明：广泛的吸收别的语言并没有让英语失去活力（vitality）。相反，正是这种不断吸收外来语言的过程（language assimilation）让英语成为最有活力（the most dynamic），最强势（predominant）的语言。在 21 世纪，如果还要求一种语言保持“完全纯净”，拒绝接受任何外来语言的影响，那才是一种更真实的危险。

Quite a few fears and doubts have been raised in China about the "invasion" of English.

One of the main concerns is the possible erosion of the official language, or *putonghua*. Language purists have found it most disturbing that English expressions such as "Thank you.", "Bye." and "Oh, my God." are extensively used by their fellow countrymen and countrywomen alike. More serious accusations that have been leveled against English are that it weakens the cultural identity of China and that it leaves this country whose history can be traced back to millennia ago irretrievably westernized.

These concerns are not all legitimate. The Chinese language is, doubtless, a beautiful language that should be honored and cherished by us. But that does not mean it should never adopt words or phrases from other languages. In fact, throughout its history, English has been a heavy borrower that has been adopting words from almost every known language, only to make it more dynamic and more effective.

Personally, I would interpret the borrowing process as language assimilation over which a language is expanded and enriched rather than a process of language erosion when a language loses its distinctive features.

As for the apprehensions about the cultural domination of China, it has more to do with one's outlook on globalization. People, especially the young ones, are naturally curious about foreign cultures. So the demand is there. And languages are, by definition, vehicles for communication. In an age when cultural interaction between nations has become an irreversible trend, there is really no sense in isolating China culturally through playing down the significance of English, which would possibly present a far more serious and real threat to the survival of a culture in the 21st century.

My conclusion is, therefore, realistically the increasing international collaborations in political, economic, scientific and cultural spheres have made a predominant international language a practical necessity. And since English has been strengthening its status as such a language,

what we should be contemplating is not how we can hold back this trend, but how we can use it to our advantage.

invasion	*n.*	入侵
concern	*n.*	关注
erosion	*n.*	侵蚀
purist	*n.*	纯粹主义者
disturbing	*adj.*	困扰人的
extensive	*adj.*	广泛的
accusation	*n.*	指控
millennium	*n.*	千年（复数为 millennia）
irretrievably	*adv.*	不可逆转地
legitimate	*adj.*	站得住脚的
doubtless	*adv.*	无疑（注意虽然没有 ly 但它是副词）
honor and cherish	*v.*	珍惜，爱护（这两个词在英文中经常连在一起使用）
dynamic	*adj.*	有活力的
interpret	*v.*	解释，把……看作
language assimilation	*n.*	语言同化
distinctive features	*n.*	特征
apprehension	*n.*	恐惧或者严重的担心
domination	*n.*	统治
vehicle for communication	*n.*	沟通的工具
interaction	*n.*	互动
irreversible	*adj.*	不可逆转的
isolate	*v.*	孤立
play down	*v.*	贬低
realistically	*adv.*	现实地说
collaboration	*n.*	合作
sphere	*n.*	领域
predominant	*adj.*	领先的，首要的
necessity	*n.*	必需的东西

⑧ 发展类

Traditional games are more useful than modern games in developing children's skills. To what extent do you agree?

范文（Pat 自己的作品）

Pat's Hints: 有些人总是觉得过去比现在好（reactionary），而我却觉得现在的游戏对发展小孩子的能力有很大作用。当然，做什么事情都不可以过度（Moderation is the key to success.），传统游戏玩得太多也没有好处，为什么总是指责现代游戏呢?

I do not think traditional games are necessarily superior to modern games in terms of developing children's skills.

As a matter of fact, computer and video games may substantially contribute towards children's mental and emotional growth in a variety of ways. The therapeutic benefits that video games can yield on the recovery of some teenage patients suffering from memory loss have scientifically confirmed that these games activate certain parts of the brain.

On a more day-to-day level, many children's initial experience with a computer actually occurs with the game software that runs on that device. In essence, games have turned computers into endearing gadgets and helped the young players to overcome their apprehension and anxiety in getting used to an unfamiliar tool.

Professionally, as computer literacy is so essential to individual advancement today, PC and Mac games actually serve highly useful purposes in putting kids on the right track. Apart from that, in my observation, youngsters' passion for video games may well lead to promising career paths in the game design industry.

Most importantly, playing computer games can be an intensely competitive process and require a wide range of skills. Just watch how WoW (World of Warcraft) players try to fulfill their tasks. They team up, work closely with one another, and make the most of their individual analytical and strategic planning skills to achieve their objectives. I would be hard-pressed to think of any traditional games that can hone such a mixed variety of abilities within such a short period of time.

I admit there are video games that are violent in nature, which may make some teenagers aggressive to their peers. And researchers have proven that the rays from the game device hurt players' eyes. Further, unlike some traditional games, such as hide-and-seek and jumping rope, that involve running around, skipping or stretching, getting glued to electronic gadgets all the time could result in overly sedentary lifestyles, which is, doubtless, damaging

to adolescents' physical growth. But as far as the cultivation of kids' skills, I really do not think it would be sensible to claim that traditional games are absolutely more desirable.

So the key is, I believe, to set rules and limitations to prevent children from getting addicted to games rather than relegating all PSPs to locked drawers.

superior to	*adj.*	比……好，优于……
therapeutic	*adj.*	治疗的
recovery	*n.*	恢复
confirm	*v.*	证实
activate	*v.*	让……活跃
day-to-day	*adj.*	日常的
initial	*adj.*	起初的，开始的
endearing	*adj.*	讨人喜欢的
gadget	*n.*	实用的小工具
overcome	*v.*	战胜
apprehension	*n.*	担心
anxiety	*n.*	焦虑
computer literacy	*n.*	对计算机的了解
essential	*adj.*	关键的
Mac	*n.*	Apple 的操作系统
apart from	*prep.*	除了……之外
passion	*n.*	热情
competitive	*adj.*	竞争激烈的
fulfill	*v.*	实现，完成
strategic	*adj.*	战略的
I would be hard-pressed to …		= It is difficult for me to …
hone one's abilities		锻炼……的能力
aggressive	*adj.*	攻击性强的
peers	*n.*	同龄人
ray	*n.*	射线
hide-and-seek	*n.*	捉迷藏
skip	*v.*	跳
stretch	*v.*	伸展

（续表）

get glued to		盯着看……
sedentary	*adj.*	缺少运动的
adolescent	*n.*	（很正式）青少年
as far as …（is concerned）		就……而言（is concerned 这两个词其实经常可以省略）
cultivation	*n.*	培养
sensible	*adj.*	明智的
desirable	*adj.*	好的，积极的
limitations	*n.*	限制
relegate	*v.*	放到次要的位置
drawer	*n.*	抽屉

❾ 媒体类

Today, the high sales of popular consumer goods reflect the power of advertising and not the real needs of the society in which they are sold.

To what extent do you agree or disagree?

范文（Pat 自己的作品）

Pat's Hints: 这是剑桥系列中比较难的大作文题目，在 Day 8（下）中已经为大家分析过剑桥给出的范文。那篇文章里说了广告有影响是因为有明星，而且广告让产品看起来更漂亮。而 Pat 认为，更深层的原因（the underlying causes）是广告可以驱使（compel）消费者去微调（fine-tune）自己的需求（demand），而消费者并不会意识到自己其实已经改变了自己的需求（The messages have been subliminal.）。这才是广告的可怕（但对于 manufacturers 来说也许是可爱 appealing）之处。

In this essay, I will examine whether the increasing consumption of products results from advertising power rather than consumers' real needs.

Clearly, advertising heavily influences the consumers' decision-making process as it puts people in touch with the latest products and technology available. With the help of advertising, there are more chances for cutting-edge products such as iPods and iPhones to be understood by the target customers .

Further, advertising contributes towards the growth of popularity and trustworthiness of a brand. The more commercials on air, the better consumers get to know the brand. Consumers gradually build up their trust in the brand and will subsequently purchase more of the products. Over the process, people tend to fine-tune their demand after viewing commercials. That is precisely why some advertising points out inferior aspects of the target consumers, which would become the exact selling point that will lead to purchase of the product when the consumers try to eliminate or at least reduce that flawed part. An example that aptly illustrates this point would be the marketing strategy of Vichy, which exposes women's defects in its advertising, followed by solutions that Vichy offers to remedy the imperfections

Meanwhile, people are truly able to discover their own needs and to satisfy themselves even without being informed by advertisements. Humans are born with the natural desire to lead a better life. Apart from the basic necessities, we tend to search for what our peers own and try to possess those things if we happen to have the purchasing power. Also, customers' social status matters when commodities are sold. People prefer to own the goods matching their own status. For instance, the wealthy are more likely to buy Jaguars or Range Rovers as their transportation tool even though they have never been exposed to any Jaguar or Range Rover advertising.

Overall, I would argue that advertising plays a more critical role in creating profitability for companies, which has been empirically proven by the ever-increasing marketing and sales budgets in most industries. The fact that people know their real needs is still not the main driving force behind the high sales of consumer goods.

decision-making	(marketing term) *n.*	决策
target customer	(marketing term) *n.*	目标顾客群
commercial	*n.*	电子媒体中的广告
subsequently	*adv.*	接下来 = then
fine-tune	*v.*	微调
view	*v.*	观看
inferior	*adj.*	低劣的
the selling point	(marketing term) *n.*	卖点
eliminate	*v.*	消除
defect	*n.*	缺陷
remedy	*v.*	弥补
imperfection	*n.*	不完美

（续表）

social status		社会地位
matter	*v.*	起作用
commodity	*n.*	商品
the wealthy		有钱人（英文经常用 the 加形容词泛指一类人，后面的动词用复数）
empirical	*adj.*（empirically *adv.*）	来自实践的

附录B
Appendix B

43个原创雅思作文高分背诵段落

在长期的教学实践里，我还为那些需要考高分的学生创作过大量雅思作文的参考素材帮助他们备考。这里 Pat 为大家选登其中的 43 个段落。对于写作要考 7 分或者更高分数的同学，提供一些最常用的资料。这些段落有三个特点：

☆ 全部针对雅思写作的真题。

☆ 覆盖了雅思作文的全部十大类话题。

☆ 时间紧但分数要求高的同学只要从其中挑出你认为好记的词汇与句型尽快熟悉就好了。

Education

❶ 什么样的教育是好的教育

There is still no unanimous consensus on what constitutes a sound teaching methodology. However, in the new millennium, the best schooling at all three levels, primary, secondary and post-secondary, or tertiary, has five common characteristics: ① A good education encourages students to think independently and critically. It empowers them to evaluate their teacher's performance openly. Students are expected to have their own ideas and not just repeat what the teacher has told them. ② Good educational institutions aim to produce students who have integrity. These institutions instill not only knowledge, but also high moral values and principles. ③ Education should recognise the correlation and interaction between various disciplines and typically adopt a multi-disciplinary curriculum. ④ In stimulating educational environments, theoretical knowledge and practical, employable skills go hand in hand. ⑤Schools should not be segregated on racial, gender or intellectual grounds.

❷ 学生评价老师的坏处

The student evaluation of teaching (SET *) should be carefully monitored to ensure that the

---

* IELTS 写作中一般是不宜使用缩略语的，但 student evaluation of teaching（学生对教师工作进行的评价）是在英语国家教育中相当常见的固定短语，并经常被缩写成 SET，在这里用一下反而体现出对于西方社会真实生活的熟悉。

critique is based on classroom learning and not personality differences. Some students may make unfair comments about a teaching method because it is the teacher they don't like, not the method being taught. I have also observed students who criticise a teacher because they don't like school.

❸ 学生评价老师的好处

I believe SET is an effective way to motivate teachers to improve their lectures. Teachers should keep their methods current to meet the expectations of their students. Also, regular input gives teachers an objective and balanced view of their performance. Without such feedback, it would be difficult for teachers to have an accurate assessment of the way they teach. Finally, allowing student to evaluate their teachers makes the students better prepared for adult life because they become more independent in their decision-making and more critical in the way they think.

❹ 小孩在穷人家长大的好处（一）

Children raised in less fortunate households are conditioned early in their lives to exercise self-control and self-restraint. These individuals learn from infancy that they will not get everything they want right away. Every so often, their parents cannot provide what they want so the child must deal with the resulting sense of frustration or rejection. For the most part, these children see scrimping and saving, emotional uneasiness, frequent financial strains and menial first jobs as an integral part of life rather than a devastating ordeal. They are better able to manage stress in their adult years and are less likely to panic or become daunted when problems occur.

❺ 小孩在穷人家长大的好处（二）

Children brought up by parents of low or middle economic status often grow up to be physically, mentally and professionally more independent than children brought up by affluent parents. Children whose parents are not particularly well-off are more likely than children of affluent households to know how to get the most out of a modest allowance, if they do receive one. Children of less affluent parents believe that most desirable things in life have to be "earned", in other words, they must work hard to get what they want. Having busy, low or medium salaried parents gives a child more autonomy and initiative. This originally disadvantaged group becomes spontaneous and handy through making their own toys, resourceful by cooking their own meals, tactful with coaxing their parents into buying them gifts, intelligent without the luxury of private tutors, savvy in doing summer jobs, and above all, unrelenting in pursuing their dreams.

❻ 小孩在穷人家长大的好处（三）

Parents who do not have a great deal of money typically have higher and more definite

aspirations for their children than well-to-do parents. Because they know the disadvantages of a meager or fair-to-middling bank account, these parents pin their hopes on their children to make their families upwardly mobile. Therefore, they mostly have high behavioural, educational and (subsequently) occupational expectations for their children. This means they cannot be permissive parents. Spoiling their offspring is the last thing they want to do and they are always ready to discipline their children when they misbehave. They keep tabs on their children's grades and do not spare the rod when their children fail to measure up academically. The odds of children raised in such stern households having good problem-solving skills are apparently better than children raised otherwise.

Technology

⑦ 电子商务对个人的影响

This phenomenon has a profound impact on people. First, they are more efficient in business transactions and banking, and those who dread shopping are spared the chore of browsing in shops. Second, the increasingly sedentary lifestyle causes more ailments. More overweight people means more patients suffering from cardiovascular diseases such as vein hardening, diabetes and hypertension. Third, the absence of face-to-face contact may breed distrust between business partners. A telecommunicated negotiation may be ruined if negotiators can only see videos of each other transmitted via the Internet.

⑧ 电子商务对社会的影响

This trend has widespread repercussions on society as a whole. Burgeoning e-commerce will boost corporate efficiency immeasurably. Higher efficiency means more revenue and less cost for businesses. Online fraud in banking or trading, retail or wholesale, will be prevalent in cyberspace. Practicable and effective ways of curbing it are needed. The proliferation of e-commerce may exacerbate man's overdependence on technology, removing spontaneity and driving the tempo of life too fast and furious.

⑨ 用高科技在家上班对员工的好处

When their work is supervised from far away, employees do not have to live with the worry of their bosses constantly looking over their shoulders. Even better, they can afford to "slack off" a bit when the work-induced stress becomes too great. Telecommuting also spares workers from traveling back and forth to work every day, cutting the costs of bus fare, fuel or expensive work clothes.

⑩ 用高科技在家上班对雇主的好处

It would be wrong to think that employers cannot also profit from telecommuting. In the first place, there is less constraint, less peer pressure at work, no office politics and more flexible schedules that can boost employee morale and increase productivity. There is a large body of empirical evidence that shows that more freedom can lead to stronger motivation on the job and more innovative ideas. In the second place, telecommuting is a more economical option for the employer. A telecommuting workforce can help business-owners achieve substantial cuts to overhead costs, such as the rent and utilities. Thirdly, telecommuting via the worldwide communications network allows employers to recruit people from remote locations or even half way around the globe, which markedly increases the labor pool of businesses.

Media

⑪ 记者应该具备的素质（一）

A trustworthy journalist has the qualities of honesty and integrity. In this day and age, there are many temptations for the reporter to make up stories. Faced with these temptations, only professionals with high moral values can adhere to their code of ethics. Hence, the courage to always pursue and expose the truth about newsworthy events is very crucial to a journalist.

⑫ 记者应该具备的素质（二）

Determination and tenacity distinguish good journalists from mediocre ones. In today's world, journalists are regarded as the conscience of society, and many find it increasingly difficult to come up with factual news stories. It is not unusual for a journalist to receive severe warnings or even death threats from gang members or business tycoons when they set out to cover crimes and business scandals. Therefore it takes great determination and perseverance to be a genuinely dependable journalist.

⑬ 记者应该具备的素质（三）

A trustworthy journalist must be able to report keen observations on the covered events. To provide instructive coverage, a reporter must be able to analyse and synthesise the information he /she gathers. Penetrating insights and outstanding analytical skills are required to create in-depth coverage of events.

Animals

⑭ 动物实验的坏处

There is mounting empirical evidence that many animal experiments are performed without

regard to discomfort or pain that laboratory animals may endure. For one thing, improper confinement of test animals, such as locking them up in cramped cages is inhumane, which can severely disrupt the natural biological functions of the test animal. For another, the effects of vaccination or vivisection conducted on live animals can be chilling, and in extreme cases are nothing less than the sheer torture of animals.

⑮ 动物实验的好处

From a more pragmatic standpoint, evidence abounds that animal subjects are still an indispensable part of scientific research. Drug experimentation on live animals is far more effective than experimentation on bacteria or on other lower species in determining drug safety. Medical history shows that drugs that can have potentially grave side effects on humans should be tested by pharmaceutical companies on live animals first to determine their toxicity. In the arena of space research, live animals are practical alternatives on a flight not considered to be sufficiently safe for human astronauts. I would be hard-pressed to imagine that human lives should be put at risk when the objective of a space mission is merely to identify living creatures' reaction to outer space experience. Lastly, lab research about the behavioural tendencies of chimpanzees, gorillas or other members of the primate group is also a worthy endeavor because it generates outcomes that advance anthropological and genetic sciences.

Tourism

⑯ 游客不模仿当地风俗的好处

It is evident that cultural differences between tourists and local inhabitants should be preserved to some extent. Tourism is a manifestation of the human desire for variety and exploration, which lets tourists get first-hand experiences with an exotic culture that differs from their own. It would be hard to imagine how much pleasure and excitement we would lose if all the cultural differences between hosts and guests were eliminated. Further, the practicality of having all the tourists adopt the local customs and behaviour is questionable. After all, not all tourists would be willing to turn an expensive international trip intended for pleasure into a cultural lesson that requires hard work to learn.

⑰ 游客尊重当地风俗的好处

It is still necessary for tourists to conform to local customs and behaviour to some extent. For one thing, this helps tourists avoid many inconveniences and conflicts during their trips abroad. For instance, Asian tourists would be spared the embarrassment of upsetting their

servers if they follow the custom of tipping in an American restaurant. Likewise, Western travelers may avoid being highly obtrusive if they make it a point to remain calm and solemn in an Asian place of worship. Moreover, efforts to adopt the local customs and behaviour allow foreign tourists to better appreciate and identify with the local cultural heritage such as rites, rituals, folklore and even handicrafts.

⑱ 国际旅游业的坏处

There may be social and environmental drawbacks to international tourism. Specifically, the influx of tourists may intrude on the lives of many local inhabitants. Tourism is a manifestation of the human desire for variety and for exploration, and although some snooping and prying on the part of international tourists is inevitable, it may make locals disconcerted and apprehensive. As well, having many tourists travel between countries may cause serious biodiversity and ecological unbalances. The trail of non-biodegradable litter left behind by international tourists and the great amount of fossil fuel used in transportation pose grave environmental threats to the tourist destinations and beyond.

⑲ 国际旅游业的好处

International tourism produces even greater benefits on individual, communal, and societal levels. In the first place, it gives tourists opportunities to experience a foreign culture first-hand. In my observation, touring another country is a multi-sensory experience (tourists can see, hear, touch or even smell the exotic things at the destination spots), which is much more interactive than just peering at another culture through a TV or PC screen. In the second place, international tourism substantially boosts the economy of communities in the host country. Take China for instance. Over the past two decades, international tourism has generated colossal numbers of employment opportunities in China's retail, hospitality and transportation sectors and greatly increased the tax revenue of provincial and municipal governments. In the third place, the empirical knowledge gained during overseas journeys can help eliminate many of the stereotypes that tourists have about the host country and make for greater international understanding. For example, a brief trip in Saudi Arabia can show a Christian that not all Muslims are terrorists. To the contrary, most of them are nurturing parents and loving siblings who just have strong religious convictions that are different from Christianity.

Women

⑳ 女性参军的好处（一）

History has proven that women are fully capable of performing well in the military. Historically,

there are a host of valiant women soldiers whose achievements put their male counterparts to shame. One need only look at the world-renowned Joan of Arc and Mulan to see that women can perform exceptionally on the battlefield. I have observed that their determination, courage and dignity have been, and are still being admired by male soldiers and civilians alike throughout the world today.

21 女性参军的好处（二）

From an enlightened standpoint, female patriots should be granted the right to go to the front line when their country is involved in a war. Although gender inequality was a highly controversial issue in the twentieth century, ten years into the new millennium has shown that women can learn and teach, work and supervise, vote and be voted for in most countries, just like men. Given this sweeping progress in gender equality, there is really no sense in denying women the right to stand up for their home country when war breaks out.

22 女性参军的好处（三）

Common sense and our experience show us that, for the most part, servicewomen can operate modern weapons. Indeed, present-day weapons have a large degree of automation and digitisation. Although women are on average not as strong as men, it is an indisputable fact that most of them have the mental ability and the psychological soundness to operate highly automated weapons that do not require big biceps.

Crime

23 青少年犯罪的原因（一）

Many cases of juvenile delinquency have been attributed to the violent or pornographic content of some TV shows and video games. Now we are confronted with a proliferation of blood and nudity on TV, the computer and the Internet. This causes many youngsters, especially boys, to become addicted to such scenes. Without the capacity to distinguish between right and wrong, they develop criminal tendencies.

24 青少年犯罪的原因（二）

Parental neglect and domestic violence play a pivotal role in the increase of youth crimes. Today, there are an ever-growing number of dysfunctional families. Generally, the children raised in such families are far more likely to be constantly afraid. In the end, they develop a hatred for society and other individuals.

25 青少年犯罪的原因（三）

There is a symbiotic correlation between the increase of the juvenile crime rate and the rise of adult crime rate in society. In other words, more adult crimes increase the probability of youngsters falling prey to adult offenders. For instance, many youths are tempted by evil adults into committing crimes. Other young people who are victims of adult offenses become criminals themselves to get their revenge on society.

Languages & Culture

26 英语被广泛使用的坏处

The proliferation of English does not come without adverse effects. First, it renders a host of indigenous languages obsolete. According to a study conducted by UNESCO, over 200 ethnic languages became extinct in 2009, primarily due to the linguistic assimilation of ethnic minorities into the English language. Secondly, the expansion of English erodes the cultural identity of other races. Specifically, the prevalence of English has a chilling effect on the purity of other languages and it can aggravate the sense of cultural inferiority among the non-native speakers of English.

27 英语被广泛使用的好处

English as a global lingua franca enables cross-cultural communication. Today, for instance, eight in every ten international conferences designate English as their chief working language, and ninety-eight percent of leading scientific journals in the world are published in English or have an English version. Further, the extensive use of a common language has a unifying effect on people who do not speak the same mother tongue. Common sense tells us that language barriers cause some distrust or alienation, while a shared language makes for a sense of belonging and sympathy. Lastly, the expansion of English also enables people whose native tongue is not English to better appreciate the English-speaking cultures. It is generally accepted that many English-speaking cultures are among the richest and most dynamic cultures in the world. English learners can read the English literature in the original language, comprehend Hollywood blockbusters without having to read the subtitles and do not have to rely exclusively upon body language while touring English-speaking destinations.

Development

28 为什么拆老房子

The development of modern cities, both in population size and in functionality means existing

structures, whose history can often be traced back centuries, must be removed. In the first place, new construction must be proposed and carried out to accommodate the markedly increasing urban population. Given that almost all the present-day cities are already packed with places of residence, commerce and recreation and the land available for new housing developments is increasingly scarce, some historic buildings must be demolished to make room for more compact, high-rise buildings. Secondly, the fast-paced, highly automated and digitised modern city life has made some unremarkable old buildings redundant. Even if we renovated or remodeled these old structures to meet the requirements of a contemporary urban life that is best characterised by dynamism and convenience, the utility of retrofitted old buildings would still pale in importance compared to that of the modern buildings tailor-made for modern functions.

29 为什么有些老房子不能拆

There are other considerations that should prevail over the utilitarian value of historic buildings. First, some historic buildings represent specific historical events or figures. If such structures were all razed, there would be no accurate representation of the corresponding events and figures. Further, some historic buildings possess exceptional esthetic value and mere replication could never demonstrate the superior craftsmanship in them as vividly. Additionally, many historic dwellings embody the distinctive lifestyle of ethnic minority groups. Without a doubt, it would be an ethnological catastrophe if all these dwellings were knocked down for the sake of current urban needs.

30 给肇事司机更严厉的惩罚对改善道路安全的好处

Severe penalties are the most cost-effective way to deter would-be driving offenders. Heavy fines, long community service or even jail terms would make most aggressive drivers afraid to violate the traffic laws, even without extra government funding to upgrade traffic surveillance cameras or increase the traffic police force. Further, this hardline approach would have an immediate effect. Once the new laws are released, we would be sure to witness a substantial decline of driving offenses overnight.

31 其他改善道路安全的措施可能带来的坏处

There are traffic hazards that we cannot address by merely increasing the punishment for aggressive or destructive driving conduct. To begin with, pedestrians who habitually jaywalk will not be discouraged by this move. Pedestrians make up a considerable proportion of those who cause traffic accidents. Therefore, pedestrian offenses such as jaywalking must be effectively checked as well. Secondly, if people who are regularly behind the wheel are

not made aware of the horrific consequences traffic offenses may cause, they will take advantage of every loophole in sight. If people abide by the traffic laws solely out of fear for punishment, when a surveillance camera is out of order or the traffic police fail to keep tabs on a specific section of a freeway, all hell will break loose. Lastly, strict punishment of disorderly driving conduct does not guarantee the detection of every driving offense. Without sophisticated traffic-offense detectors and a capable traffic police force, traffic laws, no matter how draconian, would be lax enough for hardened reckless drivers to disregard.

32 刚毕业的医生和教师去乡村工作的好处

Assigning new teachers and doctors to the countryside may create substantial benefits. To begin with, this practice can help foster a strong sense of obligation in many teachers and doctors. They can experience first-hand how rural residents are held back by out-moded teaching and medical facilities, and this can inspire a host of professionals to commit themselves to reversing this disturbing situation. Moreover, the inferior living and working conditions in the country can temper many of these young professionals' souls. They are very likely to be more determined and hence more successful than their urban counterparts in their later careers.

33 刚毕业的医生和教师去乡村工作的坏处

Many young teachers and doctors will feel unmotivated or frustrated if they are sent to rural areas against their will. They may have a hard time becoming accustomed to the shabby housing and primitive facilities and so may slack off at work. In the second place, many new teachers and doctors who are coerced to work in the countryside may find it daunting when they relocate to cities after a few years in the country. They will feel intense occupational stress when they cannot efficiently operate equipment that is much more advanced than the devices they used back in the country school or hospital. Last but not least, given the inferiority of the rural educational and medical facilities, it is highly probable that the inexperience of new teachers and doctors will lead to unsatisfactory job performance in rural schools and clinics. We really cannot expect fresh recruits to work wonders with outdated tools.

34 Nature 天性对个人犯罪倾向的影响

There is much empirical evidence that some unfavorable character traits can be hereditary. Time-honoured proverbs such as "Boys will be boys", "It runs in the family." and "Like father, like son." aptly illustrate how conventional wisdom acknowledges that some characteristic human behaviours are due to genetic impulses and may be beyond voluntary

control. In recent decades, successions of psychological experiments have confirmed that many undesirable human attributes and preferences such as rage, alcoholism, substance addiction, deviant sexual orientation and aggression, can often be linked to the programming of one's DNA. It seems that there really is such a thing like bequeathed "criminal human nature" within some of us.

㉟ Nurture 后天环境对个人犯罪倾向的影响

Many scientists fail to recognise that the environment in which an individual grows up plays a pivotal role in the molding or undoing of one's behavioural tendency. For instance, we are all too familiar with the real-life rags-to-riches stories about how sound parenting by nurturing and sensible mothers paved the way for the glorious future success of their offspring. These successful individuals supposedly had "evil genes" passed down from alcoholic and wife-bashing fathers. Moreover, it is generally recognised that adolescents who have been reared in crime-ridden neighbourhoods are much more prone to crime than those raised in safe-neighbourhoods, even if their parents do not have any criminal record. This also lends credence to the belief that influence from the environment prevails over inborn predispositions in the shaping of individual criminal tendency. Lastly, evidence resulting from identical-twin and adoption studies has repeatedly verified that: (1) even when two children have strikingly similar genetic makeups, if brought up in dissimilar environments, they will end up with substantially different behavioural tendencies owing to the influence from distinct environments; and (2) adopted-away children have more in common with their adoptive parents than their biological parents with reference to behavioural tendencies. Mounting evidence like this reinforces the view that life experience outweighs genetic programming in the shaping of one's overall personality, where criminal tendency may be a component.

㊱ 变化可能给人带来的不利

Change may carry certain adverse effects on the lives of individuals. For one thing, the person who experiences the change may feel uneasiness and anxiety. Obviously, adapting to new circumstances requires added effort, and seeking fresh external recognition requires certain adjustment from within, which causes psychological strain. For another, change may mean time wasted and money squandered if it is not well thought out.

㊲ 变化对人生的必要性

It is evident that well-planned and well-organised change may benefit us physically, psychologically and professionally. First of all, new discoveries in the medicine justify specific changes in people's daily habits. For instance, the revelation of severe side effects of the

Atkins diet prompted a host of people using this regimen to increase their carbohydrate intake, which may well have saved numerous lives. Secondly, more often than not, the final decision to make changes to a disturbing situation generates positive psychological effects. Apparently, people feel relieved when given the possibility of eliminating a depressing thing (such as addition to video games), even when this requires some endeavor and commitment. Thirdly, for those who are tied to an unfulfilling job, a career change can translate into a more diverse experience with new managerial styles, better collegiality and more financial reward.

㊳ 政府在科学研究里的作用

The government has a crucial role to play in scientific research because its scrutiny can provide research with an ethical compass. Corporations constantly pursue maximum profit at the lowest possible cost. As a consequence, corporate scientific research, if left unchecked, often compromises ethics for the sake of shareholder wealth. Government monitoring can ensure that the firms aware of the moral and ethical stakes involved and do not lose sight of public interests while pursuing their goals. Also, government coordination can help optimise the economic resources allocated to scientific research. Contemporary scientific research often requires a great amount of money and researching manpower. Government supervision makes for effective collaboration and healthy competition between companies and makes corporate research more cost-effective.

㊴ 公司在科学研究里的作用

Corporate scientific research holds many inherent advantages. To begin with, due to the profit-pursuing nature of businesses, corporate research has well-defined guidelines and objectives for every mission. Unlike government projects that have to weigh and balance competing interests, company research is almost always focused, well scheduled, well budgeted and result-oriented. Secondly, due to the profitability of company research, corporate professionals performing scientific research largely find themselves better rewarded than researchers working for government projects. This fact, in turn, means these professionals are more motivated in their laboratories. Lastly, private firms are more meritocratic and less likely to be afflicted with the bureaucracy that troubles many government agencies. As a consequence, corporate research tends to be more efficient and more productive than governmental research.

Globalisation

㊵ 文化全球化的好处

Global cultural homogeneity has immensely enriched the lives of the citizens in developing

countries. For instance, Hollywood blockbusters now typically get their first screening in China within a couple of days of their American premiere and youths in China can download singles that top billboard charts from the Internet without having to scout around in a CD store. Enhanced TV connections give Chinese viewers chances to see primetime American TV shows. This ease of access to a multitude of foreign entertainment has really brightened up the lives of many people.

41 文化全球化的坏处

Global cultural sameness severely undermines cultural diversity in the world. Nowhere is the decline of cultural diversity more evident than with the youngsters. Today, in Chinese metropolises, it is common to see twenty-somethings stroll down the billboard-lined sidewalks, sporting Nike sweatshirts and Adidas sneakers, with iPhones carried in their hands and iPods clipped on their belts. It is equally commonplace that adolescents, whose hair is dyed yellow or purple, don their baggy outfits and bust moves to hip-hop music. All these seem just so pretentious for a culture that valued modesty, humility and moderation for over three thousand years. In the second place, indiscriminate embracing of the American popular culture diminishes the sense of pride and dignity of developing-country peoples. Traditions, rites, rituals, mores and the language of a culture are all unifying forces of a nation, and their decline erodes the national identity and national pride of a country. Lastly, cultural westernisation breeds massive unemployment in entertainment, publishing and design industries of developing countries. The inundation by foreign products drives local businesses out of the market and renders vast numbers of professionals jobless.

Environment

42 乱扔垃圾的原因

Plastic containers and utensils are pervasive in the city and the country alike. When not properly disposed of, plastic shopping bags, chopsticks, to-go boxes and mineral-water bottles, to name but a few, cause a colossal amount of non-biodegradable refuse. We have indeed, embarked upon a "throw-away" era when plastic trash is dumped indiscriminately and irresponsibly. The causes of this phenomenon are manifold. At present the majority of individuals who shop or eat out regularly are still poorly-informed, uninformed or misinformed about the destructive influence that non-biodegradable pollutants cause to the ecosystem, which is the chief culprit in the global-scale mishandling of the plastic waste. The main component of such trash cannot decompose over the next hundreds of years if no major scientific breakthrough comes along in refuse treatment. Further, the proliferation of plastic

shopping bags and eating utensils is largely caused by surging consumerism. Plastic containers and utensils weigh less, are cheaper (often free of charge) in price and are water-resistant, which makes them preferable in customers' eyes. Lastly, plastic bags and containers are also cost-effective since they are cheaper to manufacture, ship and store. These considerations also have prompted the good old cloth or paper bags to be supplanted by plastic bags and environmental problems ensue.

㊸ 乱扔垃圾的解决方案

Due to the severity of this phenomenon, we have no alternative but to take immediate steps to address this situation. In the first place, people's awareness of how devastating non-biodegradable trash can be to our environment and our descendants' should be heightened. The government and the technologists should spare no effort in promoting the use of environmentally-friendly containers. In the second place, biochemical research must be launched immediately to find effective means of converting non-biodegradable refuse to biodegradable refuse. Also, the government should allocate enough funding to this research on the corporate level. In the third place, retail stores and restaurants should encourage their customers to reuse plastic packaging. A tax levied by the government on the use of plastic bags and containers will, doubtless, help to curb this massive plastic pollution.

附录C
Appendix C

我怎么做预测

声明一下：Pat 写这节的目的不是想培养“章鱼帝”（Paul the Octopus），唯一的目的是想减少大家备考的盲目性，正确使用雅思预测。

议论文部分

我可以给大家下面几个提示，您如果有兴趣可以仔细领会一下：

❶ 很多学生觉得雅思作文题是不是要临近考试几周才出来。绝对不是，从人力的安排来看，雅思作文题最晚也是考试日期之前一个季度就已经确定了。这就暗示我们，写作考题一定是有一个固定的排序的，而不是像很多人认为的那样按照不同话题类型随机出题。

❷ 雅思考试是一个全球化的考试，主要分区有亚太区、欧洲区和北美区，澳洲和新西兰也属于亚太区。根据我们的长期跟踪，发现三个区之间的考题从来不会在同一天或者同一时期出现同一道题。为了保证这样的效果，那么三个区之间的题目顺序必然会有联系。

❸ 雅思作文的题库从来没有公开过，但根据 Pat 的收集，全部加在一起已经超过了 400 道题，多于托福考试的议论文题库。这样巨无霸的题库，为了尽可能减少同一题目在同一地区一再重复出现的尴尬局面，这个固定的出题顺序必然不是一个很长的序列，而应该是一组一组题组成的片段。

❹ 根据 Pat 的经验，写作出题并不是按照话题来排序的。换句话说，“下次考教育类”或者“这个月的重点是政府类”这样的说法是不够科学的。

同时，根据 Pat 将近六年的预测经验，剑桥出写作题是按照非常系统而且科学的体系进行的。任何把考试预测庸俗化、过度神秘化甚至制造小道消息的做法都是对这个科学的出题体系的误解和贬低。

图表题部分

这里也可以提示大家，图表题的预测一般可以按照考前一年半左右的各题型出题频率来分析。

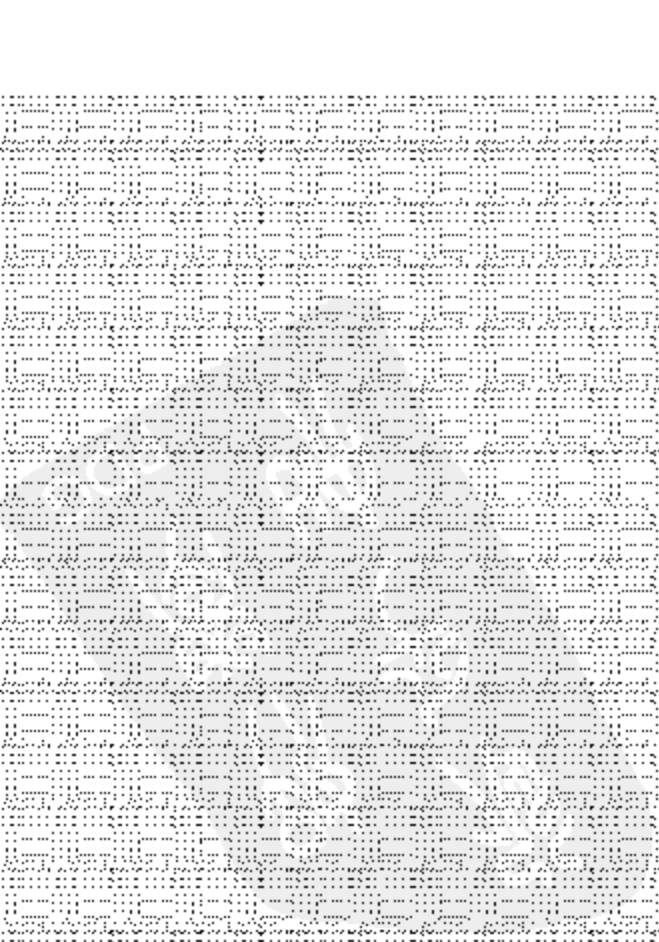
比如去年我制作了下面的表格。然后对其加以正确的统计分析，各种图（包括流程图）的间隔时间和考试可能性排序就变得非常明显了。

Task 1	table	Line graph	Bar chart	Pie chart	Process diagram
6/13				▲	
5/30			▲		
5/21	▲				
5/16			▲		
5/9	▲		▲		
4/30		▲	▲		
4/25				▲	
4/18			▲		
4/4			▲		
3/21	▲				
3/14					▲
3/7			▲		
2/28		▲			
2/21				▲	
2/12	▲	▲			
2/7			▲		
1/17		▲			
1/15					▲
1/10			▲		
12/20		▲			
12/13			▲		
12/6	▲				
12/4	▲				
11/29			▲		
11/20			▲		
11/15	▲				
11/8			▲		
10/25		▲			
10/23			▲		
10/11				▲	
9/27			▲		
9/18			▲		
9/13			▲	▲	
9/6					▲

（续表）

Task 1	table	Line graph	Bar chart	Pie chart	Process diagram
8/30	▲				
8/21			▲		
8/16			▲		
8/9			▲		
7/26	▲				
7/24			▲		
7/12	▲	▲			
7/5				▲	
6/28		▲			
6/21			▲		
6/14			▲		
6/5	▲				
5/31				▲	
5/22					▲
5/10			▲		
4/24			▲	▲	
4/19			▲		
4/12	▲				
4/5		▲			
3/29					▲
3/13	▲				
3/8				▲	
3/1			▲		
2/23		▲		▲	
2/16	▲				
2/14					▲
2/2		▲			
1/26					
1/19	▲				
1/12			▲		
1/10				▲	

最后还是请大家特别注意，给大家讲这段内容的目的并不是要大家都去花时间做预测。做预测搜集信息很消耗时间，是专业培训教师去做的事。考生宝贵的时间永远应该用在研究如何对付考题上。



附录D
Appendix D

雅思写作考什么

很多学生问我："老师上周考的什么作文题呀?" 我的回答是："不要管上周考什么，因为下周肯定不会再考同一道题了。你需要看的是你考前6个月或者更早的题目。" 下面的亚太区大作文分类真题是Pat自己在长期教学中积累起来的，通过这些题目大家可以对雅思写作到底考什么有一个非常透彻的认识。此外在本书的姐妹篇《十天突破IELTS写作完整真题库与6-9分范文全解》中，您还可以看到每一道考题的思路详解。希望大家不仅要多看下面的题，而且要多想多写，充分调动我们思考素材的三种方法，136个必备词汇和36个基础句型，需要考高分的同学还可以思考63个高分句型，6类必备连接词，让句式多样化的12种特殊句式，288个高分词汇和211重点替换词（附录I)。这样你就会越来越发现：其实雅思议论文的常用素材、词汇和句型真的是那么有限。

Education

- The subjects and course contents for children are decided by the authorities, such as the central government. Some people think that teachers should decide these for students. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this opinion?
- An increasing number of students choose to go to another country for their higher education. Do you think the benefits outweigh the problems associated with it?
- Some people believe that students should take all school subjects. However, others believe that students should focus on the subject that they are best at or that they find most interesting. Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.
- Some people believe that those who are not talented in language learning should not be required to learn a foreign language. What is your opinion?
- Some people think that computers and the Internet are more important to a child's education than going to school. However, others believe that schools and teachers are essential if children wish to learn effectively. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Money for postgraduate research is limited. Therefore, some people think financial support from the government should only be provided for scientific research by postgraduate students rather than their research on less useful subjects. Do you agree or disagree?

- Some people think students should go to boarding schools（寄宿学校）instead of living at home. Do you agree or disagree?
- Some people think university education should prepare students for employment while others think it should help students acquire theoretical knowledge. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- It is generally believed that some people are born with certain talents, for instance sport or music, and others are not. However, it is sometimes claimed that any child can be taught to become a good sport or musician. Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.
- Some people think that universities should provide graduates with the knowledge and skills needed in the workplace. Others think that the true function of a university should be to give access to knowledge for its own sake, regardless of whether the course is useful to an employer. What, in your opinion, should be the main function of a university?
- Some people believe that teenagers should learn all school subjects while others think that students should focus on the subjects that they are good at or that they are interested in. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Students from rural areas often find it difficult to access university education, so some people think universities should make it especially easy for them to study at. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Schools offer a wide range of courses, such as physical education, music, economics, philosophy, math, English, geography, physics and history. Of all these subjects, which one do you think is the most important and which one is the least important?
- Unemployment is increasingly serious in many countries. Some people think students only need to get primary education while others think secondary education is necessary. To what extent do you agree?
- Children are under increasing educational, social and financial stress. Some people think this is a positive development. Do you agree?
- Some people think students should go to private secondary schools. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Today, students' tuition is paid in one of the following ways
  ❶ all paid by government
  ❷ all paid by students themselves

❸ all paid by students using a loan and repaid after graduation.
Compare these three ways and choose the one you think is the best.

- In some countries young people are encouraged to work or travel for a year between finishing high school and starting university studies. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages for young people to do this.
- Some people think schools should only teach students academic knowledge. Others think they should also teach students to judge what is right and wrong. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- The computer is widely used in education and some people think teacher do not play important role in the classroom. To what extent do you agree?
- Some people think children should learn to compete, but others think that children should be taught to cooperate. Express some reasons for both views and give your own opinion.
- Some people think children who are brought up in families without a large amount of money are better prepared to solve the problems in their adult years than children brought up in wealthy families. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Some people say that children should be made to obey rules while other people think children who are controlled too much will not be well-prepared for their adult life. Discuss both sides and give your own opinion.
- Some people think when we study a foreign language we should also study the culture and lifestyles of that country. Do you agree or disagree?
- Some people think students should live at home. Others think they should live on campus. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- If a five-year old commits a crime (any kind), should his/her parents have the responsibility and how should he/ she be punished? What is the age of a child when parents no longer have the responsibility for children's behaviour?
- Is it nature or nurture that plays a major role in the development of personality? What is your opinion?
- University students focus on specific subject. Some people believe that university should encourage them to study the whole range of the subject. Do you agree or disagree?
- Many scientists believe that now we can study the behaviour of three-year-old children to see whether they will grow up to be criminals. To what extent do you think the crime is a product of human nature and how can we prevent the children from growing up to be criminals?

- It is generally believed that education is of vital importance to individual development and well-being of society. What should education consist of to fulfill both these functions?
- Some people believe secondary school children should study international news as their subject others against. What is your own view?
- Is children's education chiefly the responsibility of the parents or the teachers? What is your opinion about this?
- As scientists contribute more to the development of our society than other people, science student should get more financial support from the government than other student get. Do you agree?
- Memorization of information by frequency repetition (rote learning) plays the most important role in education system. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Universities should not provide theoretical knowledge, but to give practical training benefit to society. Do you agree or disagree?
- Schools should teach children the academic subjects which will be beneficial to their future career while other subjects like music and sports are not important. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this opinion?
- In many countries schools have many problems of students' behavior. Please give some causes of it and some suggestions.
- It is right that university graduates should earn higher salary than less well-educated members, but they should pay all the full cost. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- In the modern world, the school has become unnecessary for children to study. They can use Internet which has a great deal of information available for children so that children can study at home instead. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Some people argue that teaching children of different abilities together benefits all of them. Others believe that intelligent children should be taught separately and given special treatment. Discuss both views and how do you think about it?
- Some people think the main purpose of schools is to turn children into good citizens and workers, rather than to benefit them as individuals. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- In order to improve the quality of education, high-school students should be encouraged to evaluate and their teachers. But others think it will result in loss of respect and discipline in classroom. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.

- Lectures were used in the past as an old way of teaching a large number of students. As new technology is now available for education, some people suggest that there is no justification for lectures. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Some people think the government should decide what students learn in university. Others think students should study what they prefer. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Some teachers say students should be organized into groups to study. Others argue students should study alone. What is your opinion?
- In some countries, schools aim to provide a general education across a range of subjects. In others, children focus on a narrow range of subjects related to a particular career. For today's world, which of these systems is more appropriate?
- Some people think universities should provide knowledge and skills related to future career; others think the true function of the university is to give access to knowledge for its own sake. What is your pinion of the main function of the university?
- Some people think schools should select pupils according to their academic ability, and others believe pupils with different abilities should be educated together. Discuss both views and give your opinion. Use an example to support your idea.
- The unpaid community service should be a compulsory part in high college programs (such as helping your neighbour or teaching the children sports or working for the charity). To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Some people think students should study international news as a subject. Do you agree?
- Nowadays, computers are used more and more in education. Do you think in which areas computer is more important and in which areas teachers are more important?

Technology

- Air travel only brings advantages to the rich people. But the majority of people do not benefit from it. To what extent do you agree?
- Technological progress in the last century had negative effect, despite its remarkable contribution to human society. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- With the technology developing rapidly, machines are used widely in our lives. To what extent do the advantages of this development outweigh its disadvantages?
- The range of technology is increasing the gap between the rich and the poor. To what

extent do you agree?

- Some people think space travel is important. Others think people will not remember this. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Long distance flight consumes natural resources and pollutes the air. Some people think it should be banned. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- There are many problems associated with mobile phones today. To what extent do the advantages of mobile phones outweigh the disadvantages?
- Many people work at home using modern technology today. Some people think only the workers benefit from this, not the employers. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Some people think that the earlier technology has changed our lives more than the recent technology. Do you agree or disagree?
- According to a recent survey, more and more people are paying less attention to basic science. Is this phenomenon also true in your country? What do you think about the causes of this trend and give your recommendations.
- Motorised flight is the greatest invention in the modern world. No other invention has had a more significant impact on our lives. Do you agree or disagree?
- Nowadays, some people claim that public museums and art galleries will not be needed because people can see historical objects and works by using computer. Do you agree or disagree?
- Some people think earlier technology changed our lives more than recent technology. Do you agree or disagree?
- People today can perform the everyday tasks such as shopping, banking or even business transactions, without meeting others face-to-face. What effects will this phenomenon have on individuals and society as a whole?
- More and more people use the mobile phone or computer to communicate, and no longer write letters to each other. Some people think the skills of letter writing will soon disappear completely. Do you agree or disagree? How important do you think letter-writing is?

Media

- Many children prefer to watch TV rather than to do creative things. Why is this the case? How can we solve this problem?

- Some people think reading books is more useful in developing young people's language skills and imagination than watching TV. To what extent do you agree?
- Today, there are more images of disasters and violence in the media What are the causes and what are your solutions?
- Many parents think advertising only tells information about snacks and toys to children. But companies think advertising also tells useful information. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Some people think the media should not report details of crimes to the public. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- We can get knowledge from news. But some people think we should not trust the journalists. What do you think? And what do you think are the important qualities that a journalist should have?
- Some parents think advertising tells too much information about snacks and toys to children. But companies think advertising also shows useful information. Discuss.
- Some information in films, books and on the Internet has bad influence on young people and even on society. Some people think such information should be controlled. Give your opinion on both sides of this view.
- The government should control the amount of violence in films and on television in order to decrease the violent crimes in society. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this issue?
- The high sales of popular consumer goods reflect the power of the advertising but not the real need of the whole society in which they sell. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this statement?
- Many people think public libraries should only provide books and should not waste their limited money on expensive hi-tech media such as software or videos. To what extent do you agree?
- Advertising discourages us from being different individuals makes us look the same. Do you agree?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of the international media such as international TV, radio and magazines?
- Today the high sales of consumer goods reflect the power of advertising and not the real needs of the society in which they are sold. Do you agree?
- Some people think the media should not report details of crimes to the public. To what

extent do you agree or disagree?

- People think the public library will be replaced by the computer. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Society would benefit from the ban on all forms of advertising because it serves no useful purposes and can even be damaging. To some extent do you agree or disagree with this opinion?
- Customers are faced with increasing amounts of advertising due to the competition among companies. To what extent do you think consumers are influenced by advertisements? And what measures can be taken to protect their interests?

Government

- Society is based on rules and laws. It could not function well if individuals were free to do as they please. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Some people think economic progress is the only way to measure the success of a country while some others think there are other factors. What are the other factors that should be considered?
- Some people think taking care of one's health is not only for individual benefits. It should also be a responsibility for society. To what extent do you agree?
- Some people think the housing shortage in big cities can only be solved by the government. Do you agree or disagree?
- Some people believe that national sports teams should be financially supported by the government. Some other people think they should be funded by private resources such as corporations and individuals. Discuss.
- Some people think we should keep all the money we earn and not pay tax to the state. Do you agree or disagree?
- Health is a basic human need so healthcare should not be provided by private profit-making companies. Do you agree?
- Some people say the government should pay for the health care and education, but others say that it is not the government's responsibility. Discuss and give your opinion.
- Some people think art such as painting and music can not improve the quality of people's life so the government should not spend money on them but the other fields. Do you agree or disagree?

- Some people think that it is a moral obligation for developed countries to provide international aid to developing countries while others worry that the aid fund might possibly be misused by the government of the poor countries and cannot actually help the poor people to improve their living standard. What is your opinion?
- Some people think that strong tradition can civilise a country and the government should subsidise musicians, artists, actors and drama companies. Do you agree or disagree with this opinion? What should the government do?
- Young people are important resources to their country, but governments may ignore some problems faced by young people in running the country. In your experience, what does the government need to do for supporting or helping young people? Please identify those problems and give your idea or suggestion to solve the issue.
- Some people said the government should not put money on building theaters and sports stadiums. It should spend more money on medical care and education. Do you agree or disagree?
- Many countries have spent vast sums of money on armament for the sake of self defense. Some people think they should spend money helping the poverty and other disadvantages rather than on weapons. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Creative artists should be given more freedom to express their idea, either in forms of words, pictures, music or films; and the government should not place any restrictions on their creativeness. To what extent do you agree or disagree this opinion?

Tourism

- Some people think the advantages of international tourism outweigh its disadvantages. To what extent do you agree?
- Some people think using cultural heritage to develop tourism is wrong. Others think that is the only way to protect cultural heritage. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Some people think using cultural heritage to attract tourist is harmful. Others think that is the only way for cultural heritage to remain. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Many developing countries are increasingly expanding their tourism industry. Why is this the case? Is it a positive development?
- Some people think visitors to other countries should follow local customs and behaviour while others disagree and think that the host country should welcome cultural differences.

Discuss.

Women

- Some people think we need more female leaders to create world peace and reduce violence. To what extent do you agree?
- Universities should accept equal numbers of male and female students in every subject. Do you agree or disagree?
- More and more women go out to work. It is the responsibility of government to provide staff and facilities for children of working mother, free of charge. To what extent do you agree or disagree. Some people think women should be allowed to join the army, the navy and the air force just like men. To what extent do you agree?

Families

- People in the same family are not as close as before. Some people think we should return to traditional family values but others think this would lead to many problems. Discuss.
- Some people think individual happiness depends on economic success but others think there are other factors. Discuss.
- Happiness is very important to individuals but it is very hard to define. Why is happiness hard to define? What is your definition of happiness?

Culture

- Some people think music is just a form of entertainment while others think it plays more important roles. Discuss.
- Technology and science have great influence on our lives. But some people think we should also value the work of artists such as musicians, painters and writers. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Multi-cultured societies are mixtures of many ethnic groups. Some people think the advantages of multi-cultured societies outweigh the disadvantages. Do you agree or disagree?
- What are the purposes of places such as museums and how should they be funded?
- Some people think museums should be enjoyable places to attract and entertain people. Others think they should educate people, not to entertain. Discuss both views and give

your own opinion.

- Some people think the appearance of buildings is more important than their functions. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

Languages

- Some people think we should create an international language to make our lives simpler. Do you agree?
- Every year several languages die out. Some people think it is not important. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

Development

- Developing sports facilities is the best way to improve public health. What is your opinion?
- A hundred years ago, people thought that human race was steadily improving in every area. Nowadays, there is no certainty about this. In which areas do you think we have made important progress? In which areas do you think we still need to make progress?
- Many people wear fashionable clothing today. What are the causes and what are your solutions?
- Traditional games are more useful than modern games in developing children's abilities. To what extent do you agree?
- An American film actor once said, "Tomorrow is important and precious." Some people think individuals and society should pay more attention to the future than to the present. Do you agree?
- Today big cities are developing very fast. An increasing number of people choose to live in these big cities. What problems will this development cause for young people?
- Old generations often hold some traditional ideas on the correct way of life, thinking and behaviour. Most people argue that these ideas are not helpful for the young generations to prepare for modern life in the future. What is your opinion?
- Some people think they should save for their future life in order to live after retiring. To what extent do you agree?
- Some people think food has been changed by technological and scientific advances and this is an improvement while others worry that is harmful. Discuss both sides and give your opinion.

- Increasing the price of petrol is the best way to solve traffic problems and pollution. To what extent do you agree or disagree? What other measures do you think are more effective?
- Successful sports professionals can earn a great deal more money than people in other important professions. Some people think this is fully justified while others think it is unfair. Discuss.
- Some people prefer to spend their lives doing the same things and avoiding change. Others, however, think that change is always a good thing. Discuss.
- What are the factors influencing job satisfaction? Which one do you think is the most important one?
- There is not enough respect for the elderly people. What are the causes and what problems does this phenomenon create?
- In many countries, the number of elderly people is increasing fast. To what extent do the disadvantages outweigh the advantages?
- Some people think we should provide help for the local communities. Others think we should give money and support to the national and international organizations. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Today many young people cannot find a job after they graduate from university. What are the individual and social reasons for this phenomenon?
- Traffic and housing problems in major cities would be solved by moving big companies, factories and their employees to the countryside. Do you agree or disagree?
- Many people are optimistic about the 21st century and see it as an opportunity to make positive changes to the world. To what extent do you agree or disagree with their optimism? What changes would you like to be made in the new century?
- Some employers think formal academic qualifications are more important than life experience and personal qualities when looking for an employee. What are the causes of this phenomenon and do you think this is a positive development?
- In many countries, good schools and medical facilities are available only in cities. Some people think new teachers and doctors should work in rural areas for a few years. But some others think everyone should be free to choose where they work. Discuss and give your own opinion.

- Buildings have changed the appearance of our cities and towns. Some people believe that we should build all the new buildings in traditional styles. To what extent do you agree?
- Some people history is of no use in our lives while others think we should learn from history because it helps us understand the present. Discuss.
- In many countries, traditional foods are being replaced by international fast foods. This is having a negative effect on both families and societies. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Many people are optimistic about the 21st century and see it as an opportunity to make positive changes to the world. To what extent do you agree or disagree with their optimism? What changes would you like to be made in the new century?
- The world of work is changing rapidly, so people cannot always depend on their jobs. Analyse the reasons of such phenomenon and offer the measures to solve it.
- Air transport is increasingly used to export fruits and vegetables to other countries where they cannot be grown or are out of season. Some people believe that this is a good thing, but others consider this use of air transport cannot be justified. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Cars cause many problems. What are these problems? Should we discourage people from using cars?

Globalisation

- Some people think imported food exerts positive impact on our lives. To what extent do you agree?
- Differences between countries have become less evident so we can enjoy the same films, brands and TV program. To what extent do you think the disadvantages of this outweigh the disadvantage?
- Some people think that people who immigrate to a new country should accept the new culture as their own rather than remain in separate minority groups and live in different lifestyles. Do you agree or disagree?
- Some people say that the increasing business and culture contact between countries has positive effect while others say it would make countries lose their cultural identities. Do you agree or disagree?

Crime

- Some people believe that there should be fixed punishments for each type of crime. Others, however, argue that the circumstances of an individual crime, and the motivation for committing it, should always be taken into account when deciding on the punishment. Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.
- Some people think to lower the crime rate, criminals should be given longer terms in prison. To what extent do you agree?
- There are many security measures in big cities today to reduce the crime rate. To what extent do you think the advantages outweigh the disadvantages?
- Some people think sending criminals to prison is not an effective way to deal with them. Education and training are better. To what extent do you agree?
- What are the causes of juvenile delinquency and what are your solutions?
- Today many people are afraid of leaving their home because of crime. Some people think there is little we can do about this situation. To what extent do you agree?

Animals

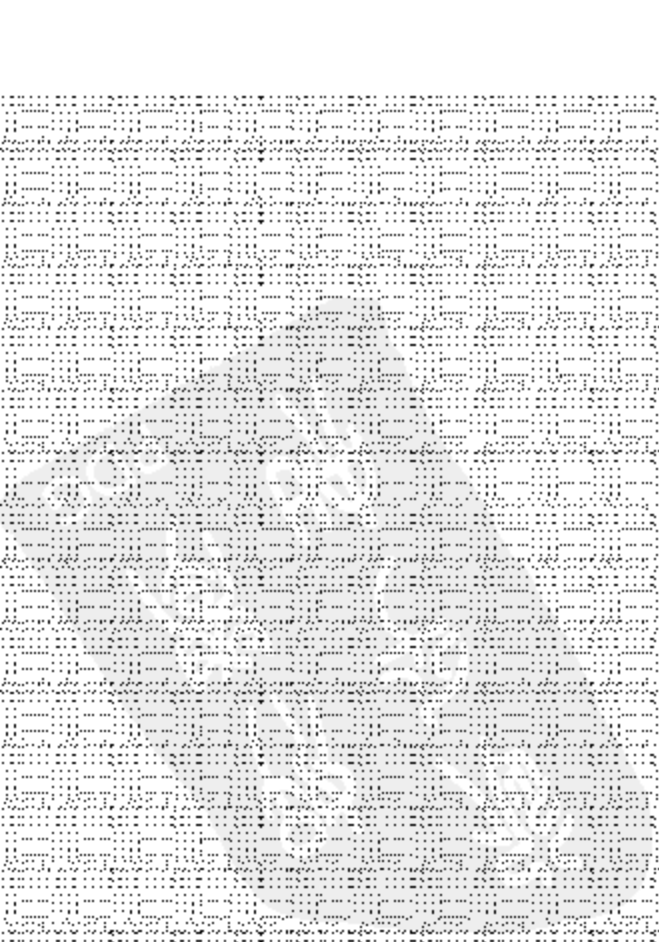
- Some people think humans can exploit animals for any purpose that they need while others disagree. What is your opinion?
- Some people think we should ban animal experiments. Others think it is necessary for the development of science. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.
- Some people regard animals as the source of food or clothes while others think that they should be treated as pets. State your opinion from both sides.
- Some people think that a large amount of time and money should be spent on the protection of wild animals while others think it should be better spent on the human population. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this opinion.
- Some people believe there's no place for wild animals in 21st century, so to prevent these wild animals from dying out is a waste of resources. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this opinion?

Environment

- In many countries, fossil fuels such as coal, natural gas and crude oil are the main sources of energy while in some other countries, the use of alternative sources of energy

such as wind power and solar energy is increasingly encouraged. To what extent do you think this is a positive development?

- Some people think the best way to solve environmental problems is to raise the price of fuel. To what extent do you agree?
- Some people think environmental problems are too big for one country or one individual to solve. All the countries on this planet must work together to solve them. Do you agree?
- Environmental problems are too big for individual countries and individual people to address. We have reached the stage where the only way to protect the environment is at an international level. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this statement?
- What are the causes of water scarcity and how can we solve this problem?
- Many people say that we have developed into a "throw-away society", because we are filling up our environment with so many plastic bags and rubbish that we cannot fully dispose of. To want extent do you agree with this opinion and what measures can you recommend to reduce this problem?
- Individuals can do nothing to improve the environment, only governments and large companies can make a difference. To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- Long-distance flight consumes resources and produces pollution. Some people think non-essential flight should be banned and we should use more cars instead. To what extent do you agree?



附录E
Appendix E

如果计划在国外考雅思

从去年（2010 年）开始，海外“烤鸭”军团开始迅速壮大。为此，Pat 特意实地考查了在海外与在国内考试的区别，供“海鸭”们参考：

在海外与在国内雅思考试异同详解

国内	海外
可以网上报名	对于多数国外考点来说，考生下载并打印报名表之后目前还只能通过邮寄送达或者自己亲自送至报名点（离自己最近的考点您可以在 http：//www. ielts. org/test_ centre_ search/search_ results. aspx 上找到）
交费形式多样	如果选择网上交费，则多数情况需要使用 credit card，如果在报名点交费形式则比较灵活
铅笔与橡皮均不允许自带，必须由考官发放	在某些考点，比如悉尼和多伦多的一些考点，允许考生自带铅笔和橡皮，而且在部分海外考点考写作时还可以使用圆珠笔（有利有弊，对于“大牛”来说如果用圆珠笔写作文能一气呵成往往卷面会更漂亮，但非牛人则容易出现把卷子改成“大花脸”的可能）
听力使用耳机	一部分考点不发放耳机（深切同情……），直接听 CD 机的喇叭放音
手机会被监考人员要求关机	手机也会被要求关机，但查得更严格，个别海外考生曾遇到过手机放在考场外但忘记关机导致被取消成绩的情况
口试一般在考点进行	在某些考点，比如 Sydney 的一个考点，口试是在星级宾馆里举行，而且宾馆条件还相当不错

（续表）

国内	海外
周六考试的成绩在考试结束后第二个星期的星期四下午或者晚上在网上可以查到，然后在周末或者第三个星期会收到邮寄的成绩单	除少数较为“先进”的特例外，大多数考点的考试成绩只能通过邮寄收到或者去考点自取

※虽然存在以上种种考试具体运作上的区别，而且三大考区之间在同一天的考题是不同的。但不管您是选择在亚太区、欧洲区还是在北美区参加雅思考试，试题难度都是灰肠接近的。而且更关键的是，根据 Pat 的长期统计，从整体而言事实上并不存在“在英国考写作评分更严”或者“在澳洲考口语给分偏低”这样的规律。虽然由于考官自身的个体差异也时常会出现特例，但从总体上来说，IELTS 写作考试的评分是科学的。因此，只有努力提高自身实力才是根本，否则任何一个角落都是很难成为一只不爱学英语的“烤鸭”的避风港的……

附录F
Appendix F

雅思作文最常引用的名人名言汇总

经常看同学们的作文，一个很深的感受就是很多学生喜欢引用中国的名人名言然后把它机械地翻译成英文，殊不知，理解名人名言需要一定的文化底蕴。很多考官由于不了解中国文化，因此，对那些名人名言往往会不知所云。

下面的每一句名人名言，一是比较好记，更重要的是这些话对西方社会产生过深刻影响，是那些考官耳熟能详的句子。如果能正确使用他们说的话，对于正身处异国、离家万里评阅作文的考官们来说，不可能不在他们的心里产生强烈的共鸣，从而让他们发自内心地给你的作文加分。

Education 类名人名言

❶ "A child miseducated is a child lost."

— John F. Kennedy

❷ "Education is not the filling of a pail, but the lighting of a fire."

— W. B. Yeats

❸ "Technology is just a tool. In terms of getting the kids working together and motivating them, the teacher is the most important."

— Bill Gates

❹ "Educating the mind without educating the heart is no education at all."

— Aristotle

❺ "The solution to adult problems tomorrow depends in large measure upon how our children grow up today."

— Margaret Mead

Technology & Media 类名人名言

❶ "The greatest danger in modern technology is not that machines begin to think like people, but that people will begin to think like machines."

— Albert Einstein

❷ "As we go forward, I hope we're going to continue to use technology to make really big differences in how people live and work."

— Sergey

❸ "He who controls the media, controls the mind."

— Rupert Murdock

❹ "Advances in computer technology and the Internet have changed the way America works, learns, and communicates. The Internet has become an integral part of America's economic, political, and social life."

— Bill Clinton

❺ "The world has changed far more in the past 100 years than in any other century in history. The reason is not political or economic but technological — technologies that flowed directly from advances in basic science."

— Stephen Hawking

❻ "Everything is being transformed under the magic influence of science and technology. And every day, if we want to live with open eyes, we have a problem to study, to resolve."

— Pope Pius VI

Government 类名人名言

❶ "Millions of individuals making their own decisions in the marketplace will always allocate resources better than any centralised government."

— Ronald Reagan

❷ "The problem is not that people are taxed too little, but that the government spends too much."

— Ronald Reagan

❸ "The will of the people is the only legitimate foundation of any government."

— Thomas Jefferson

Tourism 类名人名言

"The world is a book, and those who do not travel read only a page."

— Saint Augustine

"As the traveler who has once been from home is wiser than he who has never left his own doorstep, so a knowledge of one other culture should sharpen our ability to scrutinise more

steadily, to appreciate more lovingly, our own."

— Margaret Mead

Women & Families 类名人名言

"The bond that links your true family is not one of blood, but of respect and joy in each other's life."

— Richard Bach

To put the world in order, we must first put the nation in order; to put the nation in order, we must put the family in order; to put the family in order, we must cultivate our personal life; and to cultivate our personal life, we must first set our hearts right."

— Confucius

"Anyone who knows anything of history knows that great social changes are impossible without feminine upheaval. Social progress can be measured exactly by the social position of the fair sex, the ugly ones included."

— Karl Marx

Languages & Culture 类名人名言

"To possess a second language is to possess a second soul."

— Charlemagne

"Culture means the widening of the mind and of the spirit."

— Ruth Benedict

Crime 类名人名言

"He who does not prevent a crime when he can encourages it."

— Seneca, Roman philosopher

Environment 类名人名言

"Many anthropogenic activities foul the air, contaminate the water and devastate the forests."

— Newsweek

"Don't blow it — good planets are hard to find."

— Time

Development 类名人名言

"To create architecture is to put in order. To put what in order? Function and objects."

— Le Corbusier

"The architect must be a prophet... a prophet in the true sense of the term... if he can't see at least ten years ahead don't call him an architect."

— Le Corbusier

Animals 类名人名言

"The greatness of a nation and its moral progress can be judged by the way its animals are treated."

— Gandhi

"The most important thing is to preserve the world we live in. Unless people understand and learn about our world, habitats, and animals, they won't understand that if we don't protect those habitats, we'll eventually destroy ourselves."

— Jack Hanna

Globalisation 类名人名言

"Globalisation is not something we can hold off or turn off. It is the economic equivalent of a force of nature — like wind or water."

— Bill Clinton

"Arguing against globalisation is like arguing against the laws of gravity."

— Kofi Annan

附录G
Appendix G

鲜为人知却极为实用的英文写作网站

说明： 下列网站多数都是国外网站，向推荐大家的只是那些可以免费浏览的部分，付费的服务一律不推荐。

大作文部分

❶ http://www.ldoceonline.com/

权威的朗文当代词典的网络版，不仅英文解释绝对地道，更难得的是用最常见的英文单词进行释义。相信自己，你一定也能轻松地使用原版字典（请注意网址中 www 的圆点后面是字母 l 而不是数字 1）

❷ http://dictionary.cambridge.org/

剑桥英文系列词典的官方网站，好几本剑桥出版的英文词典供你选择。其中有超多的例句，让你把握每个单词的用法。用剑桥的词典准备剑桥的考试，这个主意不错吧？

❸ http://www.crockford.com/wrrrld/style.html

很多人视为 writers' Bible 的名著 *The Elements of Style* 的网络版，对英文写作有长期兴趣的人如果把全部内容都学习一下将受益匪浅。

❹ http://www.freeessays.cc/free-essays-listing.shtml

❺ http://www.essaydepot.com/

以上两个网站性质差不多，都提供大量的 academic essays 范例，几乎覆盖了所有雅思作文的话题。但是 Pat 强烈建议大家只 **Learn from them, but do not copy them. Few can get away with cheating in IELTS.** 可以模仿它们的用词和风格，但绝不要照抄。而且不仅是雅思考试，在国外学习也是一样，一旦被发现抄袭将是非常麻烦的事情。

另外，特别提示大家只看看这两个网站上免费的 essays 就好了，如果发现有的是需要付费的服务你一定要谨慎。

❻ http://www.economist.com/printedition/

Pat 自己在平时生活里很喜欢看的一本杂志，除了经济方面外，还有很多有趣的内容。雅思阅读的很多题目也是从里面选的。

❼ http://www.iht.com/

是 International Herald Tribune 这份国际名报的官方网站。有时听到一些人给准备雅思的学生推荐 Time 或者 Newsweek 这样的杂志，这也太不靠谱儿了吧?! 那些杂志的文风和用词和雅思写作实在是风马牛不相及，考生照着模仿只能越写越差。而 International Herald Tribune 这份报纸文风就平实多了，多看看这个报纸的网络版，对提高雅思阅读也好处多多。

❽ www.learnenglish.org.uk/test/grammartest.html

同学们都知道 British Council 是 IELTS 考试在全球的监管机构。这个网站是 British Council 专门给考生出的语法测试题库。每道题的 4 个答案都很近似，必须仔细辨识才能过关。在做完 9 道题目之后，British Council 会对你的语法水平给出很详细的评语。而且你还可以多次登录这个网站，而每次的考题都会是不同的，相当酷。不过要强调的是：这个网站的考查重点是偏生活化的语境，所以它的风格跟雅思学术议论文是略有区别的。

❾ more.headroyce.org/research/writing/argumentation/argmainpage.html

目标在 7 分或以上的同学不妨探寻一下这个网站上的各个链接（每个页面点开之后还有大量内容呢），全部都是分析英语议论文结构的。但是需要提醒大家的是：其中有些议论文的结构虽然逻辑上合理，却并不适合在考场里时间极为紧张的情况下使用，所以作为“烤鸭”还是要以实战为第一目标。请牢记：考场如战场，IELTS 作文的本质永远都是时间与质量之间的博弈。

❿ http://www.bilinguist.com/

专业又不失趣味性的翻译网站，从中你可以了解到很多中文意思如何用精确英语去表达，我自己喜欢看其中的 proverbs 那一节，原来中文的“吃不了兜着走”可以翻译成“Bite off more than you can chew.”，妙!

小作文部分

❶ http://www.writefix.com/graphs/

这个网站给出了很多 line，bar，pie 以及 multiple graphs 的图表题高分范文。只要点击每个数字序号后面的链接，进入后再点击页面下方的 Click here to see a sample text 就能看到海量范文了。

❷ http://www.ft.com/home/uk

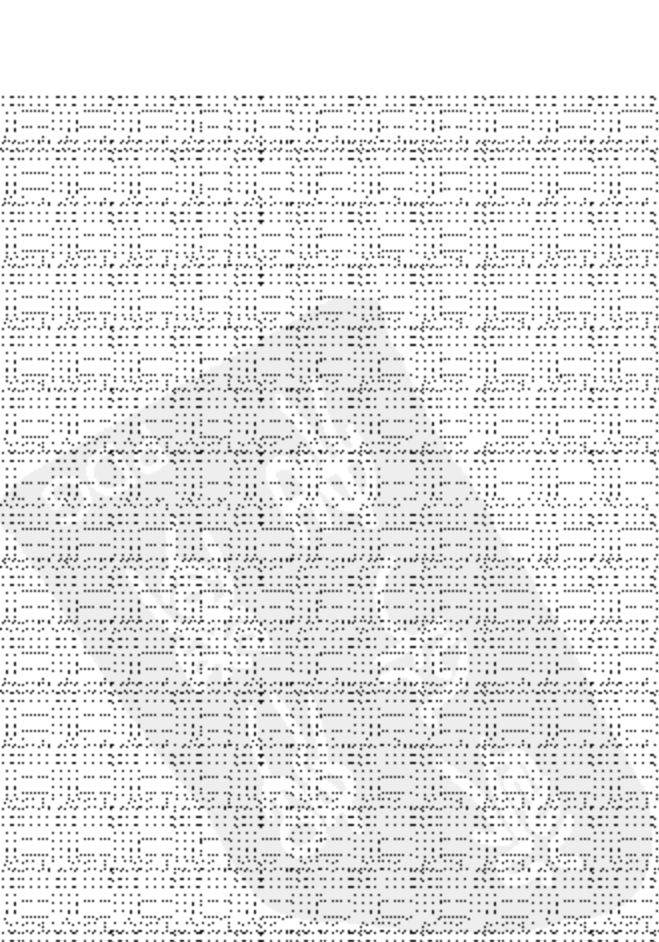
鼎鼎大名的英国金融时报网站，放眼望去，满眼都是小作文的加分词汇。

❸ http://www.statistics.gov.uk/default.asp

这个可是英国 the Office for National Statistics 的官方网站，只要点击左侧和中部的每一个链接后就可以看到一篇英国官方公布的 line graph 范文。从某种意义上说，它比剑桥更权威……

最后，向大家真诚推荐 Pat 的个人写作博客 blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru。

其中的每月写作预测以及我与学生们的交流，相信对您的备考也会有很大的帮助。



附录H（适合写作7分的考生）
Appendix H（For Consummate Players Only）

那些让你的论证更加给力的 verbs

在美国，当家长们鼓励孩子去做一件事情的时候，经常会说一句话，“Yes, you can make a difference.”这可不是告诉孩子你出门在外要分清好人坏人，而是说你可以有能力去改变自己的处境。

在雅思作文中，动词由于自身带有的行动意味，经常会让你的逻辑论证更加强而有力。下面这些雅思写作最常用的动词，一旦能使用准确，也一定可以 help you make a difference in your body paragraphs。

正方动词

动词	含义	宾语举例
abide by / comply with	遵守（写作中代替 obey 的好选择）	the law 法律 / related rules 相关规定
acquire	获取	knowledge / skills
afford	注意在写作中这个词经常是 offer“提供”的意思	job opportunities 就业机会/ a sense of achievement 成就感
allocate	分配	allocate money to... / allocate resources to...
boost	提升，增加（但注意雅思小作文中并不常用这个词）	efficiency 效率/ crop yield 农作物产量
censor	审查（多用于 media 类话题）	films / books
combat / address	解决	a problem / a situation
conserve	节约使用（注意和 preserve“保护”的区别）	resources / fresh water
cultivate / foster / nurture	培养	creativity / skills / interest

（续表）

正方动词

动词	含义	宾语举例
curb	遏制	crime / nuclear weapons 核武器
curtail	削减	expenses 开支 / budgets 预算
demolish	拆掉	buildings
display	展现	talent / abilities / potential
disseminate	传播（某种思想或者观念）	ideas / thoughts
draw on	借鉴	the experience of other countries
elevate / heighten / raise	提高	citizens' awareness of 公民的某种意识/ the standard of living 生活水平
eliminate	消除	poverty 贫困 / injustice 不公正
enhance	增进，美化	the cityscape 市容 / infrastructure 基础设施
enlarge	扩大	the market for products 产品市场
enrich	丰富	one's knowledge 知识/ biodiversity 生物多样性
ensure	确保	social stability 社会稳定 /ethnic unity 民族团结
establish	建立	a system 体制 / an institution 机构
expand	扩大	one's outlook 眼界 / domestic demand 内需（国内市场需求）
exploit / utilise（BrE）	使用，开发	natural resources 自然资源/ one's potential 潜能
explore	探索	outer space 外层空间 / other cultures（表示不同种类的文化时 culture 可以用复数）
fulfil（BrE）	实现，完成	fulfil one's potential 发挥潜力 / fulfil one's dream 实现梦想 / fulfil one's task 完成任务
generate	（大规模地）产生	employment opportunities / electricity / tax revenue 税收
implement	实施	a policy 政策 剑 8 例句：But there are various other measures that could be implemented that would have a huge effect on these problems.
integrate / incorporate	结合	integrate oneself into a society whose culture is so different from one's own（剑桥例句）/ incorporate students' suggestions into curriculum design（课程设计）
intensify	强化	regional cooperation 区域合作 / cultural interaction 文化间的相互交流
lower	降低	costs 费用 / expectations 期望

（续表）

正方动词

动词	含义	宾语举例
maintain	维持	close links 紧密的联系/social order 社会秩序
motivate	给……动力	motivate students to think independently 鼓励学生独立思考 / motivate employees to work harder
mould（BrE）	塑造	one's character 性格
optimise（BrE）	优化	the management of sth. / the distribution of resources 资源配置
override	比……更重要	例句：At the moment, the government's concern about poverty overrides its other concerns.（形容词 overriding 也很常用，表示当前最重要的）
perform / conduct	从事	scientific research 科学研究
multiply	成倍增加	people's choices / employees' earnings
pose	议论文里不是“摆 pose”，而是指对……构成某种挑战或者威胁	pose a threat to 构成威胁/ pose a challenge to 构成挑战
preserve	保护某种资源	natural resources 自然资源/cultural heritage 文化遗产
promote / facilitate	促进，推动	healthy lifestyles / cultural exchanges 文化交流 / sustainable development 可持续发展
protect	保护	national security 国家安全 / citizens
pursue	追求	maximum profit 最大利润
recycle	循环利用	waste / rubbish
reform	改革，改造	a system /criminals
reinforce /strengthen/ consolidate	增强	family bonds 亲情 / economic ties 经济联系 / ethnic solidarity 民族团结的另一种表达方法
release	释放	stress / prisoners
relieve / ease / alleviate	减轻	traffic congestion 交通堵塞 / poverty 贫困
remove	消除	the barrier 障碍/ discrimination 歧视
safeguard	保障（一般后面跟抽象概念）	political and social stability 政治社会的稳定/ national cohesion 民族凝聚力
shift	转移	one's attention to / the focus to
speed up / accelerate	加速	pace of life 生活节奏 / economic growth
stimulate	激发	imagination / creativity / economic development

（续表）

正方动词

动词	含义	宾语举例
synthesise	有机结合	synthesise the Asian and the Western cultures / synthesise different sources of information
transcend	超越（某种界限）	national boundaries 国家的界限 / races
upgrade	升级	the facilities / skills
value / treasure / cherish	珍视	the cultural heritage 文化遗产 / the local customs 当地风俗

中立或反方动词

cause	产生，导致（雅思作文中一般跟坏现象）	misunderstanding 误解 / psychological strain 心理压力/ a vicious circle 恶性循环
corrupt	毒害	the minds of children
degrade	是 upgrade 的反义词	the quality of sth. 它的名词形式 degradation 也很常用，如《剑 8》实例：worldwide land degradation
deplete	消耗	natural resources / the ozone layer（大气层中的臭氧层）
disregard	无视	traditions / the law
distort	歪曲	facts / truth
disturb	扰乱	social order 社会秩序
exacerbate/ aggravate	导致……进一步恶化	economic recession 经济衰退 / environmental pollution
erode	侵蚀	the cultural identity of a nation 一个国家的文化特性 / one's confidence 信心
exhaust	耗尽	energy / resources
fuel	本意是燃料，但是当动词的时候，它很像中文的“激化”，后面一般跟一个抽象名词	antagonism 敌意 / conflicts 冲突
give rise to	导致（某种广泛存在的负面现象）	unemployment 失业/ inflation 通货膨胀 / debate / alienation from one another 人与人之间彼此疏远
hinder / impede / obstruct	阻碍	the development of...
impose	把某事物强加给某人	impose their own will on their children / impose high taxes on...

（续表）

中立或反方动词

动词	含义	宾语举例
infringe on	侵犯	citizens' rights / intellectual property rights 知识产权
involve	涉及	uncertainties 不确定因素 / the recognition that... 某种意识
isolate	孤立	a nation 国家 / prisoners 罪犯
jeopardise（BrE）/ undermine	危及，破坏（跟抽象宾语）	one's future / economic prospects 经济前景
punish / penalise（BrE）	惩罚	criminal acts 罪行
restrict / constrain	限制	the development of... / one's freedom
rethink	反思（注意与 think 不同，rethink 后面经常可以直接加宾语）	their policy / their strategy 策略
sap / dampen	削弱（自信等抽象名词）	one's confidence / one's enthusiasm 热情 / the market demand
seek	谋求	hegemony 霸权 / opportunities
spoil	破坏（原先很好的东西）	the cityscape
stifle	扼杀	creativity 创造力 / potential 潜力 / economic and social reform 经济与社会变革
stretch	本意是拉伸，议论文中一般指过度使用，stretch... to the limit 为固定短语	stretch natural resources to the limit / stretch students' energy to the limit
succumb to	屈从于	temptation 诱惑 / peer pressure 同龄人间的压力
tarnish	玷污	one's reputation 声誉 / one's image 形象
violate	侵犯	citizens' rights / the law

说明：在国外大学的学术报告中，动词短语使用较少。但下面的这些动词短语对于雅思作文这种较为短小的议论文却非常适合，请大家熟练掌握并在论证时积极运用。

剑桥范文中的常见动词短语

appeal to	对……有吸引力	These TV shows are designed to appeal mainly to viewers aged between 16 and 25.

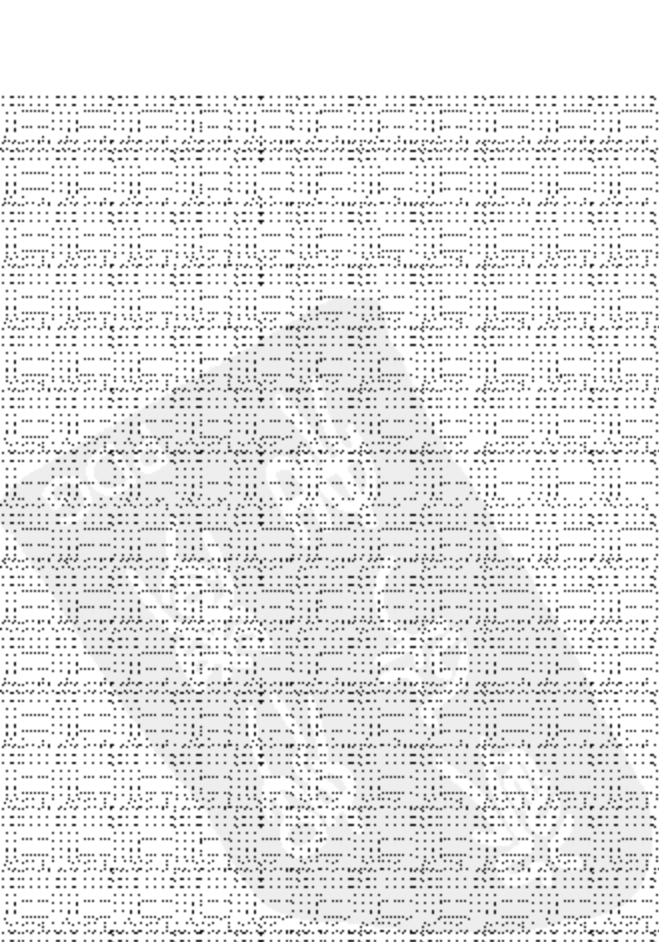
（续表）

剑桥范文中的常见动词短语		
bring about	带来	Together these factors brought about the Greek financial crisis.
carry out	实施，从事，也可以用动词 conduct 表示类似的意思	Due to the growing public concern, more research on the greenhouse effect has been carried out.
clash with	与……冲突	The latest report clashed with the media coverage（报道）of the event last year.
cope with	应付，处理 =handle	In some businesses, employees find it difficult to cope with the stress at work.
dispose of	处理掉，经常用于环境类考题	We forget that this is a source pollution and difficult to dispose of; therefore, governments need to raise this awareness in the general public.
draw on	借鉴	Those who have spent some time traveling to other places have a broader view of life and better personal resources to draw on.（剑桥例句）
give priority to	把……放在优先位置	The government should give priority to the development of the economy rather than to the national defence.
grapple with	努力解决某个问题	The city government has been grappling with unemployment.
interfere with	干扰，干涉	Supervisors should try not to let their personal worries interfere with their work（剑桥例句）.
lose track of	对……失去了解或者掌控	Those who get addicted to junk food tend to lose track of their weight.
make sense	合理	In today's media, some reports simply do not make any sense. Interestingly, people just keep listening to or reading them.
make up for	弥补	To the master（宠物的主人）, no amount of money can make up for the death of a pet.
opt for sth. /opt to do sth.	选择（去做某事）	Due to the stiff competition at work, an increasing number of people have opted for early retirement（退休）.

（续表）

剑桥范文中的常见动词短语		
participate in	参与	Parents should encourage their children to participate in group discussions as that will make children more co-operative individuals.
refrain from	克制自己（不去做某事）	It would be difficult for children to refrain from playing a video game once they get addicted to it.
clash with	与……冲突	Parents' suggestions tend to clash with teachers'.
differ from	与……不同，写作中可以用来代替 be different from	This product differs from other products in cost and performance（性能）.

由于雅思作文并不是特别长，所以以上这些动词也不需要使用得特别密集。一篇文章主体段中的句子里如果能用到 4 ~5 个这样意义明确的动词，你就会发现自己的论证已经明显变得更加强有力了。



附录 I（适合骨灰级玩家）
Appendix I (For Consummate Players Only)

雅思写作之 211 替换工程

1.《剑 8》第 166 页上方的考官评语中明确写道：A range of relevant vocabulary is used, although this is not wide and there are some less suitable word choices. 而《剑 7》第 169 页上方的考官评语中同样指出：The high level of repetition indicates limitations in the range of vocabulary. 在下面这个表格中 Pat 收入了国内考生作文中重复频率最高的 211 个英语表达，严格地筛选了它们的同义或者近义词。选词的原则是（a）首先必须是地道的英文。编写这个表格的目的，绝对不是鼓励学生片面追求“大词”，而是鼓励大家积极使用国外学术写作中真正常用的词汇；（b）所选词在意义上应该尽量接近被替换的词汇。很多网络词汇表存在的共同问题是“同义词”给了一大堆，深入分析却有很多词在地道的英文里根本不是同一个意思甚至完全不沾边儿。在下面这个表格中，有些 items 也没有强求完全同义，但并不是因为找不到同义词，而是因为主要考虑单词的得分效果；（c）必须是比较容易使用的词汇（是的，一个词无论多好，如果非常 tricky 导致你的用法是错的，结果也只能是扣分而非得分）。

如果大家能切实掌握这个表格，不仅对 IELTS 写作考试，对于出国之后的学术学习也将产生深刻影响。

2. 高分考生只了解单词的中文意思是不够的，至少还应该知道词性，最好能够再深入了解同义词（或近义词）的用法（或语义）的区别。这个表格在篇幅允许的情况下已经尽可能详尽地给出了用法区分。另外大家还可以登录 www. ldoceonline. com（注意第一个 dot 后是小写字母 l），超酷的朗文词典官方网站。通过查阅某个单词的英文解释和例句，大家可以进一步学习词汇的用法。需要提醒的是下面这个表格是专门针对写作的，有些词汇口试不宜使用，让雅思口试更有特色的用词请参考《十天突破雅思口语》第 3 版的 Day Three 与 Day Nine。

3. 这个词汇表最开始的时候是包括 211 个写作重要同义替换词，现在经过扩招，已经增加到 312 个词。不过为了向过去的工作致敬，还是管它叫“211 重点替换词”吧。

4. 这两个表格无论从单词的覆盖量还是内容的实用性在英语教学界都是属于开创性的。Pat 会不断努力，让这个表格越来越全面。大家在写作实践中如果遇到自己希望替换的表达，可以发邮件至 ieltsguru@ sina. com，如有时间必当回复。

大作文替换方式合集

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	名词	
1.	things that one tries hard to do	one's undertakings / one's commitments
2.	The fact is that…	The reality is that…
3.	joy	happiness / delight / enjoyment
4.	sadness	sorrow / grief
5.	danger	hazard / peril（后面这个词语气很强，危险程度非同一般）［派生］dangerous；hazardous
6.	education	≈ schooling（指学校教育，家庭教育则用 upbringing / parenting）［区分］家庭教育的两个词 upbringing 和 parenting 的区别在于：upbringing 是从孩子的角度说的，比如 children's upbringing；而 parenting 是从家长的角度来说，比如 sensible parenting
7.	advertisement/advertising	如果你写过关于广告的题目，就一定体会过不停轮换使用 advertisement/ advertising 有多郁闷。其实主体段论证中完全可以把广告种类细化，比如 commercials（电视或者互联网上的广告），flyers（传单广告，北京最常见的形式就是“135＊＊＊＊，办证”），billboards（大幅的广告牌）或者 non-profit advertisements = public-interest advertisements（公益广告）
8.	car	automobile
9.	famous people	celebrities（单数为 celebrity）
10.	human beings（被考生使用过多）	humanity（注意这个词的单数指人类，复数指人文学科）/ the human race
11.	wealth	fortune(s)（fortune 作财富的意思时可以加复数）
12.	［相关］rich	wealthy / affluent (*adj.*)
13.	skill	≈ technique（注意这个词的正确解释是技能或者方法，而不是 technology 科技）
14.	［派生］skilled	adept / adroit (*adj.*)
15.	method	methodology（国外学术写作中超级常用的词，基本就是 method 的故作高深版）
16.	understanding of	≈ grasp of / command of

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	名词	
17.	choice	option
18.	cooperation	≈ collaboration
19.	basic structure in a city or a country	infrastructure
20.	tiredness for a long time	fatigue
21.	is a must for	is a prerequisite for（是……的必备先决条件）
22.	the Internet	≈the information highway（一篇考生作文里 Internet 被使用十几次是常事儿）
23.	honesty	≈ integrity
24.	strong belief	faith（in）
25.	aim	intention
26.	worries	anxieties（是的，这两个词的确都可以加复数）
27.	influence	impact / repercussion / implication
28.	influence on each other	mutual influence（类似的表达还有 mutual respect，mutual trust 和 mutual understanding / interaction between A and B / interplay between A and B
29.	many different kinds of…	a variety of… / a wide array of… / a wide range of…
30.	wrong ideas held by many people	misconceptions
31.	range	≈ spectrum
32.	sense	≈ recognition
33.	part	component（这个词不仅指零件，在学术写作中也经常指“部分”）
34.	wise	［相关］ sensible（*adj.*）
35.	gap	disparity
36.	a system for a particular purpose	≈ a mechanism for…
37.	a solution to sth.	a remedy for sth.（生活中经常指一种病的治疗方法，但学术写作中经常用来指某种问题的解决办法，注意搭配的介词不同）
38.	bad students	≈ unruly students / disruptive students
39.	bad behavior	unethical behavior / immoral behavior
40.	organizations that help poor people	charities / charitable organizations

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	名词	
41.	difference	distinction
42.	［派生］ be different from	be distinct from (*adj.*)
43.	person	individual
44.	personality	≈ disposition
45.	the rate of…	the incidence of…（后面一般跟坏现象，比如 unemployment / crime / a disease）
46.	cultural globalization（有过多人使用这个词）	global cultural homogenization
47.	a thing that is necessary	a necessity
48.	a thing that is new and interesting	a novelty
49.	a thing that is rare	a rarity
50.	things that people are not sure about	uncertainties
51.	a world language	a universal language
52.	friends	companions
53.	relaxation	≈ recreation
54.	self-respect	≈ self-esteem and dignity
55.	respect sb. / sth.	hold sb. /sth. in high regard
56.	［反义］ look down on…	treat… with contempt = despise (*v.*)
57.	self-control	self-discipline
58.	criminal	convict
59.	prisoner	inmate
60.	people who walk on the street	pedestrians
61.	old generations in history	ancestors
62.	a person who benefits from sth.	a beneficiary of sth.
63.	a disease that spreads quickly	an epidemic（注意这个词虽然是-ic 结尾，却不是形容词）
64.	a very unpleasant way of life	misery
65.	emotion	≈ sentiment
66.	narrow minds	insular minds（狭隘的头脑或者观念）
67.	the way to do sth.	the approach to doing sth.
68.	hobby	≈ pastime / diversion

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	名词	
69.	progress	progression（指抽象的进步，比如写关于 society/career/technology 的话题）
70.	failure	setback（注意作名词的时候中间没有空格）
71.	importance	significance
72.	labor	manual labor
73.	pressure from other students	peer pressure
74.	citizens who can work	labor force / workforce（注意后面这个词的标准写法中间没有空格）
75.	problems or diseases that exist for a long time	persistent problems / chronic diseases
76.	do not exercise often	a sedentary lifestyle
77.	result	consequence（表示消极的结果多一些）
78.	thoughts	≈ considerations
79.	difficulty	hindrance / impediment / hurdles
80.	the lack of knowledge	ignorance（注意在地道英文里，这个词经常并不表示“忽视”，而是表示“无知”）
81.	harm（*n.*）	adverse effect
82.	harm（*vt.*）	damage；destroy / ruin（这两个词比 damage 程度更重）；spoil（后面跟 the cityscape / scenery / environment）；undermine（后面跟抽象概念，比如 stability / social order / harmony）；jeopar-dise（后面跟抽象概念，比如 one's future / one's career）；tarnish（后面跟 one's reputation /image）；sap/dampen（后面跟 one's enthu-siasm/interest/confidence）
83.	［派生］harmful	detrimental（*adj.*）
84.	［派生］be harmful to	≈ pose a threat to
85.	bad luck	misfortune
86.	trouble	adversity / dilemma / predicament / hardship
87.	crime	offence / criminal act
88.	shortage（of）	scarcity（of） / dearth（of）
89.	the only one	an exception

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	名词	
90.	serious crime	heinous crime / felony
91.	places where animals live	habitat
	形容词	
92.	be good (for)	be beneficial (to) = be in the best interests (of)
93.	worrying	≈disturbing
94.	very popular	prevalent / ubiquitous
95.	true	genuine (truly→genuinely)
96.	deep	profound（深刻的，后面经常跟 wisdom / truths/understanding/impact/thoughts）
97.	strong	powerful / mighty
98.	weak	≈vulnerable
99.	many	numerous（注意要跟可数名词）
100.	complicated	intricate
101.	cannot be turned back	be irreversible
102.	produce useful results	productive（剑桥例句：Without natural talent, continuous training would be neither attractive nor productive.）
103.	practical	≈realistic
104.	mature	sophisticated（这个词指人的时候意思是思维成熟老练的）
105.	selfish	self-centered/ materialistic
106.	suitable	fitting
107.	lonely	≈ isolated / alienated
108.	be easily influenced by sth.	be susceptible to sth.（一般是坏事情，比如 a disease / attacks）
109.	is better than	is superior to
110.	not as good as...	is inferior to
111.	be the same	be identical / be homogenous / be uniform（后面两个词比较正式，一般是说 cultural globalisation 的时候常用，现在你理解为什么校服的名词叫 school uniforms 了吧，就是让大家看起来都一样的衣服☺）

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	形容词	
112.	interesting	≈stimulating
113.	boring	≈ monotonous / repetitive
114.	useless	redundant
115.	smart	intelligent
116.	famous	renowned
117.	positive	≈desirable / encouraging
118.	can be used	be available
119.	hard to understand	bewildering / baffling /confusing
120.	(laws / rules / people) not strict	lenient
121.	healthy	wholesome（注意说人的健康还是要用 healthy，但是如果说事物有益健康，就可以用 wholesome）
122.	good for the environment	eco-friendly（比如 Biking is far more eco-friendly than driving their SUVs.）
123.	nervous / anxious	≈apprehensive
124.	doubt sth.	be skeptical about sth.
125.	fair	≈justified（剑桥例句：The gaps between their earnings and those of people who work less selfishly cannot be justified.）
126.	unfair	≈unwarranted / unjustifiable
127.	huge	enormous / massive / vast/ colossal
128.	have many different abilities	be versatile / be well-rounded
129.	be familiar with	be well-acquainted with
130.	proper	appropriate
131.	ugly	unsightly
132.	the present...	the current... / the existing...（比如 the current financial crisis / the existing environmental problems）
133.	outdated	antiquated / obsolete
134.	spend a lot of money	lead an extravagant life
135.	open	enlightened / progressive（开明的，进步的，经常用来形容 government 或者 society）

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	形容词	
136.	sth. must be carried out	sth. is compulsory / sth. is mandatory
137.	with long history	time-honored（后面经常跟抽象名词，比如 tradition / practice / methods / heritage）
138.	continuing forever	perpetual
139.	important	significant / essential / vital（这三个词的重要性依次递增）
140.	be qualified for	be eligible for
141.	disappointing	frustrating
142.	being spread in an uncontrolled way	rampant（后面经常跟负面现象，比如 crime，pollution 或者 discrimination）
143.	cruel	≈ inhumane / merciless
144.	fat	overweight / obese（后面这个表示已经胖出病了）
145.	having wrong opinions	skewed / biased（这两个词一般在 IELTS 媒体类话题中使用，表示“有偏见的”）
146.	including many things	comprehensive（综合的，全面的）
147.	enough	adequate / sufficient / ample / abundant（注意这四个词的语气是逐渐递增的）
148.	too much	excessive
149.	very little	minimal（注意不是 minimum）
150.	cause bad effects	counterproductive（其实地道英文写作里这个词不见得和生产有关，只要阻止人们达到目的，都可以写它 counterproductive）
151.	strict	stringent（后面一般跟 laws，measures 或者 rules）
152.	urgent	pressing（problems）
	动词	
153.	make sth. strong	strengthen / fortify /reinforce / consolidate sth.
154.	make sth. weak	weaken / erode（侵蚀）
155.	make sth. better	enhance / better（很少看到国内考生用 better 当动词，其实在学术写作中 better sth. 是挺常见的表达，比如剑桥范例：to better conditions for the disabled）

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	动词	
156.	make sth. worse	aggravate / exacerbate sth.
157.	control…（a negative trend）	curb…（crime / pollution / economic recessions）
158.	manage sth.	≈ regulate sth. / oversee sth.
159.	appear	emerge / arise（后者的主语一般是抽象概念，比如debate）
160.	die out	go extinct
161.	fail to see	neglect / overlook
162.	set… free	release（prisoners / stress）
163.	begin	commence / initiate（后者跟抽象概念更多，比如initiate the conflict）
164.	narrow / bridge the gap between A and B（注意这里bridge 作动词）	［反义］widen the gap between A and B
165.	be forced to to sth.	be compelled to do sth.
166.	try to do sth.	≈pursue sth.（one's goal / one's career / business interests / maximum profit / hegemony）
167.	do sth.	≈perform / conduct（注意这里的perform 不是“表演”而是“从事”）
168.	do not do sth.	refrain from doing sth.
169.	carry out	implement
170.	make a crime	commit a crime（注意请不要写make a crime）
171.	commit a crime again	revert to crime（这里的crime 作不可数名词）
172.	punish	penalise
173.	［派生］punishment	penalty
174.	spread	propagate / disseminate（这两个词后面经常跟information / ideas / belief 这类名词）
175.	develop fast	flourish / thrive
176.	develop（这里作“培养”的意思）	cultivate / foster / nurture（这三个词后面经常跟和教育有关的名词，比如an interest in social issues）
177.	［相关］fast-developing	burgeoning

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	动词	
178.	accept	adopt（注意这个词不是 adapt “适应”，而是“接纳，采纳”的意思。） 剑 8 例句：Persuading manufacturers and travelers to adopt this new technology would be a more effective strategy for improving air quality, especially in cities.
179.	teach sth.	≈ impart sth. / inculcate sth.（注意如果 teach 后面是人则不要替换）
180.	support	≈buttress / bolster
181.	prove / confirm	verify
182.	create	generate（一般是大规模的产生，比如 generate employment opportunities / generate tax revenue / electricity）breed（一般是产生消极的东西，比如 conflict / crime / resentment）spawn（一般是产生新事物，比如 spawn inventions/innovations）
183.	use	≈ utilise / exploit（剑桥例句：Without the training, the child would not learn how to exploit and develop their talent.）
184.	use... again	recycle
185.	get	≈acquire（注意 acquire / gain knowledge 比 learn knowledge 在地道英文中更加常见）
186.	consider	contemplate / reflect on /ponder
187.	provide sth.	afford sth.（在正式的英文写作中，afford 经常可以表示“提供”）
188.	need	require（剑桥例句：To be really good in areas such as music, art or sport, some natural talent is required. 注意主语如果是人称则一般还需要使用 need，但如果主语是事物，则可以改用 require）
189.	like sth. very much	≈ have an affinity for sth. / have a strong attachment to sth.
190.	be unhappy about	complain about (*v.*) / be discontented with (*adj.*)
191.	ask for	request

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	动词	
192.	look like sth.	resemble sth.
193.	treat… poorly	mistreat… / abuse…
194.	consider sth. valuable	value sth. / treasure sth. / cherish sth.
195.	keep	≈ maintain / preserve（这个词后面经常跟 traditions / cultural heritage / wild animals/ natural resources 等）
196.	mix… together	blend / combine / synthesise
197.	solve	tackle / combat / address
198.	notice	discern
199.	achieve	fulfill（one's dream / one's goal / one's potential / one's obligation / one's promise / one's task）
200.	appear in large numbers	sprout up / mushroom
201.	make… less serious	relieve / ease / alleviate（作文中经常用到的搭配有 relieve stress / alleviate poverty / ease the traffic congestion 等）
202.	pay… for（one's loss）	compensate… for…
203.	pay… for（one's effort）	reward… for…
204.	make sth. faster	accelerate sth. / speed up sth.
205.	join	participate in
206.	outweigh	prevail over（大家应该已经注意到了，IELTS 议论文的题目中经常出现 outweigh 这个词用来比较事物的重要性或者利弊，在作文中最好不要重复考题中出现过的特征词汇）
207.	contribute to	promote / facilitate（注意这两个词都是及物动词，所以不需要跟 to）
208.	prevent the development of…	hinder /impede / inhibit / obstruct…
209.	find out	≈identify
210.	encourage sb. to…	≈ motivate sb. to…
211.	hate	resent / hold a grudge against
212.	limit	restrict / constrain
213.	avoid	≈bypass

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	动词	
214.	is not limited to...	is not restricted to... / is not confined to...（经常用来描述一个 trend 不仅限于某个范围）
215.	decide	determine
216.	move to...	relocate to... / have been relocated to...
217.	come from...	originate from / in...
218.	improve	boost / enhance（比如 boost solidarity 增进团结/ enhance productivity 提高生产率）
219.	waste	use... lavishly
220.	reduce	curtail（多用于政府投资类话题）/ diminish（多用于文化类或者发展类中的抽象话题）
221.	increase	augment（多用于政府投资类话题）
222.	help	assist
223.	help（*n.*）	assistance
224.	set up	establish
225.	try to do sth.	attempt to do sth.
226.	try hard to do sth.	make a strenuous / an arduous / a painstaking effort to do sth.
227.	change	alter
228.	change... a lot	fundamentally change... / radically change... / transform...
229.	solve	address / combat（后面这个是剑桥范文中最常用的“解决”之一）
230.	correct（*vt.*）	rectify（a mistake）
231.	take down	demolish / rase（谈到拆老建筑的时候常用）
232.	obey	abide by / comply with / conform to（后面跟 the law / rules / regulations 等）
233.	ban	ban... altogether / strictly prohibit...（剑桥例句：The government introduced a law strictly prohibiting tobacco advertisements on TV.）
234.	criticise	condemn / denounce（这两个词一般用于政府类话题，但不要用在教育类）
235.	depend on	hinge on = be contingent on（意思是：取决于……）
236.	depend on	rely on（意思是：依靠……）

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	动词	
237.	deal with	cope with
238.	do one's best to do sth.	commit oneself to doing sth. / strive to do sth. / do one's utmost to do sth. / spare no effort to do sth.
239.	use up	exhaust (energy / resources) / stretch (resources) to the limit
240.	report the details of sth.	report sth. in graphic detail
241.	prevent sb. from focusing on...	distract sb. from...
242.	spend A on B	≈ dedicate A to B
243.	use too much...	stretch... to the limit / put a strain on...
244.	pour	discharge（排放，环境类话题常用，比如 discharge chemical waste into rivers, streams and lakes）
245.	get used to	get accustomed to
246.	die out	go extinct
247.	continue to exist	persist（在 IELTS 作文中经常用来指某种坏现象长期存在）
248.	come with...	be attended by / be accompanied by...
249.	broaden one's horizons	expand one's outlook / enlarge one's vision（broaden one's horizons 这个句型已经被考生使用过多惨遭贬值）
250.	break the law	violate the law
251.	put sb. in prison	incarcerate sb.
252.	make laws against...	legislate against...
253.	[相关] law	legislation（名词，注意 law 在特指具体的法律时可以用复数，但是 legislation 不能用复数）
254.	make sth. active	stimulate（后面经常跟 imagination / creativity / interest / economic growth 等词汇）
255.	make one's dream come true	fulfill one's potential / attain one's goal
256.	lead to change in	act as a catalyst for change in...
257.	deal with the need	meet the demand / satisfy the need
258.	take... away from sb.	deprive sb. of...（省略号中可以填入 freedom / leisure time / the right to 等值得拥有的内容）

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	动词	
259.	give sb. the ability to	enable sb. to
260.	get a clear idea of	get a clear perspective of
261.	be lost	go astray（作文中如果写青少年“误入歧途”，就不要再写 get lost）
262.	spend too much time on	be addicted to / be preoccupied with / be obsessed with（这三个词组的语气越来越强）
263.	prepare for…	pave the way for… / lay the groundwork for… / lay a solid foundation for…（为……打好基础）
264.	break the balance	upset the balance
265.	balance A and B	strike a balance between A and B（在 A 和 B 之间争取一种平衡）
266.	catch	capture
267.	think of… as	regard… as / view… as / perceive… as
268.	get rid of	eliminate / remove
269.	get rid of	abolish（多用于政府类话题，废除）
270.	make… higher	drive up（后面经常跟 the crime rate / unemployment rate）
	副词	
271.	mainly	primarily / principally / chiefly
272.	In the old days，…	Traditionally，… / Historically，…
273.	now	≈currently
274.	Actually，…	≈Technically，…（严格来说它的意思并不是“事实上”，但在学术写作中它是一个表示“精确地说”非常棒的词汇）
275.	very soon	immediately
276.	not often at all	rarely
277.	completely	entirely
278.	do sth. without careful thought	do sth. impulsively
279.	blindly	indiscriminately（不加选择的）/ mechanically（机械的）

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	短语或句型	
280.	only	≈merely（注意只有 only 作副词的时候才可以替换）
281.	a little / a bit	somewhat（注意只有 a little / a bit 后面跟形容词的时候才可以这样替换）
282.	about	regarding / concerning / with respect to / with regard to
283.	a few	a handful of（请注意仅指少数时 a couple of 容易被挑剔的考官判为过于口语化）
284.	Although…, the real situation is…	Hypothetically, … / Theoretically, … / In theory / Ideally , … = = > But in reality, … / But in actuality, … / But in practice, …（Ideally 指“理想化地说,”；另外请注意剑桥提供的范文中是允许用 But 开始句子的，尽管国外很多大学教授不喜欢这种写法）
285.	Most young people…	Young people tend to … = Young people typically…（tend to 和 typically 都是表示某一类人多半会怎样做的常用表达）
286.	needs to be changed	is crying out for reform（固定短语）
287.	be punished by the law	be brought to justice
288.	do sth. together	make a concerted effort to do sth.
289.	It is common for sb. to…	It is standard practice for sb. to…
290.	is based on…	is predicated on…
291.	have no choice but to…	have no option but to… / have no alternative but to…
292.	be worth the effort	be worthwhile
293.	and so on	etc.（前面可加逗号，注意雅思写作中完全可以使用 etc. 或者 e. g. 这样的拉丁文表达，而且剑 7 和剑 8 中都出现了）
294.	is closely connected with…	is intrinsically linked to…
295.	through	by way of（介词短语）
296.	because of	due to / owing to（雅思作文中这两个词组后面一般是跟负面含义的名词，如剑 8 例句：A further 28% of global degradation is due to over-cultivation（过度耕种）of crops.）

（续表）

task 2	国内考生常用的表达	更得分的表述方式
	短语或句型	
297.	in this aspect	in this regard/ in this respect（这里不是尊重的意思，而是指某方面）
298.	despite / in spite of	notwithstanding（请注意这三个词都是后面必须紧跟名词或者名词短语，而不可以直接跟从句）
299.	in fact	as a matter of fact ≈ in essence / essentially（in essence / essentially 的意思是“本质上”）
300.	besides	apart from
301.	It is obvious that…	It is evident that…?
302.	sth. stops.	sth. comes to a standstill.
303.	be similar to…	be akin to…（学术写作中相当常见的句型）
304.	A is as… as B	B is… A is equally…
305.	It is impossible that…	It is highly unlikely that…
306.	A has made B + *adj.* / *n.*	A has rendered B + *adj.* / *n.*（注意这里的宾语B 后面只能是跟形容词或者名词）
307.	A has made B do sth.	A has prompted / impelled sb. to do sth.（注意这两个词后面的宾语之后不能省略to）
308.	sth. does not always remain the same.	sth. is not carved in stone（某事物并非一成不变）
309.	A high percentage of…	The proportion of… is very high.（……的比例很高）
310.	The cause of… is…	can be attributed to / can be ascribed to…（可以归因于……）
311.	no matter	regardless of / irrespective of（注意no matter 后面一般跟从句，而 regardless of 和 irrespective of 后面多数时候跟名词或者名词短语）
312.	talking about… / speaking of	in terms of…（经常用来限制一个命题的适用范围，比如 In terms of culture, this city is fascinating. But in terms of traffic, it is inferior.）

小作文替换方式合集

中国考生最常用的表达	更容易得分的表达	词性
on the whole	overall（经常用作状语前置，放在句首）	*adv.*
in these 25 years	during this 25-year period	

（续表）

中国考生最常用的表达	更容易得分的表达	词性
about / around	approximately	*adv.*
decrease	decline / dwindle（特指逐渐缓慢的减少）/ dip /slip（后两个词经常用来描述短促的下降）	*vi.*
increase	show an upward trend 反义：show a downward trend	
go up and down	fluctuate	*vi.*
experience	undergo / witness（后面跟上升、下降或者 fluctuation 的趋势）	*vt.*
become more than	exceed / surpass / overtake	
grow fast	grow dramatically /soar / rocket	*v.*
fall fast	fall drastically / plunge / plummet	
much higher	considerably / substantially / significantly higher	
a little higher	marginally higher / slightly higher / fractionally higher	
take up	account for / represent / constitute / occupy	表示占多少，后面尤其经常跟百分数
the rest of...	the remainder / the remaining...	这三个表达都可以指剩余部分。在图表作文特别是 pie charts 中，the rest 后面经常需要加 of... 而 the remainder 则可以独立使用，remaining 是形容词，后面需要直接跟名词
two times	twice as many（or much）as / double	double 的词性很灵活，可以作形容词、名词或者动词
three times	threefold（比如：a threefold increase）	*adj.*
finally	eventually	注意在图表作文中表示时间上的“最后”可以用 eventually，但是议论文中逻辑上的“最后”还要用 finally 或者 lastly 来表示
in an opposite way	Conversely,（经常用在句首，引出一种和前面一句的描述正相反的情况，后跟逗号）	*adv.*

（续表）

中国考生最常用的表达	更容易得分的表达	词性
Compared with…，…	By contrast，… / In contrast，… / In comparison with…，… / By comparison with…，…	请注意逗号的位置
Just like…，…	Similarly，… / Likewise ，…	请注意逗号的位置
clearly	It is noticeable that…（剑桥范文例句：It is noticeable that for both types of household with children，a higher-than-average proportion were living in poverty at this time.）	
the data of（another group）	the corresponding data / the data of their counterparts	
reach the highest point at…	peak at…	*v.*
reach…	amount to（后面跟具体数字）	*v.*
A will…	A is expected / projected to…	
group	category	*n.*
always	consistently / continuously / ≈ invariably	*adv.*
Then，	From this point onwards，	
huge	massive	*adj.*
kind of	relatively	*adv.*
We can see that…	We can discern that…	

211 重点 Spot Check

请尝试用英文解释下面的写作高分词汇：

动词

boost	alter	curtail	alleviate
address	foster	undermine	preserve

形容词

rampant	burgeoning	sustainable	inhumane
enlightened	skewed	impoverished	severe

名词

ancestors	repercussion	disparity	mechanism
remedy	spectrum	charity	novelty

结　束　语——To the next step.

全书就要结束了，和各位读者也该说声珍重。五年时间，年纪还不算很大的我，学生却已经遍及世界各地。很多已经在海外学习的学生现在还通过 MSN 和我联系，或者经常在我的博客中留言。我真的感觉他们都很优秀，也很独立，我知道他们在英国、澳洲、荷兰、加拿大、美国……正在实现着当年备考雅思时心中的梦想。

下面这首歌送给各位，同时想对各位读者说："他们做到了的事情，你也能。"

Greatest Love Of All

I believe that children are our future
Teach them well and let them lead the way
Show them all the beauty they possess inside
Give them a sense of pride to make it easier
Let the children's laughter remind us how we used to be
Everybody is searching for a hero
People need someone to look up to
I never found anyone to fulfill my needs
A lonely place to be
So I learned to depend on me
(Chorus)
I decided long ago, never to walk in anyone's shadows
If I fail, if I succeed
At least I live as I believe
No matter what they take from me
They can't take away my dignity
Because the greatest love of all
Is happening to me
Learning to love yourself
It is the greatest love of all

[General Information]
书名=十天突破雅思写作　　剑8版
作者=慎小嶷编著
页数=376
SS号=12844775
出版日期=2011.07
出版社=机械工业出版社
原书定价=53.00
主题词=英语　写作　高等教育　自学参考资料
参考文献格式=慎小嶷编著．十天突破雅思写作　　剑8版．北京市：机械工业出版社，2011．07．